

# Analytic Number Theory

Henry Twiss

2024

# Contents

<b>I</b>	<b>Background Material</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Preliminaries</b>	<b>2</b>
1.1	Notational Conventions . . . . .	2
1.2	Asymptotic Notation . . . . .	3
1.3	Dirichlet Characters . . . . .	7
1.4	Special Sums . . . . .	11
1.5	Integral Methods & Transforms . . . . .	21
1.6	The Gamma Function . . . . .	24
<b>II</b>	<b>An Introduction to Holomorphic &amp; Maass Forms</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Congruence Subgroups &amp; Modular Curves</b>	<b>29</b>
2.1	Congruence Subgroups . . . . .	29
2.2	Modular Curves . . . . .	30
2.3	The Hyperbolic Measure . . . . .	35
<b>3</b>	<b>The Theory of Holomorphic Forms</b>	<b>36</b>
3.1	Holomorphic Forms . . . . .	36
3.2	Eisenstein & Poincaré Series . . . . .	38
3.3	Spaces of Holomorphic Forms . . . . .	41
3.4	Double Coset Operators . . . . .	45
3.5	Diamond & Hecke Operators . . . . .	48
3.6	Atkin–Lehner Theory . . . . .	59
3.7	The Ramanujan-Petersson Conjecture . . . . .	62
3.8	Twists of Holomorphic Forms . . . . .	64
<b>4</b>	<b>The Theory of Maass Forms</b>	<b>67</b>
4.1	Maass Forms . . . . .	67
4.2	Eisenstein & Poincaré Series . . . . .	71
4.3	$L^2$ -integrable Automorphic Functions . . . . .	74
4.4	Spectral Theory of the Laplace Operator . . . . .	78
4.5	Double Coset Operators . . . . .	81
4.6	Diamond & Hecke Operators . . . . .	81
4.7	Atkin–Lehner Theory . . . . .	86
4.8	The Ramanujan-Petersson Conjecture . . . . .	89
4.9	Twists of Maass Forms . . . . .	90

<b>5</b>	<b>Trace Formulas</b>	<b>92</b>
5.1	The Petersson Trace Formula . . . . .	92
<b>III</b>	<b>An Introduction to <math>L</math>-functions</b>	<b>97</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>The Theory of <math>L</math>-functions</b>	<b>98</b>
6.1	Dirichlet Series . . . . .	98
6.2	Perron Formulas . . . . .	105
6.3	Analytic Data of $L$ -functions . . . . .	108
6.4	The Approximate Functional Equation . . . . .	111
6.5	The Riemann Hypothesis & Nontrivial Zeros . . . . .	114
6.6	The Lindelöf Hypothesis & Convexity Arguments . . . . .	115
6.7	Estimating the Central Value . . . . .	116
<b>7</b>	<b>Types of <math>L</math>-functions</b>	<b>119</b>
7.1	The Riemann Zeta Function . . . . .	119
7.2	Dirichlet $L$ -functions . . . . .	124
7.3	Hecke $L$ -functions . . . . .	129
7.4	Hecke-Maass $L$ -functions . . . . .	133
7.5	The Rankin-Selberg Method . . . . .	138
7.6	Applications of the Rankin-Selberg Method . . . . .	148
<b>IV</b>	<b>Analytic Results for <math>L</math>-functions</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Non-vanishing Results for <math>L</math>-functions</b>	<b>151</b>
8.1	Dirichlet's Theorem on Primes in Arithmetic Progressions . . . . .	151
8.2	Non-vanishing on $\sigma = 1$ . . . . .	156
<b>9</b>	<b>Zero-free Regions &amp; Zero Counting of <math>L</math>-functions</b>	<b>161</b>
9.1	The Explicit Formula for Logarithmic Derivatives . . . . .	161
9.2	Zero-free Regions, Siegel Zeros & Siegel's Theorem . . . . .	164
9.3	Zero Counting & Riemann-von Mangoldt Formulas . . . . .	178
<b>10</b>	<b>Explicit Formulas &amp; Prime Number Theorems</b>	<b>191</b>
10.1	Explicit Formulas for Chebyshev Functions . . . . .	191
10.2	Prime Number Theorems . . . . .	203
<b>V</b>	<b>Appendices</b>	<b>214</b>
<b>A</b>	<b>Number Theory</b>	<b>215</b>
A.1	Arithmetic Functions . . . . .	215
A.2	The Möbius Function . . . . .	217
A.3	The Generalized Sum of Divisors Function . . . . .	218
A.4	Quadratic Symbols . . . . .	218

---

<b>B</b>	<b>Analysis</b>	<b>221</b>
B.1	Local Absolute Uniform Convergence . . . . .	221
B.2	Interchange of Integrals, Sums & Derivatives . . . . .	222
B.3	Summation Formulas . . . . .	223
B.4	Fourier Series . . . . .	223
B.5	Factorizations, Order & Rank . . . . .	224
B.6	The Phragmén-Lindelöf Convexity Principle for a Strip . . . . .	225
B.7	Bessel Functions . . . . .	226
B.8	Whittaker Functions . . . . .	227
B.9	Sums Over Lattices . . . . .	228
<b>C</b>	<b>Algebra</b>	<b>229</b>
C.1	Character Groups . . . . .	229
C.2	Representation Theory . . . . .	229
<b>D</b>	<b>Miscellaneous</b>	<b>231</b>
D.1	Special Integrals . . . . .	231

# Part I

## Background Material

# Chapter 1

## Preliminaries

There is quite a bit of knowledge that most authors assume one is fluent in when writing any text on analytic number theory that is not necessarily standard material every reader knows. A good selection is the following:

- Asymptotic Notation,
- Dirichlet Characters,
- Special Sums,
- Integral Methods & Transforms,
- The Gamma Function.

This is not an extensive list (depending on whom is writing), but it is a decent one for sure. In the interest of keeping this text mostly self-contained, this chapter is dedicated to the basics of these topics as they are the gadgets that will take center stage in our later investigations. A well-versed reader is encouraged to skim these sections for completeness. On the other hand, readers who are not completely comfortable these topics are encouraged to read this chapter in full and accept the material mentioned without proof as black box. The mathematics presented in this chapter belongs to an analytic number theorist's tool box rather than being pure analytic number theory. In order to improve the readability of the remainder of the text we will use the results presented here without reference unless it is a matter of clarity. As for standard knowledge, we assume familiarity with basic number theory, complex analysis, real analysis, functional analysis, topology, and algebra. We have also outsourced specific subtopics to the appendix and we will reference them when necessary.

### 1.1 Notational Conventions

Here we make some notational conventions throughout the rest of the text unless specified otherwise:

- For the complex variable  $s$ , we will denote  $s = \sigma + it$  so that  $\sigma$  and  $t$  are the real and imaginary parts of  $s$  respectively.
- The symbol  $\varepsilon$  denotes a small positive constant ( $\varepsilon > 0$ ) that is not necessarily the same from line to line.
- If  $a \in (\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$ , we will always let  $\bar{a}$  denote the multiplicative inverse. That is,  $a\bar{a} \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$ .

- For a sum  $\sum$  over integers satisfying a congruence condition,  $\sum'$  will denote the sum restricted to relatively prime integers satisfying the same congruence.
- We will write  $\int_{(a)}$  for the complex integral over the vertical line whose real part is  $a$  and with positive orientation.
- $\delta_{a,b}$  will denote the indicator function for  $a = b$ . That is,  $\delta_{a,b} = 1, 0$  according to if  $a = b$  or not.

## 1.2 Asymptotic Notation

Much of the language of analytic number theory is given in asymptotic notation as it allows us to discuss approximate growth and dispense with superfluous constants. For this reason, asymptotic notation is the first material that we will present. The asymptotic notations that we will cover are listed in the following table:

Estimate	Notation
Big O	$f(z) = O(g(z))$
Vinogradov's symbol	$f(z) \ll g(z)$
Order of magnitude symbol	$f(z) \asymp g(z)$
Little o	$f(z) = o(g(z))$
Asymptotic equivalence	$f(z) \sim g(z)$
Omega symbol	$f(z) = \Omega(g(z))$

Implicit in all of these estimates is some limiting process  $z \rightarrow z_0$  where  $z_0$  is some complex number or  $\infty$  (and  $\pm\infty$  for the real case respectively). If  $z_0$  is finite, then it is understood that the estimate is assumed to hold for all  $z$  such that  $|z - z_0| < \delta$  for some real  $\delta > 0$ . If  $z_0$  is infinite, then the estimate is assumed to hold for all sufficiently large values of  $z$ . That is,  $|z| > z_0$  for some  $z_0$  (and  $z > z_0$  or  $z < z_0$  in the real case for  $\pm\infty$  respectively). If the limiting process is not explicitly mentioned, it is assumed to be as  $z \rightarrow \infty$  (or as  $+\infty$  or  $-\infty$  for the real case depending upon the context and even then we may exclude the sign for brevity).

**Remark 1.2.1.** Suppose  $f, g : \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ . Extending  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  by making them piecewise linear so that  $f, g : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is piecewise continuous, we can consider estimates with  $n$  in place of  $z$ . All of the following theory still holds. Moreover, if we further take  $f(x)$  or  $g(x)$  to be a constant function, the following theory will still hold.

### O-estimates & Symbols

We say  $f(z)$  is of order  $g(z)$  or  $f(z)$  is  $O(g(z))$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$  and write  $f(z) = O(g(z))$  if there is some positive constant  $c$  such that

$$|f(z)| \leq c|g(z)|,$$

holds as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ . We call this a **O-estimate**.

**Remark 1.2.2.** *Many authors assume that  $g(z)$  is a nonnegative function so that the absolute values on  $g(z)$  can be dropped. As we require other forms of asymptotic notation that will be used more generally, we do not make this assumption since one could very well replace  $O(g(z))$  with  $O(|g(z)|)$ . In practice this deviation causes no issue.*

As a symbol, let  $O(g(z))$  stand for a function  $f(z)$  that is  $O(g(z))$ . Then we may use the  $O$ -estimates in algebraic equations. Note that this extends the definition of the symbol because  $f(z) = O(g(z))$  means  $f(z)$  is  $O(g(z))$ . The  $O$ -estimate says that for  $z$  close to  $z_0$ , the size of  $f(z)$  grows like  $g(z)$ . The constant  $c$  is not unique as any  $c' > c$  also works. Any such constant is called the **implicit constant** of the  $O$ -estimate. The implicit constant may depend on one or more parameters,  $\varepsilon$ ,  $\sigma$ , etc. If we wish to make these dependences known, we use subscripts  $O_\varepsilon$ ,  $O_\sigma$ ,  $O_{\varepsilon,\sigma}$ , etc. If it is possible to choose the implicit constant independent of a certain parameter then we say that the estimate is **uniform** with respect to that parameter. Moreover, we say that an implicit constant is **effective** if the constant is numerically computable and **ineffective** otherwise. Moreover, if we are interested in the dependence of the estimate on a certain parameter, say  $p$ , we will refer to the  **$p$ -aspect** to mean the part of the estimate that is dependent upon  $p$ .

The symbol  $\ll$  is known as **Vinogradov's symbol** is an alternative way to express  $O$ -estimates. We write  $f(z) \ll g(z)$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$  if  $f(z) = O(g(z))$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ . We also write  $f(z) \gg g(z)$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$  to mean  $g(z) \ll f(z)$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ . If there is a dependence of the implicit constant on parameters, we use subscripts to denote dependence on these parameters. If both  $f(z) \ll g(z)$  and  $g(z) \ll f(z)$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ , then we say  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  have the **same order of magnitude** and write  $f(z) \asymp g(z)$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ . This is different from the  $O$ -estimate in the respect that for  $z$  close to  $z_0$ ,  $f(z)$  grows like  $g(z)$  and conversely  $g(z)$  grows like  $f(z)$ . In other words,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  grow the same. If there is a dependence of the implicit constant on parameters, we use subscripts to denote dependence on these parameters. From the definition of the  $O$ -estimate, this is equivalent to the existence of positive constants  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  such that

$$c_1|g(z)| \leq |f(z)| \leq c_2|g(z)|.$$

Equivalently, we can interchange  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  in the above equation.

## $o$ -estimates & Symbols

We say  $f(z)$  is **of smaller order than**  $g(z)$  or  $f(z)$  is  $o(g(z))$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$  and write  $f(z) = o(g(z))$  if

$$\lim_{z \rightarrow z_0} \left| \frac{f(z)}{g(z)} \right| = 0,$$

provided  $g(z) \neq 0$  for all  $z$  sufficiently close to  $z_0$ . We call this a  **$o$ -estimate**. The  $o$ -estimate says that for  $z$  close to  $z_0$ ,  $g(z)$  dominates  $f(z)$ . If  $f(z) = o(g(z))$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ , then  $f(z) = O(g(z))$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$  where the implicit constant can be taken arbitrarily small by definition of the  $o$ -estimate. Therefore,  $o$ -estimates are stronger than  $O$ -estimates. As a symbol, let  $o(g(z))$  stand for a function  $f(z)$  that is  $o(g(z))$ . Then we may use the  $o$ -estimates in algebraic equations. Note that this extends the definition of the symbol because  $f(z) = o(g(z))$  means  $f(z)$  is  $o(g(z))$ .

We say  $f(z)$  is **asymptotic to**  $g(z)$  or  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are **asymptotically equivalent** as  $z \rightarrow z_0$  and write  $f(z) \sim g(z)$  if

$$\lim_{z \rightarrow z_0} \left| \frac{f(z)}{g(z)} \right| = 1,$$

provided  $g(z) \neq 0$  for all  $z$  sufficiently close to  $z_0$ . It is useful to think of asymptotic equivalence as  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  being the same size in the limit as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ . Immediately from the definition, we see that this



is an equivalence relation on functions. In particular, if  $f(z) \sim g(z)$  and  $g(z) \sim h(z)$  then  $f(z) \sim h(z)$ . Also, if  $f(z) \sim g(z)$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ , then  $f(z) \asymp g(z)$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$  with  $c_1 \leq 1 \leq c_2$ . So asymptotic equivalence is stronger than being of the same order of magnitude. Also note that  $f(x) \sim g(x)$  is equivalent to  $f(x) = g(x)(1 + o(1))$  and hence implies  $f(x) = g(x)(1 + O(1))$ . We write  $f(z) = \Omega(g(z))$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$  if

$$\limsup_{z \rightarrow z_0} \left| \frac{f(z)}{g(z)} \right| > 0.$$

This is precisely the negation of  $f(z) = o(g(z))$ , so that  $f(z) = \Omega(g(z))$  means  $f(z) = o(g(z))$  is false. In other words, for  $z$  near  $z_0$  the growth of  $g(z)$  does not dominate the growth of  $f(z)$ . This is weaker than  $f(z) \gg g(z)$  because  $f(z) = \Omega(g(z))$  means  $|f(z)| \geq c|g(z)|$  for values of  $z$  arbitrarily close to  $z_0$  whereas  $f(z) \gg g(z)$  means  $|f(z)| \geq c|g(z)|$  for all values of  $z$  sufficiently close to  $z_0$ .

## Algebraic Manipulation for $O$ -estimates and $o$ -estimates

Asymptotic estimates become increasingly more useful when we can use them in equations to represent approximations. We catalogue some of the most useful algebraic manipulations for  $O$ -estimates and  $o$ -estimates. Most importantly, if an algebraic equation involves a  $O$ -estimate or  $o$ -estimate then it is understood that the equation is not symmetric and is interpreted to be read from left to right. That is, any function of the form satisfying the estimate on the left-hand side also satisfies the estimate on the right-hand side too. We begin with  $O$ -estimates. The trivial algebraic manipulations are collected in the proposition below:

**Proposition 1.2.1.** *The following  $O$ -estimates hold as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ :*

- (i) *If  $f(z) = O(g(z))$  and  $g(z) = O(h(z))$ , then  $f(z) = O(h(z))$ . Equivalently,  $O(O(h(z))) = O(h(z))$ .*
- (ii) *If  $f_i(z) = O(g_i(z))$  for  $i = 1, 2$ , then  $f_1(z)f_2(z) = O(g_1(z)g_2(z))$ .*
- (iii) *If  $f(z) = O(g(z)h(z))$ , then  $f(z) = g(z)O(h(z))$ .*
- (iv) *If  $f_i(z) = O(g_i(z))$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , then  $\sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} f_i(z) = O\left(\sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} |g_i(z)|\right)$ .*
- (v) *If  $f_n(z) = O(g_n(z))$  for  $n \geq 1$ , then  $\sum_{n \geq 1} f_n(z) = O\left(\sum_{n \geq 1} |g_n(z)|\right)$  provided both  $\sum_{n \geq 1} f_n(z)$  and  $\sum_{n \geq 1} |g_n(z)|$  converge.*
- (vi) *If  $f(z) = O(g(z))$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$  and  $h(z)$  is such that  $h(z) \rightarrow z_0$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ , then  $(f \circ h)(z) = O((g \circ h)(z))$ .*
- (vii) *If  $f(z) = O(g(z))$ , then  $\operatorname{Re}(f(z)) = O(g(z))$  and  $\operatorname{Im}(f(z)) = O(g(z))$ .*

*Proof.* Statements (i)-(iii) and (vi) follow immediately from the definition of the  $O$ -estimate. Statement (iv) follows from the definition and the triangle inequality. Statement (v) follows in the same way as (iv) given that both sums converge. Statement (vii) follows from the definition and the bounds  $|\operatorname{Re}(z)| \leq |z|$  and  $|\operatorname{Im}(z)| \leq |z|$ .  $\square$

We will also often use Proposition 1.2.1 (vi) in the case of the input for a function. The most common instances will be when  $z \asymp w$  or  $z \sim w$  (the latter case implying the former) where  $w$  is a function of  $z$  (usually one that is more simple than  $z$  itself). Taking  $h(z) = w$ , Proposition 1.2.1 (vi) says that if  $f(z) = O(g(z))$  then  $f(w) = O(g(w))$ . In terms of Vinogradov's symbol,  $f(z) \ll g(z)$  implies  $f(w) \ll g(w)$ .  $O$ -estimates also behave well with respect to integrals provided the functions involved are of a real variable:

**Proposition 1.2.2.** *Suppose  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are functions of a real variable,  $f(z) = O(g(z))$  as  $z \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $f(z)$  and  $g(z)$  are integrable on the region where this estimate holds, and let  $[z_1, z_2]$  belong to this region. Then*

$$\int_{z_1}^{z_2} f(z) dz = O\left(\int_{z_1}^{z_2} |g(z)| dz\right).$$

*Proof.* This follows immediately from the definition of the  $O$ -estimate. □

The next proposition is a collection of some useful expressions for simplifying equations involving  $O$ -estimates:

**Proposition 1.2.3.** *Let  $f(z)$  be a function such that  $f(z) \rightarrow 0$  as  $z \rightarrow 0$ . The following  $O$ -estimates hold as  $z \rightarrow 0$ :*

- (i)  $\frac{1}{1+O(f(z))} = 1 + O(f(z))$ .
- (ii)  $(1 + O(f(z)))^p = 1 + O(f(z))$  for any complex number  $p$ .
- (iii)  $\log(1 + O(f(z))) = O(f(z))$ .
- (iv)  $e^{1+O(f(z))} = 1 + O(f(z))$ .

*Proof.* Taking the Taylor series truncated after the first term and applying Taylor's theorem, we have the  $O$ -estimates

- (i)  $\frac{1}{1+z} = 1 + O(z)$ .
- (ii)  $(1+z)^p = 1 + O(z)$ .
- (iii)  $\log(1+z) = O(z)$ .
- (iv)  $e^z = 1 + O(z)$ .

Now apply Proposition 1.2.1 (v) with  $h(z) = O(f(z))$  to each of these estimates, and use Proposition 1.2.1 (i). □

For  $o$ -estimates, the following properties are useful:

**Proposition 1.2.4.** *The following  $o$ -estimates hold as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ :*

- (i) *If  $f(z) = o(g(z))$  and  $g(z) = o(h(z))$ , then  $f(z) = o(h(z))$ . Equivalently,  $o(o(h(z))) = o(h(z))$ .*
- (ii) *If  $f_i(z) = o(g_i(z))$  for  $i = 1, 2$ , then  $f_1(z)f_2(z) = o(g_1(z)g_2(z))$ .*
- (iii) *If  $f(z) = o(g(z)h(z))$ , then  $f(z) = g(z)o(h(z))$ .*
- (iv) *If  $f_i(z) = o(g_i(z))$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , then  $\sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} f_i(z) = o\left(\sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} |g_i(z)|\right)$ .*
- (v) *If  $f(z) = o(g(z))$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$  and  $h(z)$  is such that  $h(z) \rightarrow z_0$  as  $z \rightarrow z_0$ , then  $(f \circ h)(z) = o((g \circ h)(z))$ .*

*Proof.* Statements (i)-(iii) and (v) follow immediately from the definition of the  $o$ -estimate and basic properties of limits. Statement (iv) follows from the definition and that  $\sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} |g_i(z)| \geq |g_i(z)|$  for any  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . □

## Growth of Functions

We will also be interested in the growth rate of functions. We can compactly express these types of growth using asymptotic notation. There are many types of growth rates, but we will only recall the ones that will be of use to us. Let  $f(z)$  be a complex function and let  $z \rightarrow z_0$ . If  $f(z) = O(\log(z))$  we say that  $f(z)$  is of **logarithmic growth**. If  $f(z) = O(z^c)$ , for some  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ , we say that  $f(z)$  is of **polynomial growth**. If  $f(z) = o(e^z)$ , we say that  $f(z)$  is of **moderate growth**. If  $f(z) = O(e^z)$ , we say that  $f(z)$  is of **exponential growth**. Now suppose  $z \rightarrow \infty$ . If  $f(z) = o(\log^{-1}(z))$  we say that  $f(z)$  is of **logarithmic decay**. If  $f(z) = o(x^{-c})$  for some  $c \geq 1$ , we say that  $f(z)$  has **polynomial decay**. If  $f(z) = o(x^{-c})$  for all  $c \geq 1$ , we say that  $f(z)$  has **moderate decay**. If  $f(z) = o(e^{-z})$ , we say that  $f(z)$  has **exponential decay**.

## 1.3 Dirichlet Characters

The most important multiplicative periodic functions for an analytic number theorist are the Dirichlet characters. A **Dirichlet character**  $\chi$  modulo  $m \geq 1$  (or of modulus  $m \geq 1$ ) is an  $m$ -periodic completely multiplicative function  $\chi : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  such that  $\chi(a) = 0$  if and only if  $(a, m) > 1$ . Sometimes we will also write  $\chi_m$  to denote a Dirichlet character modulo  $m$  if we need to express the dependence upon the modulus. For any  $m$ , there is always the **principal Dirichlet character** modulo  $m$  which we denote by  $\chi_{m,0}$  (sometimes also seen as  $\chi_{0,m}$  or the ever more confusing  $\chi_0$ ) and is defined by

$$\chi_{m,0}(a) = \begin{cases} 1 & (a, m) = 1, \\ 0 & (a, m) > 1. \end{cases}$$

When  $m = 1$ , the principal Dirichlet character is identically 1 and we call this the **trivial Dirichlet character**. This is also the only Dirichlet character modulo 1, so  $\chi_1 = \chi_{1,0}$ . In general, we say a Dirichlet character  $\chi$  is **principal** if it only takes values 0 or 1. We now discuss some basic facts of Dirichlet characters. Since  $a^{\varphi(m)} \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$  by Euler's little theorem, where  $\varphi$  is Euler's totient function, the multiplicativity of  $\chi$  implies  $\chi(a)^{\varphi(m)} = 1$ . Therefore the nonzero values of  $\chi_m$  are  $\varphi(m)$ -th roots of unity. In particular, there are only finitely many Dirichlet characters of any fixed modulus  $m$ . Given two Dirichlet character  $\chi$  and  $\psi$  modulo  $m$ , we define  $\chi\psi$  by  $\chi\psi(a) = \chi(a)\psi(a)$ . This is also a Dirichlet character modulo  $m$ , so the Dirichlet characters modulo  $m$  form an abelian group denoted by  $X_m$ . If we have a Dirichlet character  $\chi$  modulo  $m$ , then  $\bar{\chi}$  defined by  $\bar{\chi}(a) = \overline{\chi(a)}$  is also a Dirichlet character modulo  $m$  and is called the **conjugate Dirichlet character** of  $\chi$ . Since the nonzero values of  $\chi$  are roots of unity, if  $(a, m) = 1$  then  $\bar{\chi}(a) = \chi(a)^{-1}$ . So  $\bar{\chi}$  is the inverse of  $\chi$ . This is all strikingly similar to characters on  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$  (see Appendix C.1), and there is a connection. To see it, by the periodicity of  $\chi$ , it's nonzero values are uniquely determined by  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$ . Then since  $\chi$  is multiplicative, it descends to a character  $\chi$  of  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$  (we abuse notation here). Conversely, if we are given a character  $\chi$  of  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$  we can extend it to a Dirichlet character by defining it to be  $m$ -periodic and declaring  $\chi(a) = 0$  if  $(a, m) > 1$ . We call this extension the **zero extension**. So in other words, Dirichlet characters modulo  $m$  are the zero extensions of group characters on  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$ . Clearly zero-extension respects multiplication of characters. As groups are isomorphic to their character groups (see Proposition C.1.1), we deduce that the group of Dirichlet characters modulo  $m$  is isomorphic to  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$ . That is,  $X_m \cong (\widehat{\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}})^* \cong (\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$ . In particular, there are  $\varphi(m)$  Dirichlet characters modulo  $m$ . From now on we identify Dirichlet characters modulo  $m$  with their corresponding group characters of  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$ . We now state two very useful relations called **orthogonality relations** for Dirichlet characters (this follows from the more general orthogonality relations in Appendix C.1 but we wish to give a direct proof):

**Proposition 1.3.1.**

(i) For any two Dirichlet characters  $\chi$  and  $\psi$  modulo  $m$ ,

$$\frac{1}{\varphi(m)} \sum'_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) \overline{\psi}(a) = \delta_{\chi, \psi}.$$

(ii) For any  $a, b \in (\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$ ,

$$\frac{1}{\varphi(m)} \sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \chi(a) \overline{\chi}(b) = \delta_{a, b}.$$

*Proof.* We will prove the statements separately.

(i) Denote the left-hand side by  $S$  and let  $b$  be such that  $(b, m) = 1$ . Then  $a \rightarrow ab^{-1}$  is a bijection on  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$  so that

$$\frac{\chi(b) \overline{\psi}(b)}{\varphi(m)} \sum'_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) \overline{\psi}(a) = \frac{1}{\varphi(m)} \sum'_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(ab) \overline{\psi}(ab) = \frac{1}{\varphi(m)} \sum'_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) \overline{\psi}(a).$$

Consequently  $\chi(b) \overline{\psi}(b) S = S$  so that  $S = 0$  unless  $\chi(b) \overline{\psi}(b) = 1$  for all  $b$  such that  $(b, m) = 1$ . This happens if and only if  $\psi = \chi$  in which case  $S = 1$ . This proves (i).

(ii) Denote the left-hand side by  $S$ . Let  $\psi$  be any Dirichlet character modulo  $m$ . As  $\chi \rightarrow \chi \overline{\psi}$  is a bijection on  $X_m$ , we have

$$\frac{\psi(a) \overline{\psi}(b)}{\varphi(m)} \sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \chi(a) \overline{\chi}(b) = \frac{1}{\varphi(m)} \sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \psi \chi(a) \overline{\psi \chi}(b) = \frac{1}{\varphi(m)} \sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \chi(a) \overline{\chi}(b).$$

Therefore  $\psi(a) \overline{\psi}(b) S = S$  so that  $S = 0$  unless  $\psi(a) \overline{\psi}(b) = \psi(a \overline{b}) = 1$  for all Dirichlet characters  $\psi$  modulo  $m$ . If this happens, then  $a \overline{b} = 1 \pmod{m}$ , or equivalently,  $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ . Indeed, let  $m = p_1^{r_1} p_2^{r_2} \cdots p_k^{r_k}$  be the prime factorization of  $m$ . By the classification theorem for finite abelian groups,

$$(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^* \cong (\mathbb{Z}/p_1^{r_1}\mathbb{Z})^* \times (\mathbb{Z}/p_2^{r_2}\mathbb{Z})^* \times \cdots \times (\mathbb{Z}/p_k^{r_k}\mathbb{Z})^*.$$

Now let  $n_i$  be a generator for the cyclic group  $(\mathbb{Z}/p_i^{r_i}\mathbb{Z})^*$  and let  $\omega_i$  be a primitive  $p_i^{r_i}$ -th root of unity for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Writing  $a \overline{b} = n_1^{f_1} n_2^{f_2} \cdots n_k^{f_k}$ , consider the Dirichlet character  $\psi$  modulo  $m$  defined by

$$\psi(n_1^{e_1} n_2^{e_2} \cdots n_k^{e_k}) = \omega_1^{e_1 f_1} \omega_2^{e_2 f_2} \cdots \omega_r^{e_r f_r}.$$

We have

$$\psi(1) = \omega_1^{f_1} \omega_2^{f_2} \cdots \omega_r^{f_r}.$$

As  $w_i$  has order  $p_i^{r_i}$  and  $0 \leq f_i < p_i^{r_i} - 1$  for all  $i$ , the only way  $\psi(1) = 1$  is if  $f_i = 0$  for all  $i$ . Therefore  $a \overline{b} = 1 \pmod{m}$ . In this case  $S = 1$ . This proves (ii).  $\square$

In many practical settings, the orthogonality relations are often used in the following form:

**Corollary 1.3.1.**

(i) For any Dirichlet character  $\chi$  modulo  $m$ ,

$$\frac{1}{\varphi(m)} \sum'_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) = \delta_{\chi, \chi_{m,0}}.$$

(ii) For any  $a \in (\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$ ,

$$\frac{1}{\varphi(m)} \sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \chi(a) = \delta_{a,1}.$$

*Proof.* For (i), take  $\psi = \chi_{m,0}$  in Proposition 1.3.1 (i). For (ii), take  $b \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$  in Proposition 1.3.1 (ii).  $\square$

Now that we understand the basics of Dirichlet characters, we might be interested in computing them. This is not hard to do by hand for small  $m$ . For example, the table below gives the Dirichlet characters modulo 5 where  $i$  in  $\chi_{5,i}$  is an indexing variable:

	0	1	2	3	4
$\chi_{5,0}$	0	1	1	1	1
$\chi_{5,1}$	0	1	$i$	$-i$	$-1$
$\chi_{5,2}$	0	1	$-i$	$i$	$-1$
$\chi_{5,3}$	0	1	$-1$	$-1$	1

If the modulus is large this is of course more difficult. However, there is a way to build Dirichlet characters modulo  $m_2$  from those modulo  $m_1$ . Let  $\chi_{m_1}$  be a Dirichlet character modulo  $m_1$ . If  $m_1 \mid m_2$  then  $(a, m_2) = 1$  implies  $(a, m_1) = 1$ . Therefore we can define a Dirichlet character  $\chi_{m_2}$  by

$$\chi_{m_2}(a) = \begin{cases} \chi_{m_1}(a) & \text{if } (a, m_2) = 1, \\ 0 & \text{if } (a, m_2) > 1. \end{cases}$$

In this case, we say  $\chi_{m_2}$  is **induced** from  $\chi_{m_1}$  or that  $\chi_{m_1}$  **lifts** to  $\chi_{m_2}$ . All that is happening is  $\chi_{m_2}$  is a Dirichlet character modulo  $m_2$  whose values are given by those that  $\chi_{m_1}$  takes. Clearly every Dirichlet character is induced from itself. On the other hand, provided there is a prime  $p$  dividing  $m_2$  and not  $m_1$  (so  $m_2$  is a larger modulus),  $\chi_{m_2}$  will be different from  $\chi_{m_1}$ . For instance,  $\chi_{m_2}(p) = 0$  but  $\chi_{m_1}(p) \neq 0$ . In general, we say a Dirichlet character is **primitive** if it is not induced by any character other than itself. Notice that the principal Dirichlet characters are precisely those Dirichlet characters induced from the trivial Dirichlet character, and the only primitive one is the trivial Dirichlet character. In any case, we can determine when Dirichlet characters are induced:

**Proposition 1.3.2.** *A Dirichlet character  $\chi_{m_2}$  is induced from a Dirichlet character  $\chi_{m_1}$  if and only if  $\chi_{m_2}$  is constant on the residue classes in  $(\mathbb{Z}/m_2\mathbb{Z})^*$  that are congruent modulo  $m_1$ . When this happens,  $\chi_{m_1}$  is uniquely determined.*

*Proof.* For the forward implication, if  $\chi_{m_2}$  is induced from  $\chi_{m_1}$ , then  $\chi_{m_2}$  is constant on the residue classes in  $(\mathbb{Z}/m_2\mathbb{Z})^*$  that are congruent modulo  $m_1$  because  $\chi_{m_1}$  is. For the reverse implication, we first show that the reduction modulo  $m_1$  map  $\mathbb{Z}/m_2\mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}/m_1\mathbb{Z}$  induces a surjective homomorphism

$\Phi : (\mathbb{Z}/m_2\mathbb{Z})^* \rightarrow (\mathbb{Z}/m_1\mathbb{Z})^*$ . For  $u_1 \in (\mathbb{Z}/m_1\mathbb{Z})^*$ , let  $a$  be the product of all primes dividing  $\frac{m_2}{m_1}$  but not  $u_1$ . Then  $u_2 = u_1 + m_1a$  is not divisible by any prime  $p$  dividing  $m_1$  or  $\frac{m_2}{m_1}$ . Hence  $(u_2, m_2) = 1$  so that  $u_2 \in (\mathbb{Z}/m_2\mathbb{Z})^*$ . Note that  $a$  is uniquely determined by  $u_1$  so that  $u_2$  is uniquely determined and hence  $\Phi$  is unique. It's also a homomorphism because reduction modulo  $m_1$  is. Now suppose  $\chi_{m_2}$  is constant on the residue classes in  $(\mathbb{Z}/m_2\mathbb{Z})^*$  that are congruent modulo  $m_1$ . Surjectivity of  $\Phi$  implies  $\chi_{m_2}$  induces a unique group character on  $(\mathbb{Z}/m_1\mathbb{Z})^*$  and hence a unique Dirichlet character modulo  $m_1$ . By construction  $\chi_{m_2}$  is induced from  $\chi_{m_1}$ .  $\square$

Why might we be interested in primitive Dirichlet characters? The reason is that the primitive Dirichlet character are the building blocks for all Dirichlet characters:

**Theorem 1.3.1.** *Every Dirichlet character  $\chi$  is induced from a primitive Dirichlet character  $\tilde{\chi}$  that is uniquely determined by  $\chi$ .*

*Proof.* Let the modulus of  $\chi$  be  $m$ . Define a partial ordering on the set of Dirichlet characters where  $\psi \leq \chi$  if  $\chi$  is induced from  $\psi$ . This ordering is clearly reflexive, and it is transitive by Proposition 1.3.2. Set  $X = \{\psi : \psi \leq \chi\}$ . This set is nonempty, and is finite by Proposition 1.3.2. Now suppose  $\chi_{m_1}, \chi_{m_2} \in X$ . Setting  $m_3 = (m_1, m_2)$ , and we have a commuting square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^* & \xrightarrow{\Phi} & (\mathbb{Z}/m_1\mathbb{Z})^* \\ \Phi \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ (\mathbb{Z}/m_2\mathbb{Z})^* & \longrightarrow & (\mathbb{Z}/m_3\mathbb{Z})^* \end{array}$$

where  $\Phi$  is as in Proposition 1.3.2. Also from Proposition 1.3.2,  $\chi$  is constant on the residue classes of  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$  that are congruent modulo  $m_1$  or  $m_2$  and hence also  $m_3$ . Therefore Proposition 1.3.2 implies there is a unique Dirichlet character  $\chi_{m_3}$  modulo  $m_3$  that lifts to  $\chi_{m_1}$  and  $\chi_{m_2}$ . We have now shown that every pair  $\chi_{m_1}, \chi_{m_2} \in X$  has a lower bound  $\chi_{m_3}$ . Hence  $X$  contains a primitive Dirichlet character  $\tilde{\chi}$  that is minimal with respect to this partial ordering. There is only one such element. Indeed, since  $m_3 \leq m_1, m_2$  the partial ordering is compatible with the total ordering by period. Thus  $\tilde{\chi}$  is unique.  $\square$

In light of Theorem 1.3.1, we define **conductor**  $q$  of a Dirichlet character  $\chi$  modulo  $m$  to be the period of the unique primitive character  $\tilde{\chi}$  that induces  $\chi$ . This is the most important data of a Dirichlet character since it tells us how  $\chi$  is built. Note that  $\chi$  is primitive if and only if its conductor and modulus are equal. Also observe that if  $\chi$  has conductor  $q$ , then  $\chi$  is  $q$ -periodic (necessarily  $q \mid m$ ), and the nonzero values of  $\chi$  are all  $q$ -th roots of unity because those are the nonzero values of  $\tilde{\chi}$ . Moreover,  $\chi = \tilde{\chi}\chi_{\frac{m}{q},0}$  by the definition of induced Dirichlet characters. We would also like to distinguish Dirichlet characters whose nonzero values are real or imaginary. We say  $\chi$  is **real** if it is real-valued. Hence the nonzero values of  $\chi$  are 1 or  $-1$  since they must be roots of unity. We say  $\chi$  is an **complex** if it is not real. More commonly, we distinguish Dirichlet characters modulo  $m$  by their order as an element of  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$ . If  $\chi$  is of order 2, 3, etc in  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$  then we say it is **quadratic**, **cubic**, etc. In particular, a Dirichlet character is quadratic if and only if it is real. For example, if  $m$  is odd then the Jacobi symbol  $(\frac{\cdot}{m})$  is a quadratic Dirichlet character. We will often let  $\chi_m$  denote this quadratic Dirichlet character but we will always mention this explicitly when we do so. For any Dirichlet character  $\chi$ ,  $\chi(-1) = \pm 1$  because  $\chi(-1)^2 = 1$ . We would like to distinguish this parity. Accordingly, we say  $\chi$  is **even** if  $\chi(-1) = 1$  and **odd** if  $\chi(-1) = -1$ . Clearly even Dirichlet characters are even functions and odd Dirichlet characters are odd functions. Moreover,  $\chi$  and  $\bar{\chi}$  have the same parity and any lift of  $\chi$  has the same parity as  $\chi$ .

## 1.4 Special Sums

Analytic number theory does not come without its class of special sums that appear naturally. They play the role of discrete counterparts to continuous objects (there is a rich underpinning here). Without a sufficient understanding of these sums, they would cause a discrete obstruction to an analytic problem that we wish to solve.

### Ramanujan Sums

Let's begin with the Ramanujan sum. For a positive integer  $m$  and any integer  $b$ , the **Ramanujan sum**  $r(b; m)$  is defined by

$$r(b; m) = \sum'_{a \pmod{m}} e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}}.$$

Note that the Ramanujan sum is a finite sum of  $m$ -th roots of unity on the unit circle. Clearly  $r(0; m) = \varphi(m)$ . Ramanujan sums can be computed explicitly by means of the Möbius function (see Appendix A.1):

**Proposition 1.4.1.** *For any positive integer  $m$  and any nonzero  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,*

$$r(b; m) = \sum_{\ell | (b, m)} \ell \mu\left(\frac{m}{\ell}\right).$$

*Proof.* This is a computation:

$$\begin{aligned} r(b; m) &= \sum'_{a \pmod{m}} e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} \\ &= \sum_{a \pmod{m}} e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} \sum_{d | (a, m)} \mu(d) && \text{Proposition A.2.1} \\ &= \sum_{d | m} \mu(d) \sum_{\substack{a \pmod{m} \\ d | a}} e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} \\ &= \sum_{d | m} \mu(d) \sum_{kd \pmod{m}} e^{\frac{2\pi i kdb}{m}} && a \rightarrow kd. \\ &= \sum_{d | m} \mu(d) \sum_{k \pmod{\frac{m}{d}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i kb}{\frac{m}{d}}}. \end{aligned}$$

Now if  $\frac{m}{d} \mid b$  the inner sum is  $\frac{m}{d}$ , and otherwise it is zero because  $k \rightarrow k\bar{b}$  is a bijection on  $\mathbb{Z}/\frac{m}{d}\mathbb{Z}$  and thus we are summing over all  $(\frac{m}{d})$ -th roots of unity. So the double sum above reduces to

$$\sum_{\substack{\frac{m}{d} \mid b \\ d | m}} \frac{m}{d} \mu(d) = \sum_{\ell | (b, m)} \ell \mu\left(\frac{m}{\ell}\right),$$

upon performing the change of variables  $\frac{m}{d} \rightarrow \ell$ . □

## Gauss Sums

When we take a Ramanujan sum and introduce a Dirichlet character we get a Gauss sums. Let  $\chi$  be a Dirichlet character modulo  $m$ . For any  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$ , the **Gauss sum**  $\tau(b, \chi)$  attached to  $\chi$  is given by

$$\tau(b, \chi) = \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} = \sum'_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}},$$

where the last equality follows because  $\chi(a) = 0$  unless  $(a, m) = 1$ . If  $b = 1$  we will write  $\tau(\chi)$  instead. That is,  $\tau(\chi) = \tau(1, \chi)$ . Gauss sums are interesting because the Dirichlet character is a multiplicative character while the exponential is an additive one. So the Gauss sums is a convolution between a multiplicative and additive character. This is the fundamental reason that makes them difficult to study as one needs to separate the additive and multiplicative structures. Observe that if  $m = 1$  then  $\chi$  is the trivial character and  $\tau(b, \chi) = 1$ . So the interesting cases are when  $m \geq 2$ . There are some basic properties of Gauss sums that are very useful:

**Proposition 1.4.2.** *Let  $\chi$  and  $\psi$  be nontrivial Dirichlet characters modulo  $m$  and  $n$  respectively and let  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then the following hold:*

- (i)  $\overline{\tau(b, \chi)} = \chi(-1)\tau(b, \bar{\chi})$ .
- (ii) If  $(b, m) = 1$ , then  $\tau(b, \chi) = \bar{\chi}(b)\tau(\chi)$ .
- (iii) If  $(b, m) > 1$  and  $\chi$  is primitive, then  $\tau(b, \chi) = 0$ .
- (iv) If  $(m, n) = 1$ , then  $\tau(b, \chi\psi) = \chi(n)\psi(m)\tau(b, \chi)\tau(b, \psi)$ .
- (v) Let  $q$  be the conductor of  $\chi$  and let  $\tilde{\chi}$  be the primitive Dirichlet character that lifts to  $\chi$ . Then

$$\tau(\chi) = \mu\left(\frac{m}{q}\right) \tilde{\chi}\left(\frac{m}{q}\right) \tau(\tilde{\chi}).$$

*Proof.* We will prove the statements separately.

- (i) Observe that  $a \rightarrow -a$  is an isomorphism of  $\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$ . Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\tau(b, \chi)} &= \overline{\sum_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}}} \\ &= \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \bar{\chi}(a) e^{-\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} \\ &= \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(-a) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} \\ &= \chi(-1) \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} \\ &= \chi(-1) \tau(b, \chi), \end{aligned}$$

and (i) follows.



(ii) The map  $a \rightarrow a\bar{b}$  is an isomorphism of  $\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$  since  $(b, m) = 1$ . Therefore

$$\tau(b, \chi) = \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} = \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a\bar{b}) e^{\frac{2\pi i a}{m}} = \bar{\chi}(b) \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i a}{m}} = \bar{\chi}(b) \tau(\chi),$$

and (ii) is proven.

(iii) Now fix a divisor  $d < m$  of  $m$  and choose an integer  $c$  such that  $c \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$ . Then necessarily  $(c, m) = 1$ . As  $d \mid m$ ,  $c \equiv 1 \pmod{d}$  and  $(c, d) = 1$ . Moreover, there is such a  $c$  with the additional property that  $\chi(c) \neq 1$ . For if not,  $\chi$  is induced from  $\chi_{d,0}$  which contradicts  $\chi$  being primitive. Now set  $d = \frac{m}{(b,m)} < m$  and choose  $c$  as above. Since  $(c, m) = 1$ ,  $a \rightarrow a\bar{c}$  is a bijection on  $\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$ , so that

$$\chi(c) \tau(b, \chi) = \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(ac) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} = \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab\bar{c}}{m}}.$$

As  $e^{\frac{2\pi i b}{m}}$  is a  $d$ -th root of unity, and  $\bar{c} \equiv 1 \pmod{d}$  (because  $c$  is and  $d \mid m$ ) we have  $e^{\frac{2\pi i ab\bar{c}}{m}} = e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}}$ . Thus the last sum above is  $\tau(b, \chi)$ . So altogether  $\chi(c) \tau(b, \chi) = \tau(b, \chi)$ . Since  $\chi(c) \neq 1$ , we conclude  $\tau(b, \chi) = 0$  proving (iii).

There exists some integer  $c$  with  $(c, m) = 1$  such that  $\chi(c) \neq 1$ , for if not  $\chi$  would be principal modulo  $m \geq 2$  and therefore not primitive.

(iv) Since  $(m, n) = 1$ , the Chinese remainder theorem implies that  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}) \times (\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}) \cong (\mathbb{Z}/mn\mathbb{Z})$  via the isomorphism  $(a, b) \rightarrow an + a'm$  with  $a$  taken modulo  $m$  and  $a'$  taken modulo  $n$ . Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \tau(b, \chi\psi) &= \sum_{an+a'm \pmod{mn}} \chi\psi(an+a'm) e^{\frac{2\pi i (an+a'm)b}{mn}} \\ &= \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \sum_{a' \pmod{n}} \chi\psi(an+a'm) e^{\frac{2\pi i (an+a'm)b}{mn}} \\ &= \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \sum_{a' \pmod{n}} \chi(an+a'm) \psi(an+a'm) e^{\frac{2\pi i (an+a'm)b}{mn}} \\ &= \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \sum_{a' \pmod{n}} \chi(an) \psi(a'm) e^{\frac{2\pi i (an+a'm)b}{mn}} \\ &= \chi(n) \psi(m) \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \sum_{a' \pmod{n}} \chi(a) \psi(a') e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a'b}{n}} \\ &= \chi(n) \psi(m) \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} \sum_{a' \pmod{n}} \psi(a') e^{\frac{2\pi i a'b}{n}} \\ &= \chi(n) \psi(m) \tau(b, \chi) \tau(b, \psi). \end{aligned}$$

This proves (iv).

(v) If  $\left(\frac{m}{q}, q\right) > 1$ , then  $\tilde{\chi}\left(\frac{m}{q}\right) = 0$  so we need to show  $\tau(\chi) = 0$ . As  $\left(\frac{m}{q}, q\right) > 1$ , there exists a prime  $p$  such that  $p \mid \frac{m}{q}$  and  $p \mid q$ . By Euclidean division we may write any  $a$  modulo  $m$  in the form  $a = a'\frac{m}{p} + a''$  with  $a'$  taken modulo  $p$  and  $a''$  taken modulo  $\frac{m}{p}$ . Then

$$\tau(\chi) = \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i a}{m}} = \sum_{\substack{a' \pmod{p} \\ a'' \pmod{\frac{m}{p}}}} \chi\left(a'\frac{m}{p} + a''\right) e^{\frac{2\pi i \left(a'\frac{m}{p} + a''\right)}{m}}. \quad (1.1)$$

Since  $p \mid \left(\frac{m}{q}, q\right)$ , we have  $p^2 \mid m$ . Therefore  $\left(a'\frac{m}{p} + a'', m\right) = 1$  if and only if  $\left(a'\frac{m}{p} + a'', \frac{m}{p}\right) = 1$  and this latter condition is equivalent to  $\left(a'', \frac{m}{p}\right) = 1$ . Thus the last sum in Equation (1.1) is

$$\sum_{\substack{a' \pmod{p} \\ a'' \pmod{\frac{m}{p}} \\ (a'', \frac{m}{p})=1}} \chi\left(a'\frac{m}{p} + a''\right) e^{\frac{2\pi i(a'\frac{m}{p} + a'')}{m}}.$$

As  $p \mid \frac{m}{q}$ , we know  $q \mid \frac{m}{p}$  so that  $a'\frac{m}{p} + a'' \equiv a'' \pmod{q}$ . Then Proposition 1.3.2 implies  $\chi\left(a'\frac{m}{p} + a''\right) = \tilde{\chi}(a'')$  and this sum is further reduced to

$$\sum'_{a'' \pmod{\frac{m}{p}}} \tilde{\chi}(a'') e^{\frac{2\pi i a''}{m}} \sum_{a' \pmod{p}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a'}{p}}. \quad (1.2)$$

The inner sum in Equation (1.2) vanishes since it is the sum over all  $p$ -th roots of unity and thus  $\tau(\chi) = 0$ . Now suppose  $\left(\frac{m}{q}, q\right) = 1$ . Then (iv) implies

$$\tau(\chi) = \tau(\tilde{\chi}\chi_{\frac{m}{q},0}) = \tilde{\chi}\left(\frac{m}{q}\right) \chi_{\frac{m}{q},0}(q) \tau(\tilde{\chi}) \tau(\chi_{\frac{m}{q},0}) = \tau(\chi_{\frac{m}{q},0}) \tilde{\chi}\left(\frac{m}{q}\right) \tau(\tilde{\chi}).$$

Now observe that  $\tau(\chi_{\frac{m}{q},0}) = r\left(1; \frac{m}{q}\right)$ . By Proposition 1.4.1 we see that  $r\left(1; \frac{m}{q}\right) = \mu\left(\frac{m}{q}\right)$  and (v) follows.  $\square$

Notice that Proposition 1.4.2 reduces the evaluation of the Gauss sum  $\tau(b, \chi)$  to that of  $\tau(\chi)$  at least when  $\chi$  is primitive. When  $\chi$  is not primitive and  $(b, m) > 1$  we need to appeal to evaluating  $\tau(b, \chi)$  by more direct means. Evaluating  $\tau(\chi)$  for general characters  $\chi$  turns out to be a very difficult problem and is still open. However, it is not difficult to determine the modulus of  $\tau(\chi)$  when  $\chi$  is primitive:

**Theorem 1.4.1.** *Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q$ . Then*

$$|\tau(\chi)| = \sqrt{q}.$$

*Proof.* If  $\chi$  is the trivial character this is obvious since  $\tau(\chi) = 1$ . So we may assume  $\chi$  is nontrivial. Now this is just a computation:

$$\begin{aligned} |\tau(\chi)|^2 &= \tau(\chi) \overline{\tau(\chi)} \\ &= \sum_{a \pmod{q}} \tau(\chi) \overline{\chi}(a) e^{-\frac{2\pi i a}{q}} \\ &= \sum_{a \pmod{q}} \tau(a, \chi) e^{-\frac{2\pi i a}{q}} && \text{Proposition 1.4.2 (i) and (ii)} \\ &= \sum_{a \pmod{q}} \left( \sum_{a' \pmod{q}} \chi(a') e^{\frac{2\pi i a a'}{q}} \right) e^{-\frac{2\pi i a}{q}} \\ &= \sum_{a, a' \pmod{q}} \chi(a') e^{\frac{2\pi i a(a'-1)}{q}} \\ &= \sum_{a' \pmod{q}} \chi(a') \left( \sum_{a \pmod{q}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a(a'-1)}{q}} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Let  $S(a')$  denote the inner sum. For the  $a'$  such that  $a' - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{q}$ ,  $S(a') = q$ . Otherwise  $a \rightarrow \overline{a(a' - 1)}$  is a bijection on  $\mathbb{Z}/q\mathbb{Z}$  ( $q \neq 1$  because  $\chi$  is nontrivial) so that  $S(a') = 0$  because it is the sum of all  $q$ -th roots of unity. It follows that the double sum is  $\chi(1)q = q$ . So altogether  $|\tau(\chi)|^2 = q$  and hence  $|\tau(\chi)| = \sqrt{q}$ .  $\square$

As an almost immediate corollary to Theorem 1.4.1, we deduce a useful expression for primitive Dirichlet characters of conductor  $q$  in terms of additive characters on  $(\mathbb{Z}/q\mathbb{Z})$ :

**Corollary 1.4.1.** *Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q$ . Then*

$$\tau(n, \chi) = \overline{\chi}(n)\tau(\chi),$$

for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ . In particular,

$$\chi(n) = \frac{1}{\tau(\overline{\chi})} \sum_{a \pmod{q}} \overline{\chi}(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i a n}{q}},$$

for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

*Proof.* If  $\chi$  is the trivial character this is obvious since  $\tau(n, \chi) = 1$ . So assume  $\chi$  is nontrivial. If  $(n, q) = 1$ , then the first identity is Proposition 1.4.2 (ii). If  $(n, q) > 1$ , then the first identity follows from Proposition 1.4.2 (iii) and that  $\overline{\chi}(n) = 0$ . This proves the first identity in full. For the second identity, first note that  $\tau(\chi) \neq 0$  by Theorem 1.4.1. Replacing  $\chi$  with  $\overline{\chi}$ , dividing the first identity by  $\tau(\chi)$ , and expanding the Gauss sum, gives the second identity.  $\square$

In light of Theorem 1.4.1 we define the **epsilon factor**  $\varepsilon_\chi$  for a Dirichlet character  $\chi$  modulo  $m$  by

$$\varepsilon_\chi = \frac{\tau(\chi)}{\sqrt{m}}.$$

Theorem 1.4.1 says that this value lies on the unit circle when  $\chi$  is primitive and not the trivial character. In any case, the question of the evaluation of Gauss sums further boils down to determining what value the epsilon factor is. This is the real difficulty as the epsilon factor is very hard to calculate and its value is not known for general Dirichlet characters. When  $\chi$  is primitive, there is a simple relationship between  $\varepsilon_\chi$  and  $\varepsilon_{\overline{\chi}}$ :

**Proposition 1.4.3.** *Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q$ . Then*

$$\varepsilon_\chi \varepsilon_{\overline{\chi}} = \chi(-1).$$

*Proof.* If  $\chi$  is trivial this is obvious since  $\varepsilon_\chi = \varepsilon_{\overline{\chi}} = 1$ . So assume  $\chi$  is nontrivial. By Proposition 1.4.2 (iii) and that  $\varepsilon_\chi$  lies on the unit circle,

$$\varepsilon_\chi = \frac{\tau(\chi)}{\sqrt{q}} = \chi(-1) \frac{\overline{\tau(\chi)}}{\sqrt{q}} = \chi(-1) \varepsilon_{\overline{\chi}}^{-1},$$

from whence the statement follows.  $\square$

## Quadratic Gauss Sums

Another class of sums is a generalization of the Gauss sum in the case where the Dirichlet character is quadratic and given by the Jacobi symbol. For a positive integer  $m$  and any  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$ , the **quadratic Gauss sum**  $g(b, m)$  is defined by

$$g(b, m) = \sum_{a \pmod{m}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a^2 b}{m}}.$$

If  $b = 1$  we write  $g(m)$  instead. That is,  $g(m) = g(1, m)$ . Our language is somewhat abusive since if  $\chi_m$  is the quadratic Dirichlet character given by the Jacobi symbol, then we have the two quadratic Gauss sums  $\tau(b, \chi_m)$  and  $g(b, m)$ . It turns out that  $\tau(b, \chi_m) = g(b, m)$  if  $m$  is square-free. This will take a little work to prove. We first reduce to the case when  $(b, m) = 1$ :

**Proposition 1.4.4.** *Let  $m$  be a positive odd integer and let  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then*

$$g(b, m) = (b, m) g\left(\frac{b}{(b, m)}, \frac{m}{(b, m)}\right).$$

*Proof.* By Euclidean division write any  $a$  modulo  $m$  in the form  $a = a' \frac{m}{(b, m)} + a''$  with  $a'$  take modulo  $(b, m)$  and  $a''$  take modulo  $\frac{m}{(b, m)}$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} g(b, m) &= \sum_{a \pmod{m}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a^2 b}{m}} \\ &= \sum_{\substack{a' \pmod{(b, m)} \\ a'' \pmod{\frac{m}{(b, m)}}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i \left(a' \frac{m}{(b, m)} + a''\right)^2 b}{m}} \\ &= \sum_{a'' \pmod{\frac{m}{(b, m)}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i (a'')^2 b}{m}} \sum_{a' \pmod{(b, m)}} e^{\frac{2\pi i \left(2a'' a' \frac{m}{(b, m)} + \left(a' \frac{m}{(b, m)}\right)^2\right) b}{m}} \\ &= \sum_{a'' \pmod{\frac{m}{(b, m)}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i (a'')^2 \frac{b}{(b, m)}}{\frac{m}{(b, m)}}} \sum_{a' \pmod{(b, m)}} e^{\frac{2\pi i \left(2a'' a' \frac{m}{(b, m)} + \left(a' \frac{m}{(b, m)}\right)^2\right) \frac{b}{(b, m)}}{\frac{m}{(b, m)}}} \\ &= (b, m) \sum_{a'' \pmod{\frac{m}{(b, m)}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i (a'')^2 \frac{b}{(b, m)}}{\frac{m}{(b, m)}}}, \end{aligned}$$

where the last line follows because  $\left(2a'' a' \frac{m}{(b, m)} + \left(a' \frac{m}{(b, m)}\right)^2\right) \equiv 0 \pmod{\frac{m}{(b, m)}}$  and thus the second sum is  $(b, m)$ . The remaining sum is  $g\left(\frac{b}{(b, m)}, \frac{m}{(b, m)}\right)$  which finishes the proof.  $\square$

As a consequence of Proposition 1.4.4, we may always assume  $(b, m) = 1$ . Now we give an equivalent formulation of the Gauss sum attached to quadratic characters given by Jacobi symbols and show that in the case  $m = p$  an odd prime, our two notions of quadratic Gauss sums agree:

**Proposition 1.4.5.** *Let  $m$  be a positive odd integer and let  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $(b, m) = 1$ . Also let  $\chi_m$  be the quadratic Dirichlet character given by the Jacobi symbol. Then*

$$\tau(b, \chi_m) = \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \left(1 + \left(\frac{a}{m}\right)\right) e^{\frac{2\pi i a b}{m}}.$$

Moreover, when  $m = p$  is prime,

$$\tau(b, \chi_p) = g(b, p).$$

*Proof.* If  $m = 1$  the claim is obvious since  $\tau(b, \chi_1) = 1$  so assume  $m > 1$ . To prove the first statement, observe

$$\sum_{a \pmod{m}} \left(1 + \left(\frac{a}{m}\right)\right) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} = \sum_{a \pmod{m}} e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}} + \sum_{a \pmod{m}} \left(\frac{a}{m}\right) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{m}}.$$

The first sum on the right-hand side is zero as it is the sum over all  $m$ -th roots of unity since  $(b, m) = 1$ . This proves the first claim. Now let  $m = p$  be an odd prime. From the definition of the Jacobi symbol we see that  $1 + \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) = 2, 0$  depending on if  $a$  is a quadratic residue modulo  $p$  or not provided  $a \not\equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ . If  $a \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ , then  $1 + \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) = 1$ . Moreover, if  $a$  is a quadratic residue modulo  $p$ , then  $a \equiv (a')^2 \pmod{p}$  for some  $a'$ . So on the one hand,

$$\tau(b, \chi_p) = \sum_{a \pmod{p}} \left(1 + \left(\frac{a}{p}\right)\right) e^{\frac{2\pi i ab}{p}} = 1 + 2 \sum_{\substack{a \pmod{p} \\ a \equiv (a')^2 \pmod{p} \\ a \not\equiv 0 \pmod{p}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i (a')^2 b}{p}}.$$

On the other hand,

$$g(b, p) = 1 + \sum_{\substack{a \pmod{p} \\ a \not\equiv 0 \pmod{p}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a^2 b}{p}},$$

but this last sum counts every quadratic residue twice because  $(-a)^2 = a^2$ . Hence the two previous sums are equal.  $\square$

Proposition 1.4.5 gives an equivalence between our two notions of quadratic Gauss sums, but we would like a similar result when  $m$  is square-free. In this direction, a series of reduction properties will be helpful:

**Proposition 1.4.6.** *Let  $m$  and  $n$  be positive integers,  $p$  be an odd prime, and let  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then the following hold:*

- (i) *If  $(b, p) = 1$ , then  $g(b, p^r) = pg(b, p^{r-2})$  for all  $r \in \mathbb{Z}$  with  $r \geq 2$ .*
- (ii) *If  $(m, n) = 1$  and  $(b, mn) = 1$ , then  $g(b, mn) = g(bn, m)g(bm, n)$ .*
- (iii) *If  $m$  is odd and  $(b, m) = 1$ , then  $g(b, m) = \left(\frac{b}{m}\right)g(m)$  where  $\left(\frac{b}{m}\right)$  is the Jacobi symbol.*

*Proof.* We will prove the statements separately.

- (i) First notice that

$$g(b, p^r) = \sum_{a \pmod{p^r}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a^2 b}{p^r}} = \sum'_{a \pmod{p^r}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a^2 b}{p^r}} + \sum_{a \pmod{p^{r-1}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a^2 b}{p^{r-2}}},$$

since every  $a$  modulo  $p$  satisfies  $(a, p) = 1$  or not. By Euclidean division every element  $a$  modulo  $p^{r-1}$  is of the form  $a = a'p^{r-2} + a''$  with  $a'$  taken modulo  $p$  and  $a''$  taken modulo  $p^{r-2}$ . Since

$(a'p^{r-2} + a'') \equiv a'' \pmod{p^{r-2}}$ , every  $a''$  is counted  $p$  times modulo  $p^{r-2}$ . Along with the fact that  $(a'p^{r-2} + a'')^2 \equiv (a'')^2 \pmod{p^{r-2}}$ , these facts give the middle equality in the following chain:

$$\sum_{a \pmod{p^{r-1}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a^2 b}{p^{r-2}}} = \sum_{\substack{a' \pmod{p} \\ a'' \pmod{p^{r-2}}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i (a'p^{r-2} + a'')^2 b}{p^{r-2}}} = p \sum_{a'' \pmod{p}} e^{\frac{2\pi i (a'')^2 b}{p^{r-2}}} = pg(b, p^{r-2}).$$

It remains to show

$$\sum'_{a \pmod{p^r}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a^2 b}{p^r}},$$

is zero. This sum is exactly  $r(b; p^r)$  so by Proposition 1.4.1, and that  $(b, p) = 1$ , we conclude

$$\sum'_{a \pmod{p^r}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a^2 b}{p^r}} = \mu(p^r) = 0,$$

because  $r \geq 2$ . This proves (i).

(ii) Observe

$$g(bn, m)g(bm, n) = \left( \sum_{a \pmod{m}} e^{\frac{2\pi i a^2 bn}{m}} \right) \left( \sum_{a' \pmod{n}} e^{\frac{2\pi i (a')^2 bm}{n}} \right) = \sum_{\substack{a \pmod{m} \\ a' \pmod{n}}} e^{\frac{2\pi i ((an)^2 + (a'm)^2)b}{mn}}.$$

Note that  $e^{\frac{2\pi i ((an)^2 + (a'm)^2)b}{mn}}$  only depends upon  $(an)^2 + (a'm)^2$  modulo  $mn$ . Clearly  $(an + a'm)^2 \equiv (an)^2 + (a'm)^2 \pmod{mn}$ , so set  $a'' = an + a'm$  taken modulo  $mn$ . Since  $(m, n) = 1$ , the Chinese remainder theorem implies that  $(\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}) \times (\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}) \cong (\mathbb{Z}/mn\mathbb{Z})$  via the isomorphism  $(a, a') \rightarrow an + a'm$ . Thus the last sum above is equal to

$$\sum_{a'' \pmod{mn}} e^{\frac{2\pi i (a'')^2 b}{mn}},$$

which is precisely  $g(b, mn)$ . So (ii) is proven.

(iii) The claim is obvious if  $m = 1$  because  $g(b, 1) = 1$  so assume  $m > 1$ . If  $m = p$ , then Proposition 1.4.5, Proposition 1.4.2 (ii), and that quadratic characters are their own conjugate altogether imply the claim. Now let  $r \geq 1$  and assume by strong induction that the claim holds when  $m = p^{r'}$  for all positive integers  $r'$  such that  $r' < r$ . Then by (i), we have

$$g(b, p^r) = pg(b, p^{r-2}) = \left( \frac{b}{p^{r-2}} \right) pg(p^{r-2}) = \left( \frac{b}{p^{r-2}} \right) g(p^r) = \left( \frac{b}{p^r} \right) g(p^r). \quad (1.3)$$

It now suffices to prove the claim when  $m = p^r q^s$  where  $q$  is another odd prime and  $s \geq 1$ . Then by

(ii) and Equation (1.3), we compute

$$\begin{aligned}
g(b, p^r q^s) &= g(bq^s, p^r)g(bp^r, q^s) \\
&= \left(\frac{bq^s}{p^r}\right) \left(\frac{bp^r}{q^s}\right) g(p^r)g(q^s) \\
&= \left(\frac{b}{p^r}\right) \left(\frac{q^s}{p^r}\right) \left(\frac{b}{q^s}\right) \left(\frac{p^r}{q^s}\right) g(p^r)g(q^s) \\
&= \left(\frac{b}{p^r q^s}\right) \left(\frac{q^s}{p^r}\right) \left(\frac{p^r}{q^s}\right) g(p^r)g(q^s) \\
&= \left(\frac{b}{p^r q^s}\right) g(q^s, p^r)g(p^r, q^s) \\
&= \left(\frac{b}{p^r q^s}\right) g(p^r q^s).
\end{aligned}$$

This proves (iii). □

At last we can prove when our two notions of quadratic Gauss sums agree:

**Theorem 1.4.2.** *Suppose  $m$  is a positive square-free odd integer and let  $\chi_m$  be the quadratic Dirichlet character given by the Jacobi symbol. Let  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $(b, m) = 1$ . Then*

$$\tau(b, \chi_m) = g(b, m).$$

*Proof.* The claim is obvious if  $m = 1$  because  $\tau(b, \chi_1) = 1$  and  $g(b, 1) = 1$  so assume  $m > 1$ . Since  $\chi_m$  is quadratic, it suffices to prove the claim when  $b = 1$  by Proposition 1.4.2 (ii) and Proposition 1.4.6 (iii). Now let  $m = p_1 p_2 \cdots p_k$  be the prime decomposition of  $m$ . Repeated application of Proposition 1.4.2 (iv) gives the first equality in the chain

$$\begin{aligned}
\tau(\chi) &= \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq k} \chi_{p_i}(p_j) \chi_{p_j}(p_i) \tau(\chi_{p_i}) \tau(\chi_{p_j}) \\
&= \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq k} \chi_{p_i}(p_j) \chi_{p_j}(p_i) g(p_i) g(p_j) \\
&= \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq k} g(p_j, p_i) g(p_i, p_j) \\
&= g(q).
\end{aligned}$$

This proves the claim. □

Now let's turn to Proposition 1.4.6 and the evaluation of the quadratic Gauss sum. Proposition 1.4.6 (ii) and (iii) reduce the evaluation of  $g(b, m)$  for odd  $m$  and  $(b, m) = 1$  to computing  $g(p)$  for  $p$  an odd prime. As with the Gauss sum, it is not difficult to compute the modulus of the quadratic Gauss sum:

**Theorem 1.4.3.** *Let  $m$  be a positive odd integer. Then*

$$|g(m)| = \sqrt{m}.$$

*Proof.* By Proposition 1.4.6 (ii), it suffices to prove this when  $m = p^r$  is a power of an odd prime. By Euclidean division write  $r = 2n + r'$  for some positive integer  $n$  and with  $r' = 0, 1$  depending on if  $r$  is even or odd respectively. Then Proposition 1.4.6 (i) implies

$$|g(p^r)|^2 = p^{2n} |g(p^{r'})|^2.$$

If  $r' = 0$ , then  $2n = r$  so that  $p^{2n} = p^r$ . Thus  $|g(p^r)| = \sqrt{p^r}$ . If  $r' = 1$ , then Theorem 1.4.1 and Proposition 1.4.5 together imply  $|g(p^{r'})|^2 = p$  so that the right-hand side above is  $p^{2n+1} = p^r$  and again we have  $|g(p^r)| = \sqrt{p^r}$ .  $\square$

Accordingly, we define the **epsilon factor**  $\varepsilon_m$  for a positive integer  $m$  by

$$\varepsilon_m = \frac{g(m)}{\sqrt{m}}.$$

Theorem 1.4.3 says that this value lies on the unit circle when  $m$  is odd. Thus the question of the evaluation of quadratic Gauss sums reduces to determining what the epsilon factor is. This was completely resolved and the original proof is due to Gauss in 1808 (see [Gau08]). He actually treated the case  $m$  is even as well. We have avoided discussing this because we will not need it in the following and many of the previous proofs need to be augmented when  $m$  is even (see [Lan94] for a treatment of the even case). As for the evaluation, one of the cleanest proofs uses analytic techniques (see [Lan94]) and the precise statement is the following:

**Theorem 1.4.4.** *Let  $m$  be a positive integer. Then*

$$\varepsilon_m = \begin{cases} (1+i) & \text{if } m \equiv 0 \pmod{4}, \\ 1 & \text{if } m \equiv 1 \pmod{4}, \\ 0 & \text{if } m \equiv 2 \pmod{4}, \\ i & \text{if } m \equiv 3 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

As an immediate corollary, this implies the evaluation of the epsilon factor  $\varepsilon_{\chi_p}$  where  $\chi_p$  is the quadratic Dirichlet character given by the Jacobi symbol for an odd prime  $p$ :

**Corollary 1.4.2.** *Let  $p$  be an odd prime and  $\chi_p$  be the quadratic Dirichlet character given by the Jacobi symbol. Then*

$$\varepsilon_{\chi_p} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } p \equiv 1 \pmod{4}, \\ i & \text{if } p \equiv 3 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

*Proof.* The statement follows immediately from Theorem 1.4.4 and Proposition 1.4.5.  $\square$

## Kloosterman & Salié Sums

Our last class of sums generalize Ramanujan and Gauss sums. For a positive integer  $c$  and any integers  $n$  and  $m$ , the **Kloosterman sum**  $K(n, m; c)$  is defined by

$$K(n, m; c) = \sum_{\substack{a \pmod{c} \\ (a, c) = 1}} e^{\frac{2\pi i(an + \bar{a}m)}{c}} = \sum'_{a \pmod{c}} e^{\frac{2\pi i(an + \bar{a}m)}{c}}.$$

Notice that if either  $n = 0$  or  $m = 0$  then the Kloosterman sum reduces to a Ramanujan sum. Kloosterman sums have similar properties to those of Ramanujan and Gauss sums, but we will not need them. The only result we will need is a famous bound, often called the **Weil bound** for Kloosterman sums, proved by Weil (see [Wei48] for a proof):



**Theorem 1.4.5 (Weil bound).** *Let  $c$  be a positive integer and  $n$  and  $m$  be integers. Then*

$$|K(n, m; c)| \leq \sigma_0(c) \sqrt{(n, m, c)} \sqrt{c},$$

where  $\sigma_0(c)$  is the divisor function.

Lastly, Salié sums are Kloosterman sums with Dirichlet characters. To be precise, for a positive integer  $c$ , any integers  $n$  and  $m$ , and a Dirichlet character  $\chi$  with conductor  $q \mid c$ , the **Salié sum**  $S_\chi(n, m; c)$  is defined by

$$S_\chi(n, m; c) = \sum_{\substack{a \pmod{c} \\ (a, c) = 1}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i(an + \bar{a}m)}{c}} = \sum'_{a \pmod{c}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i(an + \bar{a}m)}{c}}.$$

If either  $n = 0$  or  $m = 0$  then the Salié sum reduces to a Gauss sum.

## 1.5 Integral Methods & Transforms

### Integral Methods

Complex integrals are a core backbone of analytic number theory and all too often the domain we are integrating over is unbounded. Accordingly, the functions we would like to work with should be integrable over these domains. One way to accomplish this would be to require that our functions are bounded:

**Method 1.5.1.** Suppose  $f(z, x)$  is analytic on  $\Omega \times D$  for some region  $\Omega$  and we are given an integral

$$\int_D f(z, x) d\mu,$$

where  $D$  is an unbounded domain,  $d\mu$  is a measure on  $D$ , and such that the following hold:

- (i) For any  $z \in \Omega$ ,  $f(z, x)$  is bounded on  $D$ .
- (ii)  $D$  has finite volume with respect to  $d\mu$ .

Then the integral is holomorphic in  $z$ . By Theorem B.1.2, it suffices to show that the integral is locally absolutely uniformly bounded. Let  $K$  be a compact subset of  $\Omega$ . As  $f(z, x)$  is bounded on  $D$  for any  $z$ ,  $f(z, x)$  is absolutely bounded on  $K \times D$ . Then

$$\int_D f(z, x) d\mu \ll \int_D d\mu \ll 1,$$

because  $D$  has finite volume with respect to  $d\mu$ . Therefore the integral is locally absolutely uniformly bounded.

In particular, Method 1.5.1 holds if  $f(z, x)$  admits any type of decay on  $D$  for any  $z \in \Omega$ . There is also another useful analytic technique called **shifting the line of integration**:

**Method 1.5.2 (Shifting the line of integration).** Suppose we are given an integral

$$\int_{\operatorname{Re}(z)=a} f(z) dz \quad \text{or} \quad \int_{\operatorname{Im}(z)=a} f(z) dz,$$

and some real  $b$  with  $b < a$  in the first case and  $b > a$  in the second case. Also suppose the following conditions hold corresponding to each case:

- (i)  $f(z)$  is meromorphic on a strip containing  $\operatorname{Re}(z) = a, b$  or  $\operatorname{Im}(z) = a, b$  respectively.
- (ii)  $f(z)$  is holomorphic about  $\operatorname{Re}(z) = a, b$  or  $\operatorname{Im}(z) = a, b$  respectively.
- (iii)  $f(z) \rightarrow 0$  as  $\operatorname{Im}(z) \rightarrow \infty$  or  $f(z) \rightarrow 0$  as  $\operatorname{Re}(z) \rightarrow \infty$  respectively.

To collect these cases, let  $(a)$  stand for the line  $\operatorname{Re}(z) = a$  or  $\operatorname{Im}(z) = a$  respectively with positive orientation. Then the line of integration  $(a)$  can be shifted to the line of integration  $(b)$  with the possible addition of residues. Take a rectangle  $R_T$  given positive orientation and with its edges on  $(a)$  and  $(b)$  respectively and consider

$$\lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{R_T} f(z) dz.$$

On the one hand, the residue theorem implies the integral is a sum of a  $2\pi i$  multiple of the residues  $r_i$  in the rectangle  $R_T$  and hence the limit is a sum of a  $2\pi i$  multiple of the residues in the strip bounded by  $(a)$  and  $(b)$ . Denote the corresponding set of poles inside this strip by  $P$ . On the other hand, the integral can be decomposed into a sum of four integrals along the edges of  $R_T$  and by taking the limit the edges other than  $(a)$  and  $(b)$  will tend to zero because of the assumptions on  $f(z)$ . The remaining two pieces is the difference between the integral along  $(a)$  and  $(b)$ . So in total,

$$\int_{(a)} f(z) dz = \int_{(b)} f(z) dz + 2\pi i \sum_{\rho \in P} \operatorname{Res}_{z=\rho} f(z).$$

A particular application of interest is when the integral in question is real and over the entire real line, the integrand is entire as a complex function, and one is trying to shift the line of integration of the complexified integral to  $\operatorname{Im}(z) = a$ . In this case, shifting the line of integration amounts to making the change of variables  $x \rightarrow x - ia$  without affecting the initial line of integration.

## The Fourier Transform

The first type of integral transform we will need is the Fourier transform. Suppose  $f(x)$  is absolutely integrable. The **Fourier transform**  $\hat{f}(t)$  of  $f(x)$  is defined by

$$\hat{f}(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{-2\pi i t x} dx.$$

This integral is absolutely convergent precisely because  $f(x)$  is absolutely integrable. As a first application of Method 1.5.1, if  $f(x)$  is analytic and has exponential decay then its Fourier transform exists. In practical settings however, we usually restrict  $f(x)$  to be a **Schwarz function** which means that  $f(x)$  is smooth

and  $f^{(n)}(x) = o(x^c)$  for all  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ . In other words,  $f(x)$  is a smooth function such that it and all of its derivatives have exponential decay. In this case, we say that  $f(x)$  is of **rapid decay**. For example,  $e^{-x^2}$  is a Schwarz function. Schwarz functions are very important because they are functions for which the **Poisson summation formula** applies:

**Theorem 1.5.1 (Poisson summation formula).** *Suppose  $f(x)$  is a Schwarz function. Then*

$$\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f(n) = \sum_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} \hat{f}(t).$$

*Proof.* Set

$$F(x) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f(x + n).$$

Since  $f(x)$  has exponential decay,  $F(x)$  is locally absolutely uniformly convergent by the Weierstrass  $M$ -test. Actually since  $f(x)$  is Schwarz,  $F(x)$  and all of its derivatives are locally absolutely uniformly convergent. By the uniform limit theorem  $F(x)$  is smooth. Since  $F(x)$  is also 1-periodic it admits a Fourier series (see Appendix B.4). The  $t$ -th Fourier coefficient of  $F(x)$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{F}(t) &= \int_0^1 F(x) e^{-2\pi i t x} dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f(x + n) e^{-2\pi i t x} dx \\ &= \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \int_0^1 f(x + n) e^{-2\pi i t x} dx && \text{DCT} \\ &= \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \int_n^{n+1} f(x) e^{-2\pi i t x} dx \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{-2\pi i t x} dx && \text{DCT} \\ &= \hat{f}(t). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the Fourier series of  $F(x)$  is

$$F(x) = \sum_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} \hat{f}(t) e^{2\pi i t x}.$$

Setting  $x = 0$  gives the desired identity. □

The Poisson summation formula is immensely useful (this cannot be overstated). It's sort of like a train in that it takes one where one wants to go to and back when one is done. Our primary application is that the Poisson summation formula will allow us to derive very striking transformation laws which are the key ingredient for analytically continuing many important objects.

## The Mellin Transform

Like the Fourier transform, the Mellin transform is another type of integral transform. If  $f(x)$  is a continuous function, then the **Mellin transform**  $F(s)$  of  $f(x)$  is given by

$$F(s) = \int_0^{\infty} f(x) x^s \frac{dx}{x}.$$

If  $f(x)$  is a sufficiently nice function then the integral will be bounded in some half-plane in  $s$ . For example, this happens if  $f(x)$  has exponential decay and remains bounded as  $x \rightarrow 0$ . In this case, the integral is locally absolutely uniformly bounded for  $\sigma > 0$ . If the Mellin transform  $F(s)$  is sufficiently nice, then the initial function can be recovered via means of the **inverse Mellin transform**  $(\mathcal{M}^{-1}F)(x)$ :

$$(\mathcal{M}^{-1}F)(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(c)} F(s)x^{-s} ds.$$

It is not immediately clear that this integral converges or is independent of  $c$ . The following theorem makes precise what properties  $F(s)$  needs to satisfy and for which  $c$  the inverse Mellin transform recovers the original function  $f(x)$  (see [DB15] for a proof):

**Theorem 1.5.2 (Mellin inversion formula).** *Let  $a$  and  $b$  be reals such that  $a < b$ . Suppose  $F(s)$  is analytic in the strip vertical  $a < \sigma < b$ , tends to zero uniformly as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  along any line  $\sigma = c$  for  $a < c < b$ , and that the integral of  $F(s)$  along this line is locally absolutely uniformly bounded. Then if*

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(c)} F(s)x^{-s} ds,$$

*this integral is independent of  $c$  and moreover  $F(s) = (\mathcal{M}f)(s)$ . Conversely, suppose  $f(x)$  is piecewise continuous such that its value is halfway between the limit values at any jump discontinuity and*

$$F(s) = \int_0^\infty f(x)x^s \frac{dx}{x},$$

*is absolutely bounded in the vertical strip  $a < \sigma < b$ . Then  $f(x) = (\mathcal{M}^{-1}F)(x)$ .*

## 1.6 The Gamma Function

The gamma function is ubiquitous in analytic number theory and the better one understands it the better one will be at seeing the forest for the trees in any problem involving analytic number theory. The **gamma function**  $\Gamma(z)$  is defined to be the Mellin transform of  $e^{-x}$ :

$$\Gamma(z) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x}x^{z-1} dx,$$

for  $\operatorname{Re}(z) > 0$ . The integral is locally absolutely uniformly bounded in this region. Indeed, if  $K$  is a compact subset in the region  $\operatorname{Re}(z) > 0$ , then upon splitting the integral we have

$$\Gamma(z) = \int_0^1 e^{-x}x^{z-1} dx + \int_1^\infty e^{-x}x^{z-1} dx. \quad (1.4)$$

By Method 1.5.1, the second integral in Equation (1.4) is locally absolutely uniformly bounded in this region. As for the first integral, let  $K$  be a compact set in the region  $\operatorname{Re}(z) > 0$ . Set  $\beta = \min_{z \in K} \{\operatorname{Re}(z)\}$ . Then

$$\int_0^1 |e^{-x}x^{z-1}| dx \leq \int_0^1 x^{\operatorname{Re}(z)-1} dx = \frac{x^{\operatorname{Re}(z)}}{\operatorname{Re}(z)} \Big|_0^1 \leq \frac{1}{\beta}. \quad (1.5)$$

Equation (1.5) implies that the first integral in Equation (1.4) is locally absolutely uniformly bounded too. Altogether, this means  $\Gamma(z)$  is as well. Also note that for real  $z > 0$ ,  $\Gamma(z)$  is real. The most basic properties of  $\Gamma(z)$  are the following:

**Proposition 1.6.1.**  $\Gamma(z)$  satisfies the following properties:

(i)  $\Gamma(1) = 1$ .

(ii)  $\Gamma(z + 1) = z\Gamma(z)$ .

*Proof.* We obtain (i) by direct computation:

$$\Gamma(1) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x} dx = (-e^{-x}) \Big|_0^\infty = 1.$$

An application of integration by parts gives (ii):

$$\Gamma(z + 1) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^z dx = (-e^{-x} x^z) \Big|_0^\infty + z \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^{z-1} dx = z \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^{z-1} dx = z\Gamma(z). \quad \square$$

From Proposition 1.6.1 we see that for  $z = n$  a positive integer,  $\Gamma(n) = (n - 1)!$ . So  $\Gamma(z)$  can be thought of as a holomorphic extension of the factorial function. We can use property (ii) of Proposition 1.6.1 to extend  $\Gamma(z)$  to a meromorphic function on all of  $\mathbb{C}$ :

**Theorem 1.6.1.**  $\Gamma(z)$  admits analytic continuation to a meromorphic function on  $\mathbb{C}$  with poles at  $z = -n$  for  $n \geq 0$ . All of these poles are simple and with residue  $\frac{(-1)^n}{n!}$  at  $z = -n$ .

*Proof.* Using Proposition 1.6.1, (ii) repeatedly, for any integer  $n \geq 0$  we have

$$\Gamma(z) = \frac{\Gamma(z + 1 + n)}{z(z + 1) \cdots (z + n)}.$$

The right-hand side defines an meromorphic function in the region  $\operatorname{Re}(z) > -n$  and away from the points  $0, -1, \dots, -n$ . Letting  $n$  be arbitrary, we see that  $\Gamma(z)$  has meromorphic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  with poles at  $0, -1, -2, \dots$ . We now compute the residue at  $z = -n$ . Around this point  $\Gamma(z)$  admits analytic continuation with representation

$$\frac{\Gamma(z + 1 + n)}{z(z + 1) \cdots (z + n)},$$

where all of the factors except for  $z + n$  are holomorphic at  $z = -n$ . Thus the pole is simple, and

$$\operatorname{Res}_{z=-n} \Gamma(z) = \lim_{z \rightarrow -n} \frac{\Gamma(z + 1 + n)(z + n)}{z(z + 1) \cdots (z + n)} = \frac{\Gamma(1)}{(-n)(1 - n) \cdots (-1)} = \frac{(-1)^n}{n!}. \quad \square$$

In particular, Theorem 1.6.1 implies  $\operatorname{Res}_{z=0} \Gamma(z) = 1$  and  $\operatorname{Res}_{z=-1} \Gamma(z) = -1$ . Also, since  $\Gamma(z)$  is real for real  $z > 0$  we have  $\overline{\Gamma(z)} = \Gamma(\bar{z})$  and then the identity theorem implies that this holds everywhere  $\Gamma(z)$  is analytic. There are a few other properties of the gamma function that are famous and which we will use frequently. The first of which is the **Legendre duplication formula** (see [Rem98] for a proof):

**Theorem 1.6.2 (Legendre duplication formula).** For any  $z \in \mathbb{C} - \{0, -1, -2, \dots\}$ ,

$$\Gamma(z)\Gamma\left(z + \frac{1}{2}\right) = 2^{1-2z}\sqrt{\pi}\Gamma(2z).$$

As a first application, we can use this formula to compute  $\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$ . Letting  $z = \frac{1}{2}$  in the Legendre duplication formula and recalling  $\Gamma(1) = 1$ , we see that  $\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\pi}$ . There is also the important Hadamard factorization of the reciprocal of  $\Gamma(z)$  (see [SSS03] for a proof):

**Proposition 1.6.2.** *For all  $z \in \mathbb{C}$ ,*

$$\frac{1}{\Gamma(z)} = ze^{\gamma z} \prod_{n \geq 1} \left(1 + \frac{z}{n}\right) e^{-\frac{z}{n}},$$

where  $\gamma$  is the Euler-Mascheroni constant.

In particular,  $\frac{1}{\Gamma(z)}$  is entire so that  $\Gamma(z)$  is nowhere vanishing on  $\mathbb{C}$ . Also,  $\frac{1}{\Gamma(z)}$  is of order 1 (see Appendix B.5). In particular, this means that  $\Gamma(z)$  is also order 1 for  $\operatorname{Re}(z) > 0$ . We call  $\frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}(z)$  the **digamma function**. Equivalently, the digamma function is the logarithmic derivative of the gamma function. If we take the logarithmic derivative of the Hadamard factorization for  $\frac{1}{z\Gamma(z)}$ , we obtain a useful expression for the digamma function:

**Corollary 1.6.1.** *For all  $z \in \mathbb{C}$ ,*

$$\frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}(z+1) = -\gamma + \sum_{n \geq 1} \left( \frac{1}{n} - \frac{1}{z+n} \right),$$

where  $\gamma$  is the Euler-Mascheroni constant. In particular, the digamma function has simple poles of residue  $-1$  at the poles of the gamma function.

*Proof.* By Proposition 1.6.1 (ii),  $\frac{1}{\Gamma(z+1)} = \frac{1}{z\Gamma(z)}$ . Taking the logarithmic derivative using Proposition 1.6.2 we obtain

$$-\frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}(z+1) = \gamma + \sum_{n \geq 1} \left( \frac{1}{z+n} - \frac{1}{n} \right),$$

provided  $z$  is away from the poles of  $\Gamma(z)$ . This is the desired formula and the statement regarding the poles follows immediately.  $\square$

We will also require a well-known approximation for the gamma function known as **Stirling's formula** (see [Rem98] for a proof):

**Theorem 1.6.3 (Stirling's formula).**

$$\Gamma(z) \sim_{\varepsilon, \delta} \sqrt{2\pi} z^{z-\frac{1}{2}} e^{-z},$$

provided  $|\arg(z)| < \pi - \varepsilon$  and  $|z| > \delta$  for some  $\varepsilon, \delta > 0$ .

If the real part of  $z$  lies inside some compact set then Stirling's formula gives a useful estimate showing that  $\Gamma(z)$  exhibits exponential decay as  $z \rightarrow \infty$ :

**Corollary 1.6.2.** *Let  $|\arg(z)| < \pi - \varepsilon$  and  $|z| > \delta$  for some  $\varepsilon, \delta > 0$ . Then if  $x$  is bounded, we have*

$$\Gamma(z) \sim_{\varepsilon, \delta} \sqrt{2\pi} y^{x-\frac{1}{2}} e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}|y|}.$$

*Proof.* Stirling's formula can be equivalently expressed as

$$\Gamma(z) \sim_{\varepsilon, \delta} \sqrt{2\pi} (x+iy)^{x-\frac{1}{2}+iy} e^{-x-iy}.$$

Since  $x$  is bounded,  $e^{-x-iy} \ll 1$  and we obtain the simplified asymptotic

$$\Gamma(z) \sim_{\varepsilon, \delta} \sqrt{2\pi} (iy)^{x-\frac{1}{2}+iy}.$$

Similarly,  $x$  being bounded implies  $i^{x-\frac{1}{2}} \ll 1$  and we compute

$$(iy)^{iy} = e^{i|y|\log(i|y|)} = e^{i|y|(\log(i) + \log(|y|))} = e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}|y| + i|y|\log(|y|)} \sim e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}|y|},$$

where we have used the fact that  $\log(i) = i\frac{\pi}{2}$ . Together, we obtain the further simplified asymptotic

$$\Gamma(z) \sim_{\varepsilon, \delta} \sqrt{2\pi} y^{x-\frac{1}{2}} e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}|y|},$$

which is the desired result □

Strictly weaker than the asymptotic equivalence in Stirling's formula is the estimate

$$\Gamma(z) = \sqrt{2\pi} z^{z-\frac{1}{2}} e^{-z} (1 + O_{\varepsilon, \delta}(1)). \quad (1.6)$$

Taking the logarithm (since  $|\arg(z)| < \pi - \varepsilon$  the logarithm is defined) of this estimate gives

$$\log \Gamma(z) = \frac{1}{2} \log(2\pi) + \left(z - \frac{1}{2}\right) \log(z) - z + O_{\varepsilon, \delta}(1), \quad (1.7)$$

which will be useful. Using Equation (1.7) we can obtain a useful asymptotic formula for the digamma function:

**Proposition 1.6.3.**

$$\frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}(z) = \log(z) + O_{\varepsilon, \delta}(1),$$

provided  $|\arg(z)| < \pi - \varepsilon$  and  $|z| > \delta$  for some  $\varepsilon, \delta > 0$ .

*Proof.* Equation (1.7) give the simplified asymptotic

$$\log \Gamma(z) = \frac{1}{2} \log(2\pi) + z \log(z) - z + O_{\varepsilon, \delta}(1).$$

Set  $g(z) = \frac{1}{2} \log(2\pi) + z \log(z) - z$  so that  $\log \Gamma(z) = g(z) + O_{\varepsilon, \delta}(1)$ . Then  $\log \Gamma(z) - g(z) = O_{\varepsilon, \delta}(1)$ , and by Cauchy's integral formula, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}(z) &= \frac{d}{dz} (g(z) + O_{\varepsilon, \delta}(1)) \\ &= g'(z) + \frac{d}{dz} (\log \Gamma(z) - g(z)) \\ &= \log(z) + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{|w-z|=r} \frac{\log \Gamma(w) - g(w)}{(w-z)^2} dw, \end{aligned}$$

for some sufficiently small radius  $r > 0$  depending upon  $\varepsilon$  and  $\delta$ . Therefore

$$\left| \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}(z) - \log(z) \right| \leq \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{|w-z|=r} \frac{|\log \Gamma(w) - g(w)|}{r^2} |dw| \ll_{\varepsilon, \delta} 1,$$

where the last estimate follows because  $\log \Gamma(z) - g(z) = O_{\varepsilon, \delta}(1)$ . □

The last result we will need is an explicit representation for  $\log \Gamma(z)$  known as **Binet's log gamma formula**:

**Proposition 1.6.4 (Binet's log gamma formula).**

$$\log \Gamma(z) = \left(z - \frac{1}{2}\right) \log(z) - z + \frac{1}{2} \log(2\pi) + 2 \int_0^\infty \frac{\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{z}\right)}{e^{2\pi x} - 1} dx.$$

## Part II

# An Introduction to Holomorphic & Maass Forms



# Chapter 2

## Congruence Subgroups & Modular Curves

Every holomorphic or Maass form is a special type of function depending on certain subgroups of  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ . These are the congruence subgroups. The associated modular curve is the quotient of the upper half-space  $\mathbb{H}$  by an action of this subgroup. We introduce these topics first as they are the foundation for discussing holomorphic and Maass forms in complete generality.

### 2.1 Congruence Subgroups

The **modular group** is  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) = \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbb{Z})/\{\pm I\}$ . That is, the modular group is the set of matrices with integer entries and of determinant 1 determined up to sign. The reason we are only interested in these matrices up to sign is because the modular group has a natural action on the upper half-space  $\mathbb{H}$  and this action will be invariant under a change in sign. The first result usually proved about the modular group is that it is generated by two matrices:

**Proposition 2.1.1.**

$$\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) = \left\langle \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\rangle.$$

*Proof.* Set  $S$  and  $T$  to be the first and second generators respectively. Clearly they belong to  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ . Also,  $S$  and  $T^n$  for  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  acts on  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  by

$$S\gamma = S \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -c & -d \\ a & b \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad T^n\gamma = T^n \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a + nc & b + nd \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}.$$

In particular,  $S$  interchanges the upper left and lower left entries of  $\gamma$  up to sign and  $T^n$  adds an  $n$  multiple of the lower left entry to the upper left entry. We have to show  $\gamma \in \langle S, T \rangle$  and we will accomplish this by showing that the inverse is in  $\langle S, T \rangle$ . If  $|c| = 0$  then  $\gamma$  is the identity since  $\det(\gamma) = 1$  so suppose  $|c| \neq 0$ . By Euclidean division we can write  $a = qc + r$  for some  $q \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $|r| < |c|$ . Then

$$T^{-q}\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a - qc & b - qd \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} r & b - qd \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}.$$

Multiplying by  $S$  yields

$$ST^{-q}\gamma = S \begin{pmatrix} r & b - qd \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -c & -d \\ r & b - qd \end{pmatrix},$$

and this matrix has the upper left entry at least as large as the lower left entry in norm. Actually the upper left entry is strictly larger since  $|c| > |r|$  by Euclidean division. Therefore if we repeatedly apply this

procedure, it must terminate with the lower left entry vanishing. But then we have reached the identity matrix. Therefore we have show  $\gamma$  has an inverse in  $\langle S, T \rangle$ .  $\square$

We will also be interested in special subgroups of the modular group defined by congruence conditions on their entries. For  $N \geq 1$ , set

$$\Gamma(N) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \pmod{N} \right\}.$$

Then  $\Gamma(N)$  is the kernel of the natural homomorphism  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})$  so it is a normal subgroup with finite index. We call  $\Gamma(N)$  the **principal congruence subgroup** of level  $N$ . For  $\Gamma \leq \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ , we say  $\Gamma$  is a **congruence subgroup** if  $\Gamma(N) \leq \Gamma$  for some  $N$  and the minimal such  $N$  is called the **level** of  $\Gamma$ . Note that if  $M \mid N$ , then  $\Gamma(N) \leq \Gamma(M)$ . Thus if  $\Gamma$  is a congruence subgroup of level  $N$ , then  $\Gamma(kN) \leq \Gamma$  for all  $k \geq 1$ . This implies that congruence subgroups are closed under intersection. Also, it turns out that the natural homomorphism  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})$  is surjective:

**Proposition 2.1.2.** *The natural homomorphism  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) \rightarrow \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})$  is surjective.*

*Proof.* Suppose  $\begin{pmatrix} \bar{a} & \bar{b} \\ \bar{c} & \bar{d} \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})$ . Then  $\bar{a}\bar{d} - \bar{b}\bar{c} \equiv 1 \pmod{N}$  so by Bézout's identity (generalized to three integers)  $(\bar{c}, \bar{d}, N) = 1$ . We claim that there exists  $s$  and  $t$  such that  $c = \bar{c} + sN$ ,  $d = \bar{d} + tN$  with  $(c, d) = 1$ . Set  $g = (\bar{c}, \bar{d})$ . Then  $(g, N) = 1$  because  $(\bar{c}, \bar{d}, N) = 1$ . If  $\bar{c} = 0$  then set  $s = 0$  so  $c = 0$  and choose  $t$  such that  $t \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$  for any prime  $p \mid g$  and  $t \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  for any prime  $p \nmid g$  and  $p \mid \bar{d}$ . Such a  $t$  exists by the Chinese remainder theorem. Now if  $p \mid (c, d)$ , then either  $p \mid g$  or  $p \nmid g$ . If  $p \mid g$ , then  $p \mid d - \bar{d} = tN$  which is absurd since  $t \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$  and  $(t, N) = 1$ . If  $p \nmid g$ , then  $p \nmid d - \bar{d} = tN$  but this is also absurd since  $t \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ . Therefore  $(c, d) = 1$  as claimed. If  $\bar{c} = 0$  then  $\bar{d} \neq 0$ , and we can proceed similarly. Since  $(c, d) = 1$  there exists  $a$  and  $b$  such that  $ad - bc = 1$ . Then  $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  and maps onto  $\begin{pmatrix} \bar{a} & \bar{b} \\ \bar{c} & \bar{d} \end{pmatrix}$ . This proves surjectivity.  $\square$

By Proposition 2.1.2,  $[\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \Gamma(N)] = |\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})|$ . Since  $\Gamma(N) \leq \Gamma$  and  $\Gamma(N)$  has finite index in  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  so does  $\Gamma$ . The subgroups

$$\Gamma_1(N) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 & * \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \pmod{N} \right\},$$

and

$$\Gamma_0(N) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ 0 & * \end{pmatrix} \pmod{N} \right\},$$

are particularly important and are congruence subgroups of level  $N$ . The latter subgroup is called the **Hecke congruence subgroup** of level  $N$ . Note that  $\Gamma(N) \leq \Gamma_1(N) \leq \Gamma_0(N)$ . If  $\Gamma$  is a general congruence subgroup, it is useful to find a generating set for  $\Gamma$  in order to reduce results about  $\Gamma$  to that of the generators. This is usually achieved by performing some sort of Euclidean division argument on the entries of a matrix  $\gamma \in \Gamma$  using the supposed generating set to construct the inverse for  $\gamma$ . For example, this was the proof strategy employed in Proposition 2.1.1.

## 2.2 Modular Curves

Recall that  $\mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$  naturally acts on the Riemann sphere  $\hat{\mathbb{C}}$  by Möbius transformations. Explicitly, any  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$  acts on  $z \in \hat{\mathbb{C}}$  by

$$\gamma z = \frac{az + b}{cz + d},$$

where  $\gamma\infty = \frac{a}{c}$  and  $\gamma(-\frac{d}{c}) = \infty$ . Moreover, recall that this action is a group action, is invariant under scalar multiplication, and acts as automorphisms of  $\hat{\mathbb{C}}$ . Now observe

$$\operatorname{Im}(\gamma z) = \operatorname{Im}\left(\frac{az+b}{cz+d}\right) = \operatorname{Im}\left(\frac{az+b}{cz+d} \frac{c\bar{z}+d}{c\bar{z}+d}\right) = \operatorname{Im}\left(\frac{ac|z|^2 + adz + bc\bar{z} + bd}{|cz+d|^2}\right) = \det(\gamma) \frac{\operatorname{Im}(z)}{|cz+d|^2},$$

where the last equality follows because  $\operatorname{Im}(\bar{z}) = -\operatorname{Im}(z)$  and  $\det(\gamma) = ad - bc$ . Since  $\deg(\gamma) > 0$  and  $|cz+d|^2 > 0$ ,  $\gamma$  preserves the sign of the imaginary part of  $z$ . So  $\gamma$  preserves the upper half-space  $\mathbb{H}$ , the lower half-space  $\overline{\mathbb{H}}$ , and the extended real line  $\hat{\mathbb{R}}$  respectively. Moreover,  $\gamma$  restricts to an automorphism on these subspaces since Möbius transformations are automorphisms. In particular,  $\operatorname{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  naturally acts on  $\hat{\mathbb{C}}$  by Möbius transformations and preserves the upper half-space. Certain actions of subgroups of  $\operatorname{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  also play important roles. A **Fuchsian group** is any subgroup of  $\operatorname{PSL}_2(\mathbb{R})$  that acts properly discontinuously on  $\mathbb{H}$ . It turns out that the modular group is a Fuchsian group (see [DS05] for a proof):

**Proposition 2.2.1.** *The modular group is a Fuchsian group.*

Note that Proposition 2.2.1 immediately implies that any subgroup of the modular group is also Fuchsian. In particular, all congruence subgroups are Fuchsian. This lets us say a little more about the action of a congruence subgroup  $\Gamma$  on  $\mathbb{H}$ . Indeed, points in  $\mathbb{H}$  are closed since  $\mathbb{H}$  is Hausdorff. Now  $\Gamma$  is a Fuchsian group so it acts properly discontinuously on  $\mathbb{H}$ . These two facts together imply that the  $\Gamma$ -orbit of any point in  $\mathbb{H}$  is a discrete set. We will make use of this property later on, but for now we are ready to introduce modular curves. A **modular curve** is a quotient  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  of the upper half-space  $\mathbb{H}$  by a congruence subgroup  $\Gamma$ . We give  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  the quotient topology induced from  $\mathbb{H}$  as a subset of the Riemann sphere  $\hat{\mathbb{C}}$ . This gives  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  some nice topological properties (see [DS05] for a proof):

**Proposition 2.2.2.** *For any congruence subgroup  $\Gamma$ , the modular curve  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  is connected and Hausdorff.*

A **fundamental domain** for  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  is a closed set  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma \subseteq \mathbb{H}$  satisfying the following conditions:

- (i) Any point in  $\mathbb{H}$  is  $\Gamma$ -equivalent to a point in  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$ .
- (ii) If two points in  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  are  $\Gamma$ -equivalent via a non-identity element, then they lie on the boundary of  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$ .
- (iii) The interior of  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  is a domain.

In other words,  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  is a complete set of representatives (possibly with overlap on the boundary) for  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  that has a nice topological structure with respect to  $\mathbb{H}$ . Note that if  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  is a fundamental domain then so is  $\gamma \mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  for any  $\gamma \in \Gamma$  and moreover  $\mathbb{H} = \bigcup_{\gamma \in \Gamma} \gamma \mathcal{F}_\Gamma$ . So the choice of  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  is not unique. Intuitively, a fundamental domain is a geometric realization of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  which is often more fruitful than thinking of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  as an abstract set of equivalence classes. Moreover, it's suggestive that we can give  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  a geometric structure and indeed we can (see [DS05] for more). Property (iii) is usually not included in the definition of a fundamental domain for many authors. The reason that we impose this additional property is because we will integrate over  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  and so we want  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  to genuinely represent a domain as a subset of  $\mathbb{H}$ .

**Proposition 2.2.3.**

$$\mathcal{F} = \left\{ z \in \mathbb{H} : |\operatorname{Re}(z)| \leq \frac{1}{2}, |z| \geq 1 \right\},$$

is a fundamental domain for  $\operatorname{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ .

*Proof.* Set  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) = \langle S, T \rangle$  where  $S$  and  $T$  are as in Proposition 2.1.1. We first show any point in  $\mathbb{H}$  is  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ -equivalent to a point in  $\mathcal{F}$ . Then for any  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ , we have

$$\mathrm{Im}(\gamma z) = \frac{\mathrm{Im}(z)}{|cz + d|^2} = \frac{y}{(cx + d)^2 + (cy)^2}.$$

Since  $\det(\gamma) = 1$  we cannot have  $c = d = 0$ . Then as  $y \neq 0$ ,  $|cz + d|^2$  is bounded away from zero and moreover there are finitely many pairs  $(c, d)$  such that  $|cz + d|^2$  is less than any given upper bound. Therefore there exists  $\gamma_0 \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  that minimizes  $|cz + d|^2$  and hence maximizes  $\mathrm{Im}(\gamma_0 z)$ . In particular,

$$\mathrm{Im}(S\gamma_0 z) = \frac{\mathrm{Im}(\gamma_0 z)}{|\gamma_0 z|^2} \leq \mathrm{Im}(\gamma_0 z).$$

The inequality above implies  $|\gamma_0 z| \geq 1$ . Since  $\mathrm{Im}(T^n \gamma_0 z) = \mathrm{Im}(\gamma_0 z)$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ , repeating the argument above with  $T^n \gamma_0$  in place of  $\gamma_0$ , we see that  $|T^n \gamma_0 z| \geq 1$ . But  $T$  shifts the real part by 1 so we can choose  $n$  such that  $|\mathrm{Re}(T^n \gamma_0 z)| \leq \frac{1}{2}$ . Therefore  $T^n \gamma_0 \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  sends  $z$  into  $\mathcal{F}$  as desired. We will now show that if two points in  $\mathcal{F}$  are  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ -equivalent via a non-identity element, then they lie on the boundary of  $\mathcal{F}$ . Since  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  acts on  $\mathbb{H}$  by automorphisms, by Proposition 2.1.1 it suffices to show that  $S$  and  $T$  map  $\mathcal{F}$  outside of  $\mathcal{F}$  except for possibly the boundary. This is clear for  $T$  since it maps the left boundary line  $\{z : \mathrm{Re}(z) = -\frac{1}{2}, |z| \geq 1\}$  to the right boundary line  $\{z : \mathrm{Re}(z) = \frac{1}{2}, |z| \geq 1\}$  and every other point of  $\mathcal{F}$  is mapped to the right of this line. For  $S$ , note that it maps the semicircle  $\{z : |z| = 1\}$  to itself (although not identically) and maps  $\infty$  to zero. Since Möbius transformations send circles to circles and lines to lines it follows that every other point of  $\mathcal{F}$  is taken to a point enclosed by the semicircle  $\{z : |z| = 1\}$ . Lastly, the interior of  $\mathcal{F}$  is a domain since it is open and path-connected. This finishes the proof.  $\square$



Figure 2.1: The standard fundamental domain for  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) \backslash \mathbb{H}$ .

The shaded region in Figure 2.1 is the fundamental domain in Proposition 2.2.3 and we call it the **standard fundamental domain**. Figure 2.1 also displays how this fundamental domain changes under the actions of the generators of  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  as in Proposition 2.1.1. A fundamental domain for any other modular curve can be built from the standard fundamental domain as the following proposition shows (see [Kil15] for a proof):

**Proposition 2.2.4.** *Let  $\Gamma$  be any congruence subgroup. Then*

$$\mathcal{F}_\Gamma = \bigcup_{\gamma \in \Gamma \backslash \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})} \gamma \mathcal{F},$$

*is a fundamental domain for  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ .*

We might notice that  $\mathcal{F}$  in Figure 2.1 is unbounded as it doesn't contain the point  $\infty$ . However, if we consider  $\mathcal{F} \cup \{\infty\}$  then it would appear that this space is compact. The point  $\infty$  is an example of a cusp and we now make this idea precise. Since any  $\gamma \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  preserves  $\mathbb{R}$  and  $\gamma$  has integer entries,  $\gamma$  also preserves  $\mathbb{Q} \cup \{\infty\}$ . A **cusp** of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  is an element of  $\Gamma \backslash (\mathbb{Q} \cup \{\infty\})$ . As  $\Gamma$  has finite index in the modular group, there can only be finitely many cusps and the number of cusps is at most the index of  $\Gamma$ . In particular, the  $\Gamma$ -orbit of  $\infty$  is a cusp of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . We denote cusps by gothic characters  $\mathfrak{a}, \mathfrak{b}, \mathfrak{c}, \dots$  or by representatives of their equivalence classes. For example, we let  $\infty$  denote the cusp  $\Gamma\infty$ .

**Remark 2.2.1.** *It turns out that the cusps can be represented as the points needed to make a fundamental domain  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  compact as a subset of  $\hat{\mathbb{C}}$ . To see this, suppose  $\mathfrak{a}$  is a limit point of  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  that does not belong to  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$ . Then  $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathbb{R}$ . In the case of the standard fundamental domain  $\mathcal{F}$ ,  $\mathfrak{a} = \infty$  which is a cusp. Otherwise,  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  is a union of images of  $\mathcal{F}$  by Proposition 2.2.4 and since  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})\infty = \mathbb{Q} \cup \{\infty\}$ , we find that  $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathbb{Q} \cup \{\infty\}$ .*

Let  $\Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \leq \Gamma$  denote the stabilizer subgroup of the cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$ . For the  $\infty$  cusp, we can describe  $\Gamma_\infty$  explicitly. If  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma$  stabilizes  $\infty$ , then necessarily  $c = 0$  and since  $\det(\gamma) = 1$  we must have  $a = d = 1$ . Therefore  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & b \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  for some  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $\gamma$  acts on  $\mathbb{H}$  by translation by  $b$ . Of course, not every translation is guaranteed to belong to  $\Gamma$ . Letting  $t$  be the smallest positive integer such that  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & t \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma$ , we have  $\Gamma_\infty = \langle \begin{pmatrix} 1 & t \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \rangle$ . In particular,  $\Gamma_\infty$  is an infinite cyclic group. We say that  $\Gamma$  is **reduced at infinity** if  $t = 1$  so that  $\Gamma_\infty = \langle \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \rangle$ . In particular,  $\Gamma_1(N)$  and  $\Gamma_0(N)$  are reduced at infinity.

**Remark 2.2.2.** *If  $\Gamma$  is of level  $N$ , then  $N$  is the smallest positive integer such that  $\Gamma(N) \leq \Gamma$  so that  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & N \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  is the minimal translation guaranteed to belong to  $\Gamma$ . However, there may be smaller translations so in general  $t \leq N$ .*

Actually, for any cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$ ,  $\Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  is also an infinite cyclic group. To see this, if  $\mathfrak{a} = \frac{a}{c}$  with  $(a, c) = 1$  is a cusp of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  not equivalent to  $\infty$ , then there exists an  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  such that  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}\infty = \mathfrak{a}$ . Indeed, there exists integers  $d$  and  $b$  such that  $ad - bc = 1$  by Bézout's identity and then  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$  is such a matrix. It follows that  $\Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} = \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}\Gamma_\infty\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}$  and since  $\Gamma_\infty$  is infinite cyclic so is  $\Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}}$ . We call any matrix  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  such that  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}\infty = \mathfrak{a}$  a **scaling matrix** for the cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$ . Note that  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  is determined up to composition on the right by an element of  $\Gamma_\infty$  or composition on the left by an element of  $\Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}}$ . Scaling matrices are useful because they allow us to transfer information at the cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$  to the cusp at  $\infty$ . Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  and  $\mathfrak{b}$  be cusps of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  with scaling matrices  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  and  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}}$  respectively. When investigating holomorphic forms, it will be useful to have a double coset decomposition for sets of the form  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\Gamma\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}}$ . This is referred to as the **Bruhat decomposition** for  $\Gamma$ :

**Theorem 2.2.1 (Bruhat decomposition).** *Let  $\Gamma$  be any congruence subgroup and let  $\mathfrak{a}$  and  $\mathfrak{b}$  be cusps of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  with scaling matrices  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  and  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}}$  respectively. Then we have the disjoint decomposition*

$$\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\Gamma\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} = \delta_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}}\Omega_\infty \cup \bigcup_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ d \pmod{c}}} \Omega_{d/c},$$

where

$$\Omega_\infty = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} * & b \\ 0 & * \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} * & b \\ 0 & * \end{pmatrix} \in \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\Gamma\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} \right\},$$

and

$$\Omega_{d/c} = \Gamma_\infty \omega_{d/c} \Gamma_\infty,$$

for some  $\omega_{d/c} = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \sigma_a^{-1} \Gamma \sigma_b$  with  $c \geq 1$ .

*Proof.* We first show that  $\Omega_\infty$  is nonempty if and only if  $\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{b}$ . Indeed, if  $\omega_\infty \in \Omega_\infty$  then  $\omega_\infty = \sigma_a^{-1} \gamma \sigma_b$  for some  $\gamma \in \Gamma$ . Then

$$\gamma \mathfrak{b} = \sigma_a \omega_\infty \sigma_b^{-1} \mathfrak{b} = \sigma_a \omega_\infty \infty = \sigma_a \infty = \mathfrak{a}.$$

This shows that  $\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{b}$ . Conversely, suppose  $\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{b}$ . Then  $\sigma_a^{-1} \Gamma \sigma_b$  contains  $\sigma_a^{-1} \Gamma \sigma_a = \Gamma_\infty$  so that  $\Omega_\infty$  is nonempty. So  $\Omega_\infty$  is nonempty if and only if  $\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{b}$ . In this case, for any two elements  $\omega_\infty = \sigma_a^{-1} \gamma \sigma_a$  and  $\omega'_\infty = \sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' \sigma_a$  of  $\Omega_\infty$ , we have

$$\gamma' \gamma^{-1} \mathfrak{a} = \sigma_a \omega'_\infty \omega_\infty^{-1} \sigma_a^{-1} \mathfrak{a} = \sigma_a \omega'_\infty \omega_\infty^{-1} \infty = \sigma_a \mathfrak{a}.$$

Hence  $\gamma' \gamma^{-1} \in \Gamma_a$  which implies  $\omega'_\infty \omega_\infty^{-1} = \sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' \gamma^{-1} \sigma_a \in \sigma_a^{-1} \Gamma_a \sigma_a = \Gamma_\infty$ . Therefore

$$\Omega_\infty = \Gamma_\infty \omega_\infty = \omega_\infty \Gamma_\infty = \Gamma_\infty \omega_\infty \Gamma_\infty,$$

where the latter two equalities hold because  $\omega_\infty$  is a translation and translations commute. Every other element of  $\sigma_a^{-1} \Gamma \sigma_b$  belongs to one of the double cosets  $\Omega_{d/c}$  with  $c \geq 1$  (since we are working in  $\text{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ ). The relation

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & n \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & m \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ c & cm + d \end{pmatrix},$$

shows that  $\Omega_{d/c}$  is determined uniquely by  $c$  and  $d \pmod{c}$ . This completes the proof of the theorem.  $\square$

As a first application, take  $\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{b} = \infty$  and  $\sigma_a = \sigma_b = I$ . Then the Bruhat decomposition implies

$$\Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma \cong I \cup \bigcup_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ d \pmod{c}}} \omega_{d/c} \Gamma_\infty,$$

since  $\Gamma_\infty \backslash \Omega_\infty = \Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma_\infty \cong I$ . This shows that every element of  $\Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma$  corresponds to a unique  $(c, d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{0\}$  with  $c \geq 0$  and  $d$  determined only modulo  $c$  except when  $c = 0$  in which case  $d = 1$  (the pair  $(1, 0)$  corresponds to  $I$ ). Of course, this correspondence might not be surjective since the double coset  $\Omega_{d/c}$  may be empty if there is no  $\omega_{d/c} \in \sigma_a^{-1} \Gamma \sigma_b$ . For example, if  $\Gamma$  is of level  $N$  then every  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma$  satisfies  $c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}$  so that

$$\Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma = I \cup \bigcup_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N} \\ d \pmod{c}}} \omega_{d/c} \Gamma_\infty.$$

However, we still may have other cosets which are empty since  $\Gamma$  being of level  $N$  only guarantees that  $c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}$ . To figure out for what subset of pairs  $(c, d)$  the correspondence is a bijection it suffices to determine the admissible  $d$  not just the admissible  $d \pmod{c}$ .

**Remark 2.2.3.** An exceptionally important case is for the Hecke congruence subgroups  $\Gamma_0(N)$  with  $\mathfrak{a} = \mathfrak{b} = \infty$ . Suppose  $c \geq 1$  with  $c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}$  and  $d \pmod{c}$ . By Bézout's identity there exists integers  $a$  and  $b$  with  $ad - bc = 1$  so that  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$  if and only if  $(c, d) = 1$ . So we must have  $d \equiv 1 \pmod{c}$ . Then the following correspondence implied by the Bruhat decomposition is a bijection:

$$\Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma = I \cup \bigcup_{\substack{c \geq 1, d \in \mathbb{Z} \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N} \\ (c, d) = 1}} \omega_{d/c} \Gamma_\infty.$$

## 2.3 The Hyperbolic Measure

We will also need to integrate over  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . In order to do this, we require a measure on  $\mathbb{H}$ . Our choice of measure will be the **hyperbolic measure**  $d\mu$  given by

$$d\mu = d\mu(z) = \frac{dx dy}{y^2}.$$

The most important property about the hyperbolic measure is that it is  $\mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{R})$ -invariant (see [DS05] for a proof):

**Proposition 2.3.1.** *The hyperbolic measure  $d\mu$  is  $\mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{R})$ -invariant.*

As this fact will be used so frequently any time we integrate, we will not mention it explicitly. The particular use is that if  $\Gamma$  is a congruence subgroup,  $d\mu$  is  $\Gamma$ -invariant. Now let  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  be a fundamental domain for  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  and set

$$V_\Gamma = \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} d\mu.$$

We call  $V_\Gamma$  the **volume** of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . Also, if  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma = \mathcal{F}$  we write  $V_\Gamma = V$ . In other words,  $V$  is the volume of  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . Since the integrand is  $\Gamma$ -invariant,  $V_\Gamma$  is independent of the choice of fundamental domain. There is also a simple relation between  $V_\Gamma$  and the index of  $\Gamma$  in  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ :

$$V_\Gamma = [\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \Gamma]V, \tag{2.1}$$

which follows immediately from Proposition 2.2.4. Using Proposition 2.2.3,

$$V = \int_{\mathcal{F}} d\mu = \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} \int_{\sqrt{1-x^2}}^{\infty} \frac{1}{y^2} dy dx = \int_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dx = \arcsin(x) \Big|_{-\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{\pi}{3}.$$

Therefore  $V$  is finite. Furthermore so is  $V_\Gamma$  for every congruence subgroup  $\Gamma$  by Equation (2.1) and that congruence subgroups have finite index in the modular group.

# Chapter 3

## The Theory of Holomorphic Forms

Holomorphic forms are special classes of functions on the upper half-space  $\mathbb{H}$  of the complex plane. They are holomorphic, have a transformation law with respect to a congruence subgroup, and satisfy a growth condition. We will introduce these forms in a general context.

### 3.1 Holomorphic Forms

Define  $j(\gamma, z)$  by

$$j(\gamma, z) = (cz + d),$$

for all  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$  and  $z \in \mathbb{H}$ . There is a very useful property that  $j(\gamma, z)$  satisfies. To state it, let  $\gamma' = \begin{pmatrix} a' & b' \\ c' & d' \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ . Then

$$\gamma\gamma' = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a' & b' \\ c' & d' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a'a + b'c & a'b + b'd \\ c'a + d'c & c'b + d'd \end{pmatrix},$$

and we have

$$\begin{aligned} j(\gamma', \gamma z)j(\gamma, z) &= \left( c' \frac{az + b}{cz + d} + d' \right) (cz + d) \\ &= (c'(az + b) + d'(cz + d)) \\ &= (c'a + d'c)z + c'b + d'd \\ &= j(\gamma'\gamma, z). \end{aligned}$$

In short,

$$j(\gamma'\gamma, z) = j(\gamma', \gamma z)j(\gamma, z),$$

and this is called the **cocycle condition** for  $j(\gamma, z)$ . For any integer  $k \geq 1$  and any  $\gamma \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$  we define the **slash operator**  $|_{j,k}\gamma : C(\mathbb{H}) \rightarrow C(\mathbb{H})$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(f|_{j,k}\gamma)(z) = j(\gamma, z)^{-k} f(\gamma z).$$

If an operator commutes with the slash operators  $|_{j,k}\gamma$  for every  $\gamma \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ , we say that it is **invariant**. Now let  $\Gamma$  be a congruence subgroup of level  $N$  that is reduced at infinity and let  $\chi$  be a Dirichlet character of conductor  $q \mid N$ . Set  $\chi(\gamma) = \chi(d)$  for all  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma$ . We say that a function  $f : \mathbb{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is **holomorphic form** (or **modular form**) on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  of **weight**  $k$ , **level**  $N$ , and **character**  $\chi$ , if the following properties are satisfied:



- (i)  $f$  is holomorphic on  $\mathbb{H}$ .
- (ii)  $(f|_{j,k}\gamma)(z) = \chi(\gamma)f(z)$  for all  $\gamma \in \Gamma$ .
- (iii)  $f(\alpha z) = O(1)$  as  $\text{Im}(z) \rightarrow \infty$  for all  $\alpha \in \text{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ .

We say  $f$  is a **(holomorphic) cusp form** if the additional property is satisfied:

- (iv) For all cusps  $\mathfrak{a}$ ,

$$\int_0^1 f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}(x + iy)) dx = 0.$$

Property (ii) is called the **modularity condition** and we say  $f$  is **modular**. In particular,  $f$  is a function on  $\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma}$ . The modularity condition can equivalently be expressed as

$$f(\gamma z) = \chi(\gamma)j(\gamma, z)^k f(z).$$

Property (iii) is called the **growth condition** and we say  $f$  is **holomorphic at the cusps**. Clearly we only need to verify the growth condition on a set of scaling matrices for the cups. Holomorphic forms also admit Fourier series. Indeed, modularity implies

$$f(z + 1) = f\left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} z\right) = f(z),$$

so that  $f$  is 1-periodic. We can say more. Let  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  be a scaling matrix for the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp. As  $\Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} = \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}\Gamma_{\infty}\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}$ , or equivalently  $\Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}}\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} = \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}\Gamma_{\infty}$ , the function  $f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z)$  is independent of the scaling matrix  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$ . Moreover, by the same reasoning

$$f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}(z + 1)) = f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z).$$

Thus  $f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z)$  is 1-periodic. Holomorphy at the cusps implies that  $f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z)$  remains bounded as  $\text{Im}(z) \rightarrow \infty$  and so we have a Fourier series

$$f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, y) e^{2\pi i n x}.$$

This Fourier series is independent of the scaling matrix because  $f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z)$  is. We can simplify the Fourier coefficients  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, y)$ . To see this, since  $f$  is holomorphic it satisfies the first order Cauchy-Riemann equations so that

$$\frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} + i \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \right) = 0.$$

Substituting in the Fourier series and equating coefficients we obtain the ODE

$$2\pi n a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, y) + a_{\mathfrak{a},y}(n, y) = 0,$$

Solving this ODE by separation of variables, we see that there exists an  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n)$  such that

$$a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, y) = a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n) e^{-2\pi n y}.$$

The coefficients  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n)$  are the only part of the Fourier series depending on the implicit congruence subgroup  $\Gamma$ . Using these coefficients instead,  $f$  admits a **Fourier series at the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp**:

$$f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n) e^{2\pi i n z}.$$

For ease of notation, if it is clear what cusp we are working at we will mention the Fourier series and its coefficients without mentioning the cusp. Moreover, property (iv) implies that  $f$  is a cusp form if and only if  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n) = 0$  for every cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$ . In particular,  $f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z)$  exhibits exponential decay for every cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$ . Accordingly, we say that  $f$  exhibits **exponential decay at the cusps** and note that  $f(z)$  is bounded on  $\mathbb{H}$ .

## 3.2 Eisenstein & Poincaré Series

Let  $\Gamma$  be a congruence subgroup of level  $N$ . We will introduce two important classes of holomorphic forms on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  namely the Eisenstein series and the Poincaré series. For any weight  $k \geq 4$  and Dirichlet character  $\chi$  with conductor  $q \mid N$ , we define the **(holomorphic) Eisenstein series**  $E_{k,\chi}(z)$  of weight  $k$  and character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  by

$$E_{k,\chi}(z) = \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma) j(\gamma, z)^{-k},$$

**Remark 3.2.1.** *The reason why we restrict to  $k \geq 4$  is because for  $k = 0, 2$  the Eisenstein series do not converge (see Proposition B.9.1).*

We first verify that  $E_{k,\chi}(z)$  is well-defined. It suffices to show that  $\bar{\chi}(\gamma) j(\gamma, z)$  is independent of the representative of  $\gamma$ . Indeed, if  $\gamma'$  represents the same element as  $\gamma$  in  $\Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma$ , then they differ on the left by an element of  $\eta_\infty \in \Gamma_\infty$ . So suppose  $\gamma' = \eta_\infty \gamma$  with  $\eta_\infty = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & n \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_\infty$ . Then

$$\bar{\chi}(\gamma') = \bar{\chi}(\eta_\infty \gamma) = \bar{\chi}(\eta_\infty) \bar{\chi}(\gamma) = \bar{\chi}(\gamma).$$

This verifies that  $\bar{\chi}(\gamma)$  is independent of the representative  $\gamma$ . Similarly, the cocycle relation implies

$$j(\gamma', z) = j(\eta_\infty \gamma, z) = j(\eta_\infty, \gamma z) j(\gamma, z) = j(\gamma, z),$$

where the last equality follows because  $j(\eta_\infty, \gamma z) = 1$ . This verifies that  $j(\gamma, z)$  is also independent of the representative  $\gamma$ . Therefore  $E_{k,\chi}(z)$  is well-defined. The Bruhat decomposition applied to  $\Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma$  implies

$$E_{k,\chi}(z) \ll \sum_{(c,d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{\mathbf{0}\}} \frac{1}{|cz + d|^k},$$

and as  $k \geq 4$ , this latter series is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $z \in \mathbb{H}$  by Proposition B.9.1. Hence  $E_{k,\chi}(z)$  does too and so it is holomorphic on  $\mathbb{H}$ .

**Remark 3.2.2.** *In the case of the modular group, the Bruhat decomposition implies that a set of representatives for the quotient  $\Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma$  is*

$$\left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \cup \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} : c \geq 1, d \in \mathbb{Z}, (c, d) = 1 \right\}.$$

Then  $E_{k,\chi}(z)$  is given by

$$E_{k,\chi}(z) = 1 + \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1, d \in \mathbb{Z} \\ (c,d)=1}} \frac{\bar{\chi}(d)}{(cz + d)^k}.$$

We now show that  $E_{k,\chi}(z)$  is modular. This is just a computation:

$$\begin{aligned}
 E_{k,\chi}(\gamma z) &= \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma') j(\gamma', \gamma z)^{-k} \\
 &= \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma') \left( \frac{j(\gamma' \gamma, z)}{j(\gamma, z)} \right)^{-k} && \text{cocycle condition} \\
 &= j(\gamma, z)^k \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma') j(\gamma' \gamma, z)^{-k} \\
 &= \chi(\gamma) j(\gamma, z)^k \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma') \bar{\chi}(\gamma) j(\gamma' \gamma, z)^{-k} \\
 &= \chi(\gamma) j(\gamma, z)^k \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma' \gamma) j(\gamma' \gamma, z)^{-k} \\
 &= \chi(\gamma) j(\gamma, z)^k \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma') j(\gamma', z)^{-k} && \gamma' \rightarrow \gamma' \gamma^{-1} \text{ bijection on } \Gamma \\
 &= \chi(\gamma) j(\gamma, z)^k E_{k,\chi}(z).
 \end{aligned}$$

To verify holomorphy at the cusps, we will need a technical lemma:

**Lemma 3.2.1.** *Let  $a, b > 0$  be reals and consider the half-strip*

$$S_{a,b} = \{z \in \mathbb{H} : |\operatorname{Re}(z)| \leq a, \operatorname{Im}(z) \geq b\}.$$

*Then there is a  $\delta \in (0, 1)$  such that*

$$|nz + m| \geq \delta |ni + m|,$$

*for all  $n, m \in \mathbb{Z}$  and all  $z \in S_{a,b}$ .*

*Proof.* If  $n = 0$  then any  $\delta$  is sufficient and this  $\delta$  is independent of  $z$ . If  $n \neq 0$ , then the desired inequality is equivalent to

$$\left| \frac{z + \frac{m}{n}}{i + \frac{n}{m}} \right| \geq \delta.$$

So consider the function

$$f(z, u) = \left| \frac{z + u}{i + u} \right|,$$

for  $z \in S_{a,b}$  and  $u \in \mathbb{R}$ . It suffices to show  $f(z, u) \geq \delta$ . As  $z \in \mathbb{H}$ ,  $z - u \neq 0$  so that  $f(z, u)$  is continuous and  $f(z, u) > 0$  for all  $z$  and  $u$ . Now let  $Y > b$  and consider the region

$$S_{a,b}^Y = \{z \in \mathbb{H} : |\operatorname{Re}(z)| \leq a, b \leq \operatorname{Im}(z) \leq Y\}.$$

We claim that there exists a  $Y$  such that if  $\operatorname{Im}(z) > Y$  and  $|x| > Y$  then  $f(z, u)^2 > \frac{1}{4}$ . Indeed, we compute

$$f(z, u)^2 = \frac{(z + u)(\bar{z} + u)}{(i + u)(-i + u)} = \frac{|z|^2 + 2\operatorname{Re}(z)u + u^2}{1 + u^2} \geq \frac{\operatorname{Im}(z) + u^2}{1 + u^2},$$

where in the inequality we have used that  $|z|^2 \geq \operatorname{Im}(z)$  and  $\operatorname{Re}(z)$  is bounded. Now  $\frac{u^2}{1+u^2} \rightarrow 1$  as  $u \rightarrow \pm\infty$  so choosing  $Y$  such that  $|u| > Y$  implies  $\frac{u^2}{1+u^2} \geq \frac{1}{4}$  yields

$$\frac{\operatorname{Im}(z) + u^2}{1 + u^2} \geq \frac{\operatorname{Im}(z)}{1 + u^2} + \frac{u^2}{1 + u^2} \geq \frac{\operatorname{Im}(z)}{1 + u^2} + \frac{1}{4} > \frac{1}{4}.$$

It follows that  $f(z, u) > \frac{1}{2}$  outside of  $S_{a,b}^Y \times [-Y, Y]$ . But this latter region is compact and so  $f(z, u)$  obtains a minimum  $\delta'$  on it. Then set  $\delta = \min\{\frac{1}{2}, \delta'\}$  and we are done.  $\square$

We can now show that  $E_{k,\chi}(z)$  is holomorphic at the cusps. Let  $\sigma_a$  be a scaling matrix for the cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$ . Then

$$E_{k,\chi}(\sigma_a z) \ll \sum_{(c,d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{\mathbf{0}\}} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_a z + d|^k}.$$

Now decompose this last sum as

$$\sum_{(c,d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{\mathbf{0}\}} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_a z + d|^k} = \sum_{d \neq 0} \frac{1}{d^k} + \sum_{c \neq 0} \sum_{d \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_a z + d|^k} = 2 \sum_{d \geq 1} \frac{1}{d^k} + 2 \sum_{c \geq 1} \sum_{d \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_a z + d|^k}.$$

Since the first sum is bounded, it suffices to show that the double sum is bounded as  $\text{Im}(z) \rightarrow \infty$ . To see this, let  $\text{Im}(z) \geq 1$  and  $\delta$  be as in Lemma 3.2.1. Then for any integer  $N \geq 1$  we can write

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{c \geq 1} \sum_{d \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_a z + d|^k} &= \sum_{c+|d| \leq N} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_a z + d|^k} + \sum_{c+|d| > N} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_a z + d|^k} \\ &\leq \sum_{c+|d| \leq N} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_a z + d|^k} + \sum_{c+|d| > N} \frac{1}{(\delta|ci + d|)^k} \\ &\leq \sum_{c+|d| \leq N} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_a z + d|^k} + \frac{1}{\delta^k} \sum_{c+|d| > N} \frac{1}{|ci + d|^k}. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\sum_{c \geq 1} \sum_{d \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{1}{|ci + d|^k}$  converges by Proposition B.9.1, the second sum tends to zero as  $N \rightarrow \infty$ . As for the first sum, it is finite and each term tends to a finite value as  $\text{Im}(z) \rightarrow \infty$ . Holomorphy at  $\mathfrak{a}$  follows. We collect all of this work as a theorem:

**Theorem 3.2.1.** *Let  $k \geq 4$  and  $\chi$  be Dirichlet character with conductor  $q \mid N$ . The Eisenstein series*

$$E_{k,\chi}(z) = \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma) j(\gamma, z)^{-k},$$

*is a weight  $k$  holomorphic form with character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ .*

Now we will discuss our second class of holomorphic forms. For every  $m \geq 1$ , weight  $k \geq 4$  and Dirichlet character  $\chi$  with conductor  $q \mid N$ , we define the  $m$ -th **(holomorphic) Poincaré series**  $P_{m,k,\chi}(z)$  of weight  $k$  with character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  by

$$P_{m,k,\chi}(z) = \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma) j(\gamma, z)^{-k} e^{2\pi i m \gamma z}.$$

We first need to verify that  $P_{m,k,\chi}(z)$  is actually well-defined. This amounts to checking  $e^{2\pi i m \gamma z}$  is independent of the representative  $\gamma$  since we have already verified  $\bar{\chi}(\gamma) j(\gamma, z)^{-k}$  is when discussing  $E_{k,\chi}(z)$ . As before, suppose  $\gamma' = \eta_\infty \gamma$  with  $\eta_\infty = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & n \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_\infty$ . Then

$$e^{2\pi i m \gamma' z} = e^{2\pi i m \eta_\infty \gamma z} = e^{2\pi i m (\gamma z + n)} = e^{2\pi i m \gamma z} e^{2\pi i m n} = e^{2\pi i m \gamma z},$$

and hence  $e^{2\pi im\gamma'z}$  is independent of the representative  $\gamma$  used. It follows that  $P_{m,k,\chi}(z)$  is well-defined. To see that  $P_{m,k,\chi}(z)$  is holomorphic on  $\mathbb{H}$ , first note that  $|e^{2\pi im\gamma z}| = e^{-2\pi m\text{Im}(\gamma z)} < 1$  for all  $\gamma \in \Gamma$ . Applying the Bruhat decomposition to  $\Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma$ , we see that

$$P_{m,k,\chi}(z) \ll \sum_{(c,d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{\mathbf{0}\}} \frac{1}{|cz + d|^k}.$$

As  $k \geq 4$ , this latter series is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $z \in \mathbb{H}$  by Proposition B.9.1. Hence  $P_{m,k,\chi}(z)$  does too and so it is holomorphic on  $\mathbb{H}$ .

**Remark 3.2.3.** *In the case of the modular group, the Bruhat decomposition implies that a set of representatives for the quotient  $\Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma$  is*

$$\left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \cup \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} : c \geq 1, d \in \mathbb{Z}, (c, d) = 1 \right\}.$$

as in Remark 3.2.2. Then  $P_{m,k,\chi}(z)$  is given by

$$P_{m,k,\chi}(z) = e^{2\pi imz} + \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1, d \in \mathbb{Z} \\ (c,d)=1}} \bar{\chi}(d) \frac{e^{2\pi im(\frac{az+b}{cz+d})}}{(cz+d)^k},$$

where  $a$  and  $b$  are chosen such that  $\det \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = 1$ .

Modularity for  $P_{m,k,\chi}(z)$  is verified in exactly the same way as for  $E_{k,\chi}(z)$ . To verify holomorphy at the cusps, let  $\sigma_{\mathbf{a}}$  be a scaling matrix for the cusp  $\mathbf{a}$ . First note that  $|e^{2\pi im\gamma\sigma_{\mathbf{a}}z}| = e^{-2\pi m\text{Im}(\gamma\sigma_{\mathbf{a}}z)} < 1$ . Then

$$P_{m,k,\chi}(\sigma_{\mathbf{a}}z) \ll \sum_{(c,d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{\mathbf{0}\}} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_{\mathbf{a}}z + d|^k},$$

and now we can proceed in exactly the same way used to show that  $E_{k,\chi}(z)$  was holomorphic at the cusps. We collect all of this work as a theorem:

**Theorem 3.2.2.** *Let  $k \geq 4$  and  $\chi$  be a Dirichlet character with conductor  $q \mid N$ . The Poincaré series*

$$P_{m,k,\chi}(z) = \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma} j(\gamma, z)^{-k} e^{2\pi im\gamma z},$$

*is a weight  $k$  holomorphic form with character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ .*

### 3.3 Spaces of Holomorphic Forms

Let  $\Gamma$  be a congruence subgroup of level  $N$ . Let  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  denote the space of all weight  $k$  holomorphic forms on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  with character  $\chi$ . Let  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  denote the associated subspace of cusp forms. Moreover, if the character  $\chi$  is the trivial character, we will suppress the dependence upon  $\chi$ . If  $\Gamma_1$  and  $\Gamma_2$  are two congruence subgroups such that  $\Gamma_1 \leq \Gamma_2$ , then we have the inclusion

$$\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_2) \subseteq \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1).$$

So in general, the smaller the congruence subgroup the more holomorphic forms there are. We will need a dimensionality result regarding the space of holomorphic forms of a fixed weight. However, it will suffice to only require the result for forms with trivial character. The result is that  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma)$  is never too large (see [DS05] for a proof):

**Theorem 3.3.1.** *Then  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma)$  is finite dimensional.*

Since  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  is a subspace of  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma)$ , Theorem 3.3.1 implies that  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  is also finite dimensional. It turns out that  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  is naturally an inner product space. For  $f, g \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$ , define their **Petersson inner product** by

$$\langle f, g \rangle_\Gamma = \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu.$$

If the congruence subgroup is clear from context we will suppress the dependence upon  $\Gamma$ . Since  $f$  is a cusp form, the integral is absolutely bounded by Method 1.5.1. The integrand is also  $\Gamma$ -invariant so that the integral is independent of the choice of fundamental domain. These two facts together imply that the Petersson inner product is well-defined. We will continue to use this notion even if  $f$  and  $g$  do not belong to  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  provided the integral is absolutely bounded. Moreover, we have the following proposition:

**Proposition 3.3.1.**  *$\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  is a Hilbert space with respect to Petersson inner product.*

*Proof.* Let  $f, g \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$ . Linearity of the integral immediately implies that the Petersson inner product is linear on  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$ . It is also positive definite since

$$\langle f, f \rangle = \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} f(z) \overline{f(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu = \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} |f(z)|^2 \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu \geq 0,$$

with equality if and only if  $f$  is identically zero because  $|f(z)|^2 \operatorname{Im}(z)^k \geq 0$ . To see that it is conjugate symmetric, observe

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\langle g, f \rangle} &= \overline{\frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} g(z) \overline{f(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu} \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \overline{g(z) \overline{f(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k} d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \overline{g(z)} f(z) \operatorname{Im}(z)^k \overline{d\mu} \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \overline{g(z)} f(z) \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu & d\mu = \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu \\ &= \langle f, g \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

So the Petersson inner product is a Hermitian inner product on  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$ . Since  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  is finite dimensional by Theorem 3.3.1, it follows immediately that  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  is a Hilbert space.  $\square$

**Remark 3.3.1.** *As a consequence of Proposition 3.3.1, the Petersson inner product is also non-degenerate on  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$ . Actually, for the exact same reasoning this holds on  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma) \times \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma)$  wherever the Petersson inner product is defined.*

Now suppose  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  with Fourier coefficients  $a_n(f)$ . Define linear functionals  $\phi_{m,k} : \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , for every  $m \geq 1$ , by

$$\phi_{m,k}(f) = a_m(f).$$

Since  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  is a finite dimensional Hilbert space, the Riesz representation theorem implies that there exists a unique  $v_{m,k} \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  such that

$$\langle f, v_{m,k} \rangle = \phi_{m,k}(f) = a_m(f).$$

We would like to know what these cusp forms are. It turns out that  $v_{m,k}(z)$  will be the Poincaré series  $P_{m,k,\chi}(z)$  up to a normalization factor. To see this, we compute the inner product:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle f, P_{m,k,\chi} \rangle &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} f(z) \overline{P_{m,k,\chi}(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \chi(\gamma) \overline{j(\gamma, z)^{-k}} f(z) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{\gamma} z} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \frac{\chi(\gamma) j(\gamma, z)^k}{|j(\gamma, z)|^{2k}} f(z) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{\gamma} z} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \frac{1}{|j(\gamma, z)^k|^{2k}} f(\gamma z) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{\gamma} z} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu && \text{modularity} \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} f(\gamma z) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{\gamma} z} \operatorname{Im}(\gamma z)^k d\mu && \operatorname{Im}(\gamma z)^k = \frac{\operatorname{Im}(z)^k}{|j(\gamma, z)|^{2k}}. \end{aligned}$$

We put this last integral into a different form. The idea is to rewrite the integral over the fundamental domain  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  as an integral over the strip  $\Gamma_\infty \setminus \mathbb{H}$ . First, observe

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} f(\gamma z) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{\gamma} z} \operatorname{Im}(\gamma z)^k d\mu &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} f(\gamma z) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{\gamma} z} \operatorname{Im}(\gamma z)^k d\mu && \text{DCT} \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \int_{\gamma \mathcal{F}_\Gamma} f(z) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{z}} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu && z \rightarrow \gamma^{-1} z. \end{aligned}$$

Now  $\mathbb{H} = \bigcup_{\gamma \in \Gamma} \gamma \mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  so that  $\Gamma_\infty \setminus \mathbb{H} = \bigcup_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \gamma \mathcal{F}_\Gamma$ . Therefore we can write

$$\frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \int_{\gamma \mathcal{F}_\Gamma} f(z) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{z}} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu = \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\Gamma_\infty \setminus \mathbb{H}} f(z) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{z}} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu.$$

The rest is a computation:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \setminus \Gamma} \int_{\gamma \mathcal{F}_\Gamma} f(z) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{z}} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\Gamma_\infty \setminus \mathbb{H}} f(z) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{z}} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_0^\infty \int_0^1 f(x + iy) e^{-2\pi i m \overline{(x+iy)}} y^k \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_0^\infty \int_0^1 \sum_{n \geq 1} a_n(f) e^{2\pi i (n-m)x} e^{-2\pi (n+m)y} y^k \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_0^\infty \sum_{n \geq 1} \int_0^1 a_n(f) e^{2\pi i (n-m)x} e^{-2\pi (n+m)y} y^k \frac{dx dy}{y^2} && \text{DCT} \\ &= \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_0^\infty a_m(f) e^{-4\pi m y} y^k \frac{dy}{y^2}, \end{aligned}$$

where the last line follows because

$$\int_0^1 e^{2\pi i(n-m)x} dx = \delta_{n-m,0}, \quad (3.1)$$

so that the inner integral cuts off all the terms except for the  $n = m$  term. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_0^\infty a_m(f) e^{-4\pi m y} y^k \frac{dy}{y^2} &= \frac{a_m(f)}{V_\Gamma} \int_0^\infty e^{-4\pi m y} y^{k-1} \frac{dy}{y} \\ &= \frac{a_m(f)}{V_\Gamma} \int_0^\infty e^{-4\pi m y} y^{k-1} \frac{dy}{y} & y \rightarrow \frac{y}{4\pi m} \\ &= \frac{a_m(f)}{V_\Gamma (4\pi m)^{k-1}} \int_0^\infty e^{-y} y^{k-1} \frac{dy}{y} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma(k-1)}{V_\Gamma (4\pi m)^{k-1}} a_m(f) & \text{definition of } \Gamma(k-1). \end{aligned}$$

In conclusion,

$$\langle f, P_{m,k,\chi} \rangle = \frac{\Gamma(k-1)}{V_\Gamma (4\pi m)^{k-1}} a_m(f). \quad (3.2)$$

Now set

$$\tilde{P}_{m,k,\chi}(z) = \frac{V_\Gamma (4\pi m)^{k-1}}{\Gamma(k-1)} P_{m,k,\chi}(z).$$

For all cusp forms  $f$  (actually any holomorphic form where the Petersson inner product is defined),

$$\langle f, \tilde{P}_{m,k,\chi} - v_{m,k} \rangle = 0.$$

By Remark 3.3.1 the Petersson inner product is non-degenerate so we conclude  $v_{m,k}(z) = \tilde{P}_{m,k,\chi}(z)$ . In particular, this shows that the Poincaré series  $P_{m,k,\chi}(z)$  are cusp forms. We usually work with the Poincaré series  $P_{m,k,\chi}(z)$  instead of their normalized counterparts  $\tilde{P}_{m,k,\chi}(z)$ . In any case, with Equation (3.2) in hand we can prove the following result:

**Theorem 3.3.2.** *The Poincaré series span  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  with Fourier coefficients  $a_n(f)$ . Since  $\Gamma(k-1) \neq 0$ , Equation (3.2) implies  $\langle f, P_{m,k,\chi} \rangle = 0$  if and only if  $a_m(f) = 0$ . So  $f$  is orthogonal to all the Poincaré series if and only if every Fourier coefficient  $a_m(f)$  is zero. But this happens if and only if  $f$  is identically zero.  $\square$

Let's return to the previous computation for a brief moment. The procedure of changing an integral over a fundamental domain  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  into an integral over the strip  $\Gamma_\infty \backslash \mathbb{H}$ , or vice versa, works in a more general setting and is called **unfolding the integral** or **folding the integral** respectively:

**Method 3.3.1 (Unfolding/folding the integral).** Suppose  $\Gamma$  is any congruence subgroup with fundamental domain  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$ , and we are given an absolutely convergent integral of the form

$$\int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma' \backslash \Gamma} f(\gamma z) d\mu,$$

where  $\Gamma' \leq \Gamma$  is a subgroup. Then the above integral can be written in the form

$$\int_{\Gamma' \backslash \mathbb{H}} f(z) d\mu.$$



To do this use DCT to interchange the sum and integral and then make the change of variables  $z \rightarrow \gamma^{-1}z$  to put the integral in the form

$$\sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma' \backslash \Gamma} \int_{\gamma \mathcal{F}_\Gamma} f(z) d\mu.$$

Then observe  $\mathbb{H} = \bigcup_{\gamma \in \Gamma} \gamma \mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  so that  $\Gamma' \backslash \mathbb{H} = \bigcup_{\gamma \in \Gamma' \backslash \Gamma} \gamma \mathcal{F}_\Gamma$ . The desired result follows. Of course, there is equality everywhere so we can also run the procedure in reverse.

### 3.4 Double Coset Operators

We are ready to introduce a class of general operators, depending upon double cosets, on a congruence subgroup  $\Gamma$  of level  $N$ . We will use these operators to define the diamond and Hecke operators. For  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ , consider the double coset

$$\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2 = \{\gamma_1 \alpha \gamma_2 : \gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1, \gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2\}.$$

Then  $\Gamma_1$  acts on the set  $\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2$  by left multiplication so that it decomposes into a disjoint union of orbit spaces. Thus

$$\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2 = \bigcup_{\beta \in \Gamma_1 \backslash \Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2} \Gamma_1 \beta,$$

where the sum is over the orbit representatives  $\beta$ . However, in order for these operators to be well-defined it is necessary that the orbit decomposition above is a finite union. This is indeed the case and we will require two lemmas. The first is that congruence subgroups are preserved under conjugation by elements of  $\mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$  provided we restrict to those elements in  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ :

**Lemma 3.4.1.** *Let  $\Gamma$  be a congruence subgroup and let  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ . Then  $\alpha^{-1} \Gamma \alpha \cap \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  is a congruence subgroup.*

*Proof.* Recall that if  $\Gamma$  is of level  $M$ , then  $\Gamma(kM) \leq \Gamma$  for every  $k \geq 1$ . Thus there is an integer  $\tilde{N}$  such that  $\Gamma(\tilde{N}) \leq \Gamma$ ,  $\tilde{N}\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Z})$ , and  $\tilde{N}\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Z})$ . Now let  $N = \tilde{N}^3$  and notice that any  $\gamma \in \Gamma(N)$  is of the form

$$\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + N \begin{pmatrix} k_1 & k_2 \\ k_3 & k_4 \end{pmatrix},$$

for  $k_1, \dots, k_4 \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Therefore  $\Gamma(N) \subseteq I + N\mathrm{Mat}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ . Thus

$$\alpha \Gamma(N) \alpha^{-1} \leq \alpha(I + N\mathrm{Mat}_2(\mathbb{Z})) \alpha^{-1} = I + \tilde{N}\mathrm{Mat}_2(\mathbb{Z}).$$

As every matrix in  $\alpha \Gamma(N) \alpha^{-1}$  has determinant 1 and  $\Gamma(\tilde{N}) \subseteq I + \tilde{N}\mathrm{Mat}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ , it follows that  $\alpha \Gamma(N) \alpha^{-1} \leq \Gamma(\tilde{N})$ . As  $\Gamma(\tilde{N}) \leq \Gamma$ , we conclude

$$\Gamma(N) \leq \alpha^{-1} \Gamma \alpha,$$

and intersecting with  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  completes the proof.  $\square$

Note that by Lemma 3.4.1, if  $\alpha^{-1} \Gamma \alpha \subset \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  then  $\alpha^{-1} \Gamma \alpha$  is a congruence subgroup of  $\Gamma$  is. Moreover, since congruence subgroups are closed under intersection, Lemma 3.4.1 further implies that  $\alpha^{-1} \Gamma_1 \alpha \cap \Gamma_2$  is a congruence subgroup for any two congruence subgroups  $\Gamma_1$  and  $\Gamma_2$  and any  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ . Our second lemma gives a way to describe the orbit representatives for  $\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2$  in terms of coset representatives:

**Lemma 3.4.2.** *Let  $\Gamma_1$  and  $\Gamma_2$  be congruence subgroups and let  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ . Set  $\Gamma_3 = \alpha^{-1}\Gamma_1\alpha \cap \Gamma_2$ . Then left multiplication map*

$$\Gamma_2 \rightarrow \Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_2 \quad \gamma_2 \mapsto \alpha\gamma_2,$$

*induces a bijection from the coset space  $\Gamma_3 \backslash \Gamma_2$  to the orbit space  $\Gamma_1 \backslash \Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_2$ .*

*Proof.* We will show that the induced map is both surjective and injective. For surjectivity, the orbit representatives  $\beta$  of  $\Gamma_1 \backslash \Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_2$  are of the form  $\beta = \gamma_1\alpha\gamma_2$  for some  $\gamma_1 \in \Gamma_1$  and  $\gamma_2 \in \Gamma_2$ . Since  $\Gamma_1$  is acting on  $\Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_2$  by left multiplication,  $\beta$  can be written as  $\beta = \alpha\gamma'_2$  for some  $\gamma'_2 \in \Gamma_2$ . This shows that the induced map is a surjection. To prove injectivity, let  $\gamma_2, \gamma'_2 \in \Gamma_2$  be such that the orbit space representatives  $\alpha\gamma_2$  and  $\alpha\gamma'_2$  are equivalent. That is,

$$\Gamma_1\alpha\gamma_2 = \Gamma_1\alpha\gamma'_2.$$

This implies  $\alpha\gamma_2(\gamma'_2)^{-1} \in \Gamma_1\alpha$  and so  $\gamma_2(\gamma'_2)^{-1} \in \alpha^{-1}\Gamma_1\alpha$ . But we also have  $\gamma_2(\gamma'_2)^{-1} \in \Gamma_2$  and these two facts together imply  $\gamma_2(\gamma'_2)^{-1} \in \Gamma_3$ . Hence

$$\Gamma_3\gamma_2 = \Gamma_3\gamma'_2,$$

which shows that the induced map is also an injection. □

With these lemmas in hand, we can prove that the orbit decomposition of  $\Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_2$  is finite:

**Proposition 3.4.1.** *Let  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ . Then the orbit decomposition*

$$\Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_2 = \bigcup_j \Gamma_1\beta_j,$$

*with respect to the action of  $\Gamma_1$  by left multiplication, is a finite union.*

*Proof.* Let  $\Gamma_3 = \alpha\Gamma_1\alpha^{-1} \cap \Gamma_2$ . Then  $\Gamma_3$  acts on  $\Gamma_2$  by left multiplication. By Lemma 3.4.2, the number of orbits of  $\Gamma_1 \backslash \Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_2$  is the same as the number of cosets of  $\Gamma_3 \backslash \Gamma_2$  which is  $[\Gamma_2 : \Gamma_3]$ . By Lemma 3.4.1,  $\alpha^{-1}\Gamma_1\alpha \cap \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  is a congruence subgroup and hence  $[\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \alpha^{-1}\Gamma_1\alpha \cap \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})]$  is finite. As  $\Gamma_2 = \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) \cap \Gamma_2$  and  $\Gamma_3 = \alpha^{-1}\Gamma_1\alpha \cap \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) \cap \Gamma_2$ , it follows that  $[\Gamma_2 : \Gamma_3] \leq [\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \alpha^{-1}\Gamma_1\alpha \cap \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})]$  completing the proof. □

In light of Proposition 3.4.1, we will denote the orbit representatives by  $\beta_j$  to make it clear that there are finitely many. We can now introduce our operators. Fix some congruence subgroup  $\Gamma$  and consider  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma)$ . Then for  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ , we define the operator  $[\alpha]_k$  on  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma)$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(f[\alpha]_k)(z) = \det(\alpha)^{k-1} j(\alpha, z)^{-k} f(\alpha z),$$

Moreover,  $[\alpha]_k$  is multiplicative. Indeed, if  $\alpha, \alpha' \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} ((f[\alpha']_k)[\alpha]_k)(z) &= \det(\alpha)^{k-1} j(\alpha, z)^{-k} (f[\alpha']_k)(\alpha z) \\ &= \det(\alpha')^{k-1} \det(\alpha)^{k-1} j(\alpha', \alpha z)^{-k} j(\alpha, z)^{-k} f(\alpha' \alpha z) \\ &= \det(\alpha' \alpha)^{k-1} j(\alpha' \alpha, z)^{-k} f(\alpha' \alpha z) && \text{cocycle condition} \\ &= (f[\alpha' \alpha]_k)(z). \end{aligned}$$

Also, if  $\gamma \in \Gamma$  and we choose the representative with  $\det(\gamma) = 1$ , then the chain of equalities

$$(f[\gamma]_k)(z) = j(\gamma, z)^{-k} f(\gamma z) = f(z),$$

is equivalent to the modularity of  $f$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  with trivial character. Thus  $f$  is holomorphic form on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  with trivial character if and only if  $f[\gamma]_k = f$  for all  $\gamma \in \Gamma$  where  $\gamma$  is chosen to be the representative with positive determinant. Now let  $\Gamma_1$  and  $\Gamma_2$  be two congruence subgroups and let  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ . We define the **double coset operator**  $[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k$  on  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1)$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k)(z) = \sum_j (f[\beta_j]_k)(z) = \sum_j \det(\beta_j)^{k-1} j(\beta_j, z)^{-k} f(\beta_j z),$$

By Proposition 3.4.1 this sum is finite. It remains to check that  $f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k$  is well-defined. Indeed, if  $\beta_j$  and  $\beta'_j$  belong to the same orbit, then  $\beta'_j \beta_j^{-1} \in \Gamma_1$ . But then as  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1)$ , is it invariant under the  $[\beta'_j \beta_j^{-1}]_k$  operator so that

$$(f[\beta_j]_k)(z) = ((f[\beta'_j \beta_j^{-1}]_k)[\beta_j]_k)(z) = (f[\beta'_j]_k)(z),$$

and therefore the  $[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k$  operator is well-defined. Actually, the map  $[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k$  preserves holomorphic forms:

**Proposition 3.4.2.** *For any two congruence subgroups  $\Gamma_1$  and  $\Gamma_2$ ,  $[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k$  maps  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1)$  into  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_2)$ . Moreover,  $[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k$  preserves the subspace of cusp forms.*

*Proof.* Holomorphy is immediate since the sum in the definition of  $f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k$  is finite by Proposition 3.4.1. For modularity, let  $\gamma \in \Gamma_2$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} (f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k)(\gamma z) &= \sum_j \det(\beta_j)^{k-1} j(\beta_j, \gamma z)^{-k} f(\beta_j \gamma z) \\ &= \sum_j \det(\beta_j \gamma)^{k-1} j(\beta_j, \gamma z)^{-k} f(\beta_j \gamma z) && \det(\gamma) = 1 \\ &= \sum_j \det(\beta_j \gamma)^{k-1} \left( \frac{j(\gamma, z)}{j(\beta_j \gamma, z)} \right)^k f(\beta_j \gamma z) && \text{cocycle condition} \\ &= j(\gamma, z)^k \sum_j \det(\beta_j \gamma)^{k-1} j(\beta_j \gamma, z)^{-k} f(\beta_j \gamma z) \\ &= j(\gamma, z)^k \sum_j \det(\beta_j)^{k-1} j(\beta_j, z)^{-k} f(\beta_j z) && \beta_j \rightarrow \beta_j \gamma^{-1} \text{ bijection on } \Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2 \\ &= j(\gamma, z)^k \sum_j (f[\beta_j]_k)(z) \\ &= j(\gamma, z)^k (f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k)(z). \end{aligned}$$

This proves  $f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k$  is modular. For the growth condition, let  $\sigma_a$  be a scaling matrix for the cusp  $a$  of  $\Gamma_2 \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . For any orbit representative  $\beta_j$ ,  $\beta_j \sigma_a$  takes  $\infty$  to an element of  $\mathbb{Q} \cup \{\infty\}$  since  $\beta_j \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ . In other words,  $\beta_j \sigma_a \infty = b$  for some cusp  $b$  of  $\Gamma_1 \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . Now choose an integer  $r \geq 1$  such that  $r\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Z})$ . As a consequence, there exist integers  $n, m \geq 1$  such that  $rj(\beta_j, \sigma_a z) = |n\sigma_a z + m|$ . Then letting  $\mathrm{Im}(z) > 1$  and  $\delta$  be as in Lemma 3.2.1, we have

$$j(\beta_j, \sigma_a z) = \frac{|n\sigma_a z + m|}{r} \geq \frac{\delta |ni + m|}{r}.$$

From this bound, we see that

$$(f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k)(\sigma_a z) \ll \left( \frac{\delta |ni + m|}{r} \right)^{-k} \sum_j \det(\beta_j)^{k-1} |f(\beta_j \sigma_a z)|,$$

and the growth condition is satisfied. Therefore  $f[\Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_2]_k \in \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_2)$ . To see that  $[\Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_2]_k$  preserves the subspace of cusp forms, just note that if  $f$  is a cusp form it has exponential decay at the cusps so that the sum on the right-hand side tends to zero as  $\text{Im}(z) \rightarrow \infty$ . Then  $f[\Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_2]_k$  is a cusp form too.  $\square$

The double coset operators are the most basic types of operators on holomorphic forms. They are the building blocks needed to define the more important diamond and Hecke operators.

### 3.5 Diamond & Hecke Operators

The diamond and Hecke operators are special linear operators that are used to construct a linear theory of holomorphic forms. They will also help us understand the Fourier coefficients. Throughout this discussion, we will obtain corresponding results for holomorphic forms with nontrivial characters. We will discuss the diamond operator first. To define them, we need to consider both the congruence subgroups  $\Gamma_1(N)$  and  $\Gamma_0(N)$ . Recall that  $\Gamma_1(N) \leq \Gamma_0(N)$  and consider the map

$$\Gamma_0(N) \rightarrow (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^* \quad \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow d \pmod{N},$$

( $d$  is invertible modulo  $N$  since  $c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}$  and  $ad - bc = 1$ ). This is a surjective homomorphism and its kernel is exactly  $\Gamma_1(N)$  so that  $\Gamma_1(N)$  is a normal subgroup of  $\Gamma_0(N)$  and  $\Gamma_0(N)/\Gamma_1(N) \cong (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^*$ . Letting  $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$  and  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1)$ , consider  $(f[\Gamma_1(N)\alpha\Gamma_1(N)]_k)(z)$ . This is only dependent upon the lower-right entry  $d$  of  $\alpha$  taken modulo  $N$ . To see this, since  $\Gamma_1(N)$  is normal in  $\Gamma_0(N)$ ,  $\Gamma_1(N)\alpha = \alpha\Gamma_1(N)$  so that  $\Gamma_1(N)\alpha\Gamma_1(N) = \alpha\Gamma_1(N)$  and hence there is only one representative for the orbit decomposition. Therefore

$$(f[\Gamma_1(N)\alpha\Gamma_1(N)]_k)(z) = \sum_j (f[\beta]_k)(z) = (f[\alpha]_k)(z).$$

This induces an action of  $\Gamma_0(N)$  on  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1)$  and since  $\Gamma_1(N)$  acts trivially, this is really an action of  $\Gamma_0(N)/\Gamma_1(N) \cong (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^*$ . In other words, we have an induced action that depends only upon the lower-right entry  $d$  of  $\alpha$  taken modulo  $N$ . So for any  $d$  modulo  $N$ , we define the **diamond operator**  $\langle d \rangle : \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(\langle d \rangle f)(z) = (f[\alpha]_k)(z),$$

for any  $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$ . Our discussion above has already shown that the diamond operators  $\langle d \rangle$  are well-defined. Moreover, the diamond operators are also invertible with  $\langle \bar{d} \rangle$  serving as an inverse and  $\alpha^{-1}$  as a representative for the definition. Also, since the operator  $[\alpha]_k$  is multiplicative and

$$\begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ 0 & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ 0 & e \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ 0 & de \end{pmatrix} \pmod{N},$$

the diamond operators are multiplicative. One reason the diamond operators are useful is that they decompose  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  into eigenspaces. For any Dirichlet character  $\chi$  modulo  $N$ , we let

$$\mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi) = \{f \in \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N)) : \langle d \rangle f = \chi(d)f \text{ for all } d \in (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^*\},$$

be the  $\chi$ -eigenspace. Also let  $\mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$  be the corresponding subspace of cusp forms. Then  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  admits a decomposition into these eigenspaces:

**Proposition 3.5.1.** *We have a direct sum decomposition*

$$\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N)) = \bigoplus_{\chi \pmod{N}} \mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi).$$

*Moreover, this decomposition respects the subspace of cusp forms.*

*Proof.* The diamond operators give a representation of  $\Gamma_0(N)/\Gamma_1(N) \cong (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^*$  over  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$ . Explicitly,

$$\Phi : (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^* \times \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N)) \quad (d, f) \rightarrow \langle d \rangle f.$$

But any representation of a finite abelian group over  $\mathbb{C}$  is completely reducible with respect to the characters of the group and every irreducible subrepresentation is 1-dimensional (see Theorem C.2.1). Since the characters of  $(\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^*$  are given by Dirichlet characters, the decomposition as a direct sum follows. The decomposition respects the subspace of cusp forms because the double coset operators do.  $\square$

If  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$  and we choose the representative with positive determinant, then  $\chi(\gamma) = \chi(d)$  and the chain of equalities

$$(\langle d \rangle f)(z) = (f[\gamma]_k)(z) = j(\gamma, z)^{-k} f(\gamma z) = \chi(d) f(z),$$

is equivalent to the modularity of  $f$  with character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma_0(N) \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . Thus  $f$  is a holomorphic form with character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma_0(N) \backslash \mathbb{H}$  if and only if  $f[\gamma]_k = \chi(\gamma) f$  for all  $\gamma \in \Gamma_0(N)$  where  $\gamma$  is chosen to be the representative with positive determinant. It follows that the diamond operators sieve holomorphic forms on  $\Gamma_1(N) \backslash \mathbb{H}$  with trivial character in terms of holomorphic forms on  $\Gamma_0(N) \backslash \mathbb{H}$  with nontrivial characters. In particular,  $\mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi) = \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_0(N), \chi)$  and  $\mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi) = \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_0(N), \chi)$ . So by Proposition 3.5.1, we have

$$\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N)) = \bigoplus_{\chi \pmod{N}} \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_0(N), \chi),$$

and this decomposition respects the subspace of cusp forms. This fact clarifies why it is necessary to consider holomorphic forms with nontrivial characters. Now it is time to define the Hecke operators. For a prime  $p$ , we define the  $p$ -th **Hecke operator**  $T_p : \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(T_p f)(z) = \left( \left[ \Gamma_1(N) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \Gamma_1(N) \right]_k f \right)(z).$$

By Proposition 3.4.2,  $T_p$  preserves the subspace of cusp forms. We will start discussing properties of the diamond and Hecke operators, but we first state an important lemma that will be used throughout (see [DS05] for a proof):

**Lemma 3.5.1.** *Let  $p$  be a prime. As sets,*

$$\Gamma_1(N) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \Gamma_1(N) = \left\{ \gamma \in \text{Mat}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \gamma \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 & * \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \pmod{N}, \det(\gamma) = p \right\}.$$

With Lemma 3.5.1, it is not too hard to see that the diamond and Hecke operators commute:

**Proposition 3.5.2.** *For every  $d \in (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^*$  and prime  $p$ , the diamond operator  $\langle d \rangle$  and the Hecke operator  $T_p$  on  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  commute:*

$$\langle d \rangle T_p = T_p \langle d \rangle$$

*Proof.* Let  $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix}$ . For  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$ , we have

$$\gamma\alpha\gamma^{-1} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & (p-1)ab \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \pmod{N},$$

because  $c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}$ ,  $ad - bc = 1$ , and  $ad \equiv 1 \pmod{N}$ . By Lemma 3.5.1,  $\gamma\alpha\gamma^{-1} \in \Gamma_1(N)\alpha\Gamma_1(N)$  and so we can use this representative in place of  $\alpha$ . On the one hand,

$$\Gamma_1(N)\alpha\Gamma_1(N) = \bigcup_j \Gamma_1(N)\beta_j.$$

On the other hand, using  $\gamma\alpha\gamma^{-1}$  in place of  $\alpha$  and the normality of  $\Gamma_1(N)$  in  $\Gamma_0(N)$ , we have

$$\Gamma_1(N)\alpha\Gamma_1(N) = \Gamma_1(N)\gamma\alpha\gamma^{-1}\Gamma_1(N) = \gamma\Gamma_1(N)\alpha\Gamma_1(N)\gamma^{-1} = \gamma \bigcup_j \Gamma_1(N)\beta_j\gamma^{-1} = \bigcup_j \Gamma_1(N)\gamma\beta_j\gamma^{-1}.$$

Upon comparing these two decompositions of  $\Gamma_1(N)\alpha\Gamma_1(N)$  gives

$$\bigcup_j \Gamma_1(N)\beta_j = \bigcup_j \Gamma_1(N)\gamma\beta_j\gamma^{-1}.$$

Now let  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$ . Then this equivalence of unions implies

$$\langle d \rangle T_p f = \sum_j f[\beta_j\gamma]_k = \sum_j f[\gamma\beta_j]_k = T_p \langle d \rangle f.$$

□

Using Lemma 3.5.1 we can obtain an explicit description of the Hecke operator  $T_p$ :

**Proposition 3.5.3.** *Let  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$ . Then the Hecke operator  $T_p$  acts on  $f$  as follows:*

$$(T_p f)(z) = \begin{cases} \sum_{j \pmod{p}} \left( f \left[ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \right]_k \right) (z) + \left( f \left[ \begin{pmatrix} m & n \\ N & p \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} p & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right]_k \right) (z) & \text{if } p \nmid N, \\ \sum_{j \pmod{p}} \left( f \left[ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \right]_k \right) (z) & \text{if } p \mid N, \end{cases}$$

where  $m$  and  $n$  are chosen such that  $\det \left( \begin{pmatrix} m & n \\ N & p \end{pmatrix} \right) = 1$ .

*Proof.* Set  $\Gamma_3 = \alpha^1 \Gamma_1(N) \alpha \cap \Gamma_1(N)$  where  $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix}$ . Define

$$\beta_j = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \beta_\infty = \begin{pmatrix} m & n \\ N & p \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} p & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} pm & n \\ Np & p \end{pmatrix},$$

for  $j$  taken modulo  $p$  and where  $m$  and  $n$  are chosen such that  $\det \left( \begin{pmatrix} m & n \\ N & p \end{pmatrix} \right) = 1$ . It suffices to show  $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_{p-1}\}$  and  $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_{p-1}, \beta_\infty\}$  are complete sets of orbit representatives for  $\Gamma_1(N) \backslash \Gamma_1(N) \alpha \Gamma_1(N)$  depending on if  $p \nmid N$  or not. To accomplish this, we will find a complete set of coset representatives for  $\Gamma_3 \backslash \Gamma_1(N)$  and then use Lemma 3.4.2. First we require an explicit description of  $\Gamma_3$ . Let

$$\Gamma^0(p) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \text{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} * & 0 \\ * & * \end{pmatrix} \pmod{p} \right\},$$

and define

$$\Gamma_1^0(N, p) = \Gamma_1(N) \cap \Gamma^0(p).$$

We claim  $\Gamma_3 = \Gamma_1^0(N, p)$ . For the forward inclusion, let  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_1(N)$  and observe that

$$\alpha^{-1}\gamma\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & pd \\ p^{-1}c & d \end{pmatrix}.$$

If  $\alpha^{-1}\gamma\alpha \in \Gamma_3$ , then  $\alpha^{-1}\gamma\alpha \in \Gamma_1(N)$  and thus  $p \mid c$  so that  $\alpha^{-1}\gamma\alpha \in \text{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ . Moreover, the previous computation implies  $\alpha^{-1}\gamma\alpha \in \Gamma_1^0(N, p)$  and so  $\Gamma_3 \subseteq \Gamma_1^0(N, p)$ . For the reverse inclusion, suppose  $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_1^0(N, p)$ . Then  $b = pk$  for some  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Now observe

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & k \\ pc & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} = \alpha^{-1}\gamma\alpha,$$

where  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & k \\ pc & d \end{pmatrix}$ . As  $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_1(N)$  we conclude  $\gamma \in \Gamma_1(N)$  as well. Now let

$$\gamma_j = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma_\infty = \begin{pmatrix} pm & n \\ N & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

for  $j$  taken modulo  $p$  and where  $m$  and  $n$  are as before. Clearly  $\gamma_j \in \Gamma_1(N)$  for all  $j$ . As  $pm - Nn = 1$ , we have  $pm \equiv 1 \pmod{N}$  so that  $\gamma_\infty \in \Gamma_1(N)$  as well. We claim that  $\{\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_{p-1}\}$  and  $\{\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_{p-1}, \gamma_\infty\}$  are sets of coset representatives for  $\Gamma_3 \backslash \Gamma_1(N)$  depending on if  $p \nmid N$  or not. Let  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_1(N)$  and consider

$$\gamma\gamma_j^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -j \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b - aj \\ c & d - cj \end{pmatrix}.$$

As  $\gamma\gamma_j^{-1} \in \Gamma_1(N)$  because both  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma_j$  are,  $\gamma\gamma_j^{-1} \in \Gamma_3 = \Gamma_1^0(N, p)$  for some  $i$  if and only if

$$b \equiv aj \pmod{p}.$$

First suppose  $p \nmid a$ . Then  $a$  is invertible modulo  $p$  so we may take  $j = \bar{a}b \pmod{p}$ . Now suppose  $p \mid a$ . If there is some  $i$  satisfying  $b \equiv ai \pmod{p}$ , then we also have  $p \mid b$ . But as  $ad - bc = 1$ , this is impossible and so no such  $i$  exists. As  $a \equiv 1 \pmod{N}$ ,  $p \mid a$  if and only if  $p \nmid N$ . In this case consider instead

$$\gamma\gamma_\infty^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -n \\ -N & pm \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a - Nb & pmb - na \\ c - Nd & pmd - nc \end{pmatrix}.$$

Since  $p \mid a$ , we have  $pmb - na \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$  so that  $\gamma\gamma_\infty^{-1} \in \Gamma_3 = \Gamma_1^0(N, p)$ . Altogether, we have shown that  $\{\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_{p-1}\}$  and  $\{\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_{p-1}, \gamma_\infty\}$  are sets of coset representatives for  $\Gamma_3 \backslash \Gamma_1(N)$  depending on if  $p \nmid N$  or not. To show they are complete sets, we need to show that no two representatives belong to the same coset. To this end, suppose  $j$  and  $j'$  are distinct, taken modulo  $p$ , and consider

$$\gamma_j\gamma_{j'}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j' \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j - j' \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then  $\gamma_j\gamma_{j'}^{-1} \in \Gamma_3 = \Gamma_1^0(N, p)$  if and only if  $j - j' \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ . This is impossible since  $j$  and  $j'$  are distinct. Hence  $\gamma_j$  and  $\gamma_{j'}$  represent distinct cosets. Now consider

$$\gamma_j\gamma_\infty^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -n \\ -N & pm \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - Nj & pmj - n \\ -N & pm \end{pmatrix}.$$

Now  $\gamma_j \gamma_\infty^{-1} \in \Gamma_3 = \Gamma_1^0(N, p)$  if and only if  $pmj - n \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ . This is impossible since  $pm - Nn = 1$  implies  $p \nmid n$ . Therefore  $\gamma_j$  and  $\gamma_\infty$  represent distinct cosets. It follows that  $\{\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_{p-1}\}$  and  $\{\gamma_1, \dots, \beta_{p-1}, \gamma_\infty\}$  are complete sets of coset representatives completing the proof. As

$$\alpha\gamma_j = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} = \beta_j \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha\gamma_\infty = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} pm & n \\ N & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} pm & n \\ Np & p \end{pmatrix} = \beta_\infty,$$

Lemma 3.4.2 finishes the proof.  $\square$

This explicit definition of  $T_p$  can be used to compute how the Hecke operators act on the Fourier coefficients of a holomorphic form:

**Proposition 3.5.4.** *Let  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  with Fourier coefficients  $a_n(f)$ . Then for primes  $p$  with  $(p, N) = 1$ ,*

$$(T_p f)(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \left( a_{np}(f) + \chi_{N,0}(p) p^{k-1} a_{\frac{n}{p}}(\langle p \rangle f) \right) e^{2\pi i n z},$$

is the Fourier series of  $T_p f$  where it is understood that  $a_{\frac{n}{p}}(f) = 0$  if  $p \nmid n$ . Moreover, if  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi)$ , then  $T_p f \in \mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi)$  and

$$(T_p f)(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \left( a_{np}(f) + \chi(p) p^{k-1} a_{\frac{n}{p}}(f) \right) e^{2\pi i n z},$$

where it is understood that  $a_{\frac{n}{p}}(f) = 0$  if  $p \nmid n$ .

*Proof.* In view of Proposition 3.5.1 and the linearity of the Hecke operators, it suffices to assume  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi)$  and thus only the second formula needs to be verified. Observe that

$$\left( f \left[ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \right]_k \right) (z) = \frac{1}{p} f \left( \frac{z+j}{p} \right) = \frac{1}{p} \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n(f) e^{\frac{2\pi i n(z+j)}{p}}.$$

Summing over all  $j$  modulo  $p$  gives

$$\sum_{j \pmod{p}} \left( f \left[ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \right]_k \right) (z) = \sum_{j \pmod{p}} \frac{1}{p} \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n(f) e^{\frac{2\pi i n(z+j)}{p}} = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n(f) e^{\frac{2\pi i n z}{p}} \frac{1}{p} \sum_{j \pmod{p}} e^{\frac{2\pi i n j}{p}}.$$

If  $p \nmid N$  then the inner sum vanishes because it is the sum over all  $p$ -th roots of unity. If  $p \mid N$  then the sum is  $p$ . Therefore

$$\sum_{j \pmod{p}} \left( f \left[ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \right]_k \right) (z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_{np}(f) e^{2\pi i n z}.$$

If  $p \mid N$ , then Proposition 3.5.3 implies

$$(T_p f)(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_{np}(f) e^{2\pi i n z}, \tag{3.3}$$

which is the claimed Fourier series of  $T_p f$ .  $p \nmid N$ , then we have the additional term

$$\begin{aligned} \left( f \left[ \begin{pmatrix} m & n \\ N & p \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} p & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right]_k \right) (z) &= \left( \langle p \rangle f \left[ \begin{pmatrix} p & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right]_k \right) (z) \\ &= p^{k-1} (\langle p \rangle f)(pz) \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 0} p^{k-1} a_n(\langle p \rangle f) e^{2\pi i n p z} \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 0} \chi(p) p^{k-1} a_n(f) e^{2\pi i n p z}, \end{aligned}$$



where the first equality holds because  $\begin{pmatrix} m & n \\ N & p \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$  and the last equality holds because  $\langle p \rangle f = \chi(p)f$ . In this case, Proposition 3.5.3 gives

$$(T_p f)(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_{np}(f) + \chi(p)p^{k-1}a_{\frac{n}{p}}(f)e^{2\pi inz}.$$

Since  $\chi(p) = 0$  if  $p \mid N$ , these two cases can be expressed together as

$$(T_p f)(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \left( a_{np}(f) + \chi(p)p^{k-1}a_{\frac{n}{p}}(f) \right) e^{2\pi inz}.$$

□

We now mention the crucial result about Hecke operators which is that they form a simultaneously commuting family with the diamond operators:

**Proposition 3.5.5.** *Let  $p$  and  $q$  be primes and  $d, e \in (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^*$ . The Hecke operators  $T_p$  and  $T_q$  and diamond operators  $\langle d \rangle$  and  $\langle e \rangle$  on  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  form a simultaneously commuting family:*

$$T_p T_q = T_q T_p, \quad \langle d \rangle T_p = T_p \langle d \rangle, \quad \text{and} \quad \langle d \rangle \langle e \rangle = \langle e \rangle \langle d \rangle.$$

*Proof.* Showing the diamond and Hecke operators commute was Proposition 3.5.2. To show commutativity of the diamond operators, let  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$  and  $\eta = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & e \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$ . Then

$$\gamma\eta \equiv \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ 0 & de \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ 0 & ed \end{pmatrix} \equiv \eta\gamma \pmod{N}.$$

Therefore  $[\gamma\eta]_k = [\eta\gamma]_k$  and so for any  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$ , we have

$$\langle d \rangle \langle e \rangle f = f[\gamma\eta]_k = f[\eta\gamma]_k = \langle e \rangle \langle d \rangle f.$$

We now show that the Hecke operators commute. In view of Proposition 3.5.1 and linearity of the Hecke operators, it suffices to prove this for  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi)$ . Applying Proposition 3.5.4 twice, for any  $n \geq 1$  we compute

$$\begin{aligned} a_n(T_p T_q f) &= a_{np}(T_q f) + \chi(p)p^{k-1}a_{\frac{n}{p}}(T_q f) \\ &= a_{npq}(f) + \chi(q)q^{k-1}a_{\frac{np}{q}}(f) + \chi(p)p^{k-1}(a_{\frac{nq}{p}}(f) + \chi(q)q^{k-1}a_{\frac{n}{pq}}(f)) \\ &= a_{npq}(f) + \chi(q)q^{k-1}a_{\frac{np}{q}}(f) + \chi(p)p^{k-1}a_{\frac{nq}{p}}(f) + \chi(pq)(pq)^{k-1}a_{\frac{n}{pq}}(f). \end{aligned}$$

The last expression is symmetric in  $p$  and  $q$  so that  $a_n(T_p T_q f) = a_n(T_q T_p f)$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . Since all of the Fourier coefficients are equal, we get

$$T_p T_q f = T_q T_p f.$$

□

We can use Proposition 3.5.5 to construct diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$  and Hecke operators  $T_m$  for all  $m \geq 1$ . The **diamond operator**  $\langle m \rangle : \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  is defined to be the linear operator given by

$$\langle m \rangle = \begin{cases} \langle m \rangle \text{ with } m \text{ taken modulo } N & \text{if } (m, N) = 1, \\ 0 & \text{if } (m, N) > 1. \end{cases}$$

Now for the Hecke operators. If  $m = p_1^{r_1} p_2^{r_2} \cdots p_k^{r_k}$  is the prime decomposition of  $m$ , then we define the  $m$ -th **Hecke operator**  $T_m : \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  to be the linear operator given by

$$T_m = \prod_{1 \leq i \leq k} T_{p_i^{r_i}},$$

where  $T_{p^r}$  is defined inductively by

$$T_{p^r} = \begin{cases} T_p T_{p^{r-1}} - p^{k-1} \langle p \rangle T_{p^{r-2}} & \text{if } p \nmid N, \\ T_p^r & \text{if } p \mid N, \end{cases}$$

for all  $r \geq 2$ . Then by Proposition 3.5.5, the Hecke operators  $T_m$  are multiplicative but not completely multiplicative in  $m$ . Moreover, they commute with the diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$ . Using these definitions, Propositions 3.5.4 and 3.5.5, a more general formula for how the Hecke operators  $T_m$  act on Fourier coefficients can be derived:

**Proposition 3.5.6.** *Let  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  with Fourier coefficients  $a_n(f)$ . Then for  $m \geq 1$  with  $(m, N) = 1$ ,*

$$(T_m f)(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \left( \sum_{d \mid (n, m)} d^{k-1} a_{\frac{nm}{d^2}}(\langle d \rangle f) \right) e^{2\pi i n z},$$

is the Fourier series of  $T_m f$ . Moreover, if  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi)$ , then

$$(T_m f)(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \left( \sum_{d \mid (n, m)} \chi(d) d^{k-1} a_{\frac{nm}{d^2}}(f) \right) e^{2\pi i n z}.$$

*Proof.* In view of Proposition 3.5.1 and linearity of the Hecke operators, we may assume  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi)$ . Therefore we only need to verify the second formula. When  $m = 1$  the result is obvious and when  $m = p$ , we have

$$\sum_{d \mid (n, p)} \chi(d) d^{k-1} a_{\frac{np}{d^2}}(f) = a_{np}(f) + \chi(p) p^{k-1} a_{\frac{n}{p}}(f),$$

which is the result obtained from Proposition 3.5.4. By induction assume that the desired formula holds for  $m = 1, p, \dots, p^{r-1}$ . Using the definition of  $T_{p^r}$  and Proposition 3.5.4, for any  $n \geq 1$  we compute

$$\begin{aligned} a_n(T_{p^r} f) &= a_n(T_p T_{p^{r-1}} f) - \chi(p) p^{k-1} a_n(T_{p^{r-2}} f) \\ &= a_{np}(T_{p^{r-1}} f) + \chi(p) p^{k-1} a_{\frac{n}{p}}(T_{p^{r-1}} f) - \chi(p) p^{k-1} a_n(T_{p^{r-2}} f). \end{aligned}$$

By our induction hypothesis, this last expression is

$$\sum_{d \mid (np, p^{r-1})} \chi(d) d^{k-1} a_{\frac{np}{d^2}}(f) + \chi(p) p^{k-1} \sum_{d \mid (\frac{n}{p}, p^{r-1})} \chi(d) d^{k-1} a_{\frac{np^{r-2}}{d^2}}(f) - \chi(p) p^{k-1} \sum_{d \mid (n, p^{r-2})} \chi(d) d^{k-1} a_{\frac{np^{r-2}}{d^2}}(f).$$

Write the first sum as

$$\sum_{d \mid (np, p^{r-1})} \chi(d) d^{k-1} a_{\frac{np}{d^2}}(f) = a_{np^r}(f) + \sum_{d \mid (n, p^{r-2})} \chi(d) d^{k-1} a_{\frac{np^{r-2}}{d^2}}(f),$$

and observe that the sum on the right-hand side cancels the entire third term above. Therefore our expression reduces to

$$\begin{aligned} a_{np^r}(f) + \chi(p) p^{k-1} \sum_{d \mid (\frac{n}{p}, p^{r-1})} \chi(d) d^{k-1} a_{\frac{np^{r-2}}{d^2}}(f) &= a_{np^r}(f) + \sum_{d \mid (\frac{n}{p}, p^{r-1})} \chi(dp) (dp)^{k-1} a_{\frac{np^{r-2}}{d^2}}(f) \\ &= a_{np^r}(f) + \sum_{\substack{d \mid (n, p^r) \\ d \neq 1}} \chi(d) d^{k-1} a_{\frac{np^r}{d^2}}(f) \\ &= \sum_{d \mid (n, p^r)} \chi(d) d^{k-1} a_{\frac{np^r}{d^2}}(f), \end{aligned}$$

where in the second line we have performed the change of variables  $dp \rightarrow d$  in the sum. This proves the claim when  $m = p^r$  for all  $r \geq 0$ . By multiplicativity of the Hecke operators, it suffices to prove the claim when  $m = p^r q^s$  for another prime  $q$  and some  $s \geq 0$ . We compute

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_n(T_{p^r q^s} f) &= a_n(T_{p^r} T_{q^s} f) \\
 &= \sum_{d_1 | (n, p^r)} \chi(d_1) d_1^{k-1} a_{\frac{np^r}{d_1^2}}(T_{q^s} f) \\
 &= \sum_{d_1 | (n, p^r)} \chi(d_1) d_1^{k-1} \sum_{d_2 | \left(\frac{np^r}{d_1^2}, q^s\right)} \chi(d_2) d_2^{k-1} a_{\frac{np^r q^s}{(d_1 d_2)^2}}(f) \\
 &= \sum_{d_1 | (n, p^r)} \sum_{d_2 | \left(\frac{np^r}{d_1^2}, q^s\right)} \chi(d_1 d_2) (d_1 d_2)^{k-1} a_{\frac{np^r q^s}{(d_1 d_2)^2}}(f).
 \end{aligned}$$

Summing over pairs  $(d_1, d_2)$  of divisors of  $(n, p^r)$  and  $\left(\frac{np^r}{d_1^2}, q^s\right)$  respectively is the same as summing over divisors  $d$  of  $(n, p^r q^s)$ . Indeed, because  $p$  and  $q$  are relative prime, any such  $d$  is of the form  $d = d_1 d_2$  where  $d_1 | (n, p^r)$  and  $d_2 | \left(\frac{np^r}{d_1^2}, q^s\right)$ . Therefore the double sum becomes

$$\sum_{d | (n, p^r q^s)} \chi(d) d^{k-1} a_{\frac{np^r q^s}{d^2}}(f).$$

This completes the proof.  $\square$

The diamond and Hecke operators turn out to be normal with respect to the Petersson inner product on the subspace of cusp forms. To prove this fact, we will require a lemma:

**Lemma 3.5.2.** *Let  $\Gamma$  be a congruence subgroup and let  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ . Then the following are true:*

- (i) *If  $\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha \subseteq \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ , then  $V_{\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha} = V_\Gamma$  and  $[\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha] = [\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \Gamma]$ .*
- (ii) *There exist  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ , where  $n = [\Gamma : \alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha \cap \Gamma] = [\Gamma : \alpha\Gamma\alpha^{-1} \cap \Gamma]$ , and such that*

$$\Gamma\alpha\Gamma = \bigcup_j \Gamma\beta_j = \bigcup_j \beta_j\Gamma.$$

*Proof.* For (i), we claim

$$V_{\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha} = \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha}} d\mu = \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} d\mu = V_\Gamma,$$

where the second equality is justified by first making the change of variables  $z \rightarrow \alpha z$  and then noting that  $\alpha$  acts as an automorphism on  $\mathbb{H}$  so that  $\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma\alpha} = \mathcal{F}_\Gamma$ . The second statement now follows from Equation (2.1). For (ii), apply (i) with the congruence subgroup  $\alpha\Gamma\alpha^{-1} \cap \Gamma$  in place of  $\Gamma$  to get

$$[\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha \cap \Gamma] = [\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \alpha\Gamma\alpha^{-1} \cap \Gamma].$$

Dividing both sides by  $[\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) : \Gamma]$  gives

$$[\Gamma : \alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha \cap \Gamma] = [\Gamma : \alpha\Gamma\alpha^{-1} \cap \Gamma].$$

Therefore we can find coset representatives  $\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_n \in \Gamma$  and  $\tilde{\gamma}_1, \dots, \tilde{\gamma}_n \in \Gamma$  such that

$$\Gamma = \bigcup_j (\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha \cap \Gamma)\gamma_j = \bigcup_j (\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha \cap \Gamma)\tilde{\gamma}_j^{-1}.$$

Invoking Lemma 3.4.2 twice, we can express each of these coset decompositions as an orbit decomposition:

$$\bigcup_j (\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha \cap \Gamma)\gamma_j = \bigcup_j \Gamma\alpha\gamma_j \quad \text{and} \quad \bigcup_j (\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha \cap \Gamma)\tilde{\gamma}_j^{-1} = \bigcup_j \Gamma\alpha^{-1}\tilde{\gamma}_j^{-1}.$$

It follows that

$$\Gamma = \bigcup_j \Gamma\alpha\gamma_j = \bigcup_j \tilde{\gamma}_j\alpha\Gamma.$$

For each  $j$  the orbit spaces  $\Gamma\alpha\gamma_j$  and  $\tilde{\gamma}_j\alpha\Gamma$  have nonempty intersection. For if they did we would have  $\Gamma\alpha\gamma_j \subseteq \bigcup_{i \neq j} \tilde{\gamma}_i\alpha\Gamma$  and thus  $\Gamma\alpha\Gamma \subseteq \bigcup_{i \neq j} \tilde{\gamma}_i\alpha\Gamma$ . This contradicts the previous decomposition of  $\Gamma$ . Therefore we can find representatives  $\beta_j \in \Gamma\alpha\gamma_j \cap \tilde{\gamma}_j\alpha\Gamma$  for every  $j$ . Then  $\beta_j$

$$\Gamma = \bigcup_j \Gamma\beta_j = \bigcup_j \beta_j\Gamma. \quad \square$$

We can use Lemma 3.5.2 to compute adjoints:

**Proposition 3.5.7.** *Let  $\Gamma$  be a congruence subgroup and let  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ . Set  $\alpha' = \det(\alpha)\alpha^{-1}$ . Then the following are true:*

(i) *If  $\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha \subseteq \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ , then for all  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$  and  $g \in \mathcal{S}_k(\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha)$ , we have*

$$\langle f[\alpha]_k, g \rangle_{\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha} = \langle f, g[\alpha']_k \rangle_{\Gamma}.$$

(ii) *For all  $f, g \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma)$ , we have*

$$\langle f[\Gamma\alpha\Gamma]_k, g \rangle = \langle f, g[\Gamma\alpha'\Gamma]_k \rangle.$$

*In particular, if  $\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha = \Gamma$  then  $[\alpha]_k^* = [\alpha']_k$  and  $[\Gamma\alpha\Gamma]_k^* = [\Gamma\alpha'\Gamma]_k$ .*

*Proof.* To prove (i) we first compute

$$\begin{aligned} \langle f[\alpha]_k, g \rangle_{\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha} &= \frac{1}{V_{\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha}} (f[\alpha]_k)(z) \overline{g(z)} \mathrm{Im}(z)^k d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{V_{\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha}} \det(\alpha)^{k-1} j(\alpha, z)^{-k} f(\alpha z) \overline{g(z)} \mathrm{Im}(z)^k d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{V_{\Gamma}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha}} \det(\alpha)^{k-1} j(\alpha, z)^{-k} f(\alpha z) \overline{g(z)} \mathrm{Im}(z)^k d\mu \quad \text{Lemma 3.5.2 (i).} \end{aligned}$$

Making the change of variables  $z \rightarrow \alpha'z$ , using the fact  $\mathcal{F}_{\alpha'\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha} = \mathcal{F}_{\Gamma\alpha'} = \mathcal{F}_{\Gamma}$  (because  $\alpha'\alpha^{-1}$  lies in the center of  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  and  $\alpha'$  acts as an automorphism on  $\mathbb{H}$ ), and that  $\alpha'$  acts as  $\alpha^{-1}$  on  $\mathbb{H}$  (because they differ by a scalar), together give

$$\frac{1}{V_{\Gamma}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma}} \det(\alpha)^{k-1} j(\alpha, \alpha'z)^{-k} f(z) \overline{g(\alpha'z)} \mathrm{Im}(\alpha'z)^k d\mu.$$

Moreover, applying the cocycle condition and the identities  $\text{Im}(\alpha'z) = \det(\alpha') \frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|j(\alpha', z)|^2}$ ,  $j(\alpha\alpha', z) = \det(\alpha)$ , and  $\det(\alpha') = \det(\alpha)$  together, we can further rewrite the integral as

$$\frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \det(\alpha')^{k-1} \overline{j(\alpha', z)^{-k}} f(z) \overline{g(\alpha'z)} \text{Im}(z)^k d\mu.$$

Reversing the first computation in the start of the proof but applied to this integral shows that that

$$\frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \det(\alpha')^{k-1} \overline{j(\alpha', z)^{-k}} f(z) \overline{g(\alpha'z)} \text{Im}(z)^k d\mu = \langle f, g[\alpha']_k \rangle_\Gamma,$$

which completes the proof of (i). To prove (ii), the coset decomposition  $\Gamma\alpha\Gamma = \bigcup_j \Gamma\beta_j$  from Lemma 3.5.2 (ii) implies we can use the  $\beta_j$  as representatives in the definition of the  $[\Gamma\alpha\Gamma]_k$  operator. As the  $\beta_j$  also satisfy  $\Gamma\alpha\Gamma = \bigcup_j \beta_j\Gamma$ , upon inverting  $\beta_j$  and noting that  $\beta_j \in \Gamma\alpha$ , we obtain  $\Gamma\alpha^{-1}\Gamma = \bigcup_j \Gamma\beta_j^{-1}$ . Since scalar multiplication commutes with matrices and the matrices in  $\Gamma$  have determinant 1, we conclude that  $\Gamma\alpha'\Gamma = \bigcup_j \Gamma\beta'_j$  where  $\beta'_j = \det(\beta_j)\beta_j^{-1}$  (also  $\det(\beta_j) = \det(\alpha)$ ). So we can use the  $\beta'_j$  as representatives in the definition of the  $[\Gamma\alpha'\Gamma]_k$  operator. The statement now follows from (i). The last statement is now obvious.  $\square$

We can now prove that the diamond and Hecke operators are normal:

**Proposition 3.5.8.** *On  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$ , the diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$  and Hecke operators  $T_m$  are normal with respect to the Petersson inner product for all  $m \geq 1$  with  $(m, N) = 1$ . Moreover, their adjoints are given by*

$$\langle m \rangle^* = \langle \overline{m} \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad T_p^* = \langle \overline{p} \rangle T_p.$$

*Proof.* As taking the adjoint is a linear operator, the definition of the diamond and Hecke operators and Proposition 3.5.5 imply that it suffices to prove the two adjoint formulas for the when  $m = p$  is prime. We will first prove the adjoint formula for  $\langle p \rangle$ . Let  $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & p \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$ . As  $\Gamma_1(N)$  is normal in  $\Gamma_0(N)$  and  $\det(\alpha) = 1$ , Proposition 3.5.7 gives

$$\langle p \rangle^* = [\alpha]_k^* = [\alpha']_k = [\alpha^{-1}]_k = \langle \overline{p} \rangle.$$

This proves the adjoint formula for the diamond operators and normality follows from multiplicativity. For the Hecke operator  $T_p$ , let  $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix}$  and note that  $\alpha' = \begin{pmatrix} p & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ . Now Proposition 3.5.7 implies

$$T_p^* = [\Gamma_1(N)\alpha\Gamma_1(N)]_k^* = [\Gamma_1(N)\alpha'\Gamma_1(N)]_k.$$

Let  $m$  and  $n$  be such that  $pm - Nn = 1$ . Then

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & n \\ N & pm \end{pmatrix} \alpha' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & n \\ N & pm \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} p & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} p & n \\ Np & pm \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} p & n \\ N & m \end{pmatrix} = \alpha \begin{pmatrix} p & n \\ N & m \end{pmatrix},$$

which implies that  $\alpha' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & n \\ N & pm \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \alpha \begin{pmatrix} p & n \\ N & m \end{pmatrix}$ . As  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & n \\ N & pm \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_1(N)$  (note that  $pm \equiv 1 \pmod{N}$  since  $pm - Nn = 1$ ) and  $\begin{pmatrix} p & n \\ N & m \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$ , substituting the triple product expression for  $\alpha'$  into  $[\Gamma_1(N)\alpha'\Gamma_1(N)]_k$  and noting that  $\Gamma_1(N)$  is normal in  $\Gamma_0(N)$  yields

$$\Gamma_1(N)\alpha'\Gamma_1(N) = \Gamma_1(N)\alpha\Gamma_1(N) \begin{pmatrix} p & n \\ N & m \end{pmatrix}.$$

Now if the  $\beta_j$  are representatives for  $[\Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_1(N)]_k$ , then  $\Gamma_1\alpha\Gamma_1(N) = \bigcup_j \Gamma_1(N)\beta_j$ . Therefore the formula above implies  $\Gamma_1\alpha'\Gamma_1(N) = \bigcup_j \Gamma_1(N)\beta_j \begin{pmatrix} p & n \\ N & m \end{pmatrix}$  and so the  $\beta_j \begin{pmatrix} p & n \\ N & m \end{pmatrix}$  can be used as representatives for  $[\Gamma_1\alpha'\Gamma_1(N)]_k$ . As  $pm - Nn = 1$ ,  $m \equiv \overline{p} \pmod{N}$  and so Proposition 3.5.5 implies that  $T_p^* = \langle \overline{p} \rangle T_p$ . This proves the adjoint formula for the Hecke operators and normality follows from multiplicativity.  $\square$

In the case of the modular group, Proposition 3.5.8 says that all of the diamond and Hecke operators are normal. Now suppose  $f$  is a non-constant holomorphic form with Fourier coefficients  $a_n(f)$ . Let the eigenvalue of  $T_m$  for  $f$  be  $\lambda_f(m)$ . We say that the  $\lambda_f(m)$  are the **Hecke eigenvalues** of  $f$ . If  $f$  is a simultaneous eigenfunction for all diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$  and Hecke operators  $T_m$  with  $(m, N) = 1$ , we call  $f$  an **eigenform**. If the condition  $(m, N) = 1$  can be dropped, so that  $f$  is a simultaneous eigenfunction for all diamond and Hecke operators, then we say  $f$  is a **Hecke eigenform**. In particular, on  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  all eigenforms are Hecke eigenforms. If  $f$  is an eigenform, then Proposition 3.5.6 immediately implies that the first Fourier coefficient of  $T_m f$  is  $a_m(f)$  and so  $a_m(f) = \lambda_f(m)a_1(f)$  for all  $m \geq 1$  with  $(m, N) = 1$ . Therefore we cannot have  $a_1(f) = 0$  for this would mean  $f$  is constant. We can normalize  $f$  by dividing by  $a_1(f)$  so that the Fourier series has constant term 1. It follows that the  $m$ -th Fourier coefficient of  $f$ , when  $(m, N) = 1$ , is precisely the Hecke eigenvalue  $\lambda_f(m)$ . This normalization is called the **Hecke normalization** of  $f$ . The **Petersson normalization** of  $f$  is where we normalize so that  $\langle f, f \rangle = 1$ . From the spectral theorem we derive an important corollary:

**Theorem 3.5.1.**  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  admits an orthonormal basis of eigenforms.

*Proof.* This follows from the spectral theorem along with Propositions 3.5.5 and 3.5.8.  $\square$

As a near immediate consequence of Theorem 3.5.1, we can show that Hecke eigenvalues of eigenforms satisfy certain relations known as the **Hecke relations** for holomorphic forms:

**Proposition 3.5.9 (Hecke relations, holomorphic version).** *Let  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$  be a Hecke eigenform with Hecke eigenvalues  $\lambda_f(n)$ . Then the Hecke eigenvalues are multiplicative and satisfy*

$$\lambda_f(n)\lambda_f(m) = \sum_{d|(n,m)} \chi(d)d^{k-1}\lambda_f\left(\frac{nm}{d^2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_f(nm) = \sum_{d|(n,m)} \mu(d)\chi(d)d^{k-1}\lambda_f\left(\frac{n}{d}\right)\lambda_f\left(\frac{m}{d}\right),$$

for all  $n, m \geq 1$  with  $(nm, N) = 1$ .

*Proof.* By Theorem 3.5.1 it suffices to verify this when  $f$  is a Hecke eigenform. We may also assume  $f$  is Hecke normalized without any harm. The multiplicativity of the Hecke eigenvalues now follows from the multiplicity of the Hecke operators. Moreover, the first identity follows immediately from computing the  $n$ -th Fourier coefficient of  $T_m f$  in two different ways. On the one hand, use that  $f$  is a Hecke eigenform. On the other hand, use Proposition 3.5.6. For the second identity, we have

$$\chi(p)p^{k-1} = \lambda_f(p)^2 - \lambda_f(p^2),$$

provided  $(p, N) = 1$ , by computing the  $p$ -th Fourier coefficient of  $T_p f$  in two different ways as we just did above. The second identity now follows from the first because  $\lambda_f(n)$  is a specially multiplicative function in  $n$  (see Theorem A.2.2).  $\square$

As an immediate consequence of the Hecke relations, the Hecke operators satisfy analogous relations:

**Corollary 3.5.1.** *For all  $n, m \geq 1$  with  $(nm, N) = 1$ , we have*

$$T_n T_m = \sum_{d|(n,m)} \chi(d)d^{k-1}T_{\frac{nm}{d^2}} \quad \text{and} \quad T_{nm} = \sum_{d|(n,m)} \mu(d)\chi(d)d^{k-1}T_{\frac{n}{d}}T_{\frac{m}{d}}.$$

*Proof.* This is immediate from Theorem 3.5.1 and the Hecke relations.  $\square$

The identities in Corollary 3.5.1 can also be established directly. Moreover, the first identity is symmetric in  $n$  and  $m$  so it can be used to show that the Hecke operators commute.

### 3.6 Atkin–Lehner Theory

So far, our entire theory of holomorphic forms has started with a fixed congruence subgroup of some level. Atkin–Lehner theory, or the theory of oldforms & newforms, allows us to discuss holomorphic forms in the context of moving between levels. In this setting, we will only deal with congruence subgroups of the form  $\Gamma_1(N)$  and cusp forms on  $\Gamma_1(N) \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . The easiest way lift a holomorphic form from a smaller level to a larger level is to observe that if  $M \mid N$ , then  $\Gamma_1(N) \leq \Gamma_1(M)$  so there is a natural inclusion  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(M)) \subseteq \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$ . There is a less trivial way of lifting from  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(M))$  to  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$ . For any  $d \mid \frac{N}{M}$ , let  $\alpha_d = \begin{pmatrix} d & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ . If  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(M))$ , then

$$(f[\alpha_d]_k)(z) = \det(\alpha_d)^{k-1} j(\alpha_d, z)^{-k} f(\alpha_d z) = d^{k-1} f(dz).$$

In fact,  $[\alpha_d]_k$  maps  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(M))$  into  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  and preserves the subspace of cusp forms:

**Proposition 3.6.1.** *Let  $M$  and  $N$  be positive integers such that  $M \mid N$ . For any  $d \mid \frac{N}{M}$ ,  $[\alpha_d]_k$  maps  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(M))$  into  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$ .*

*Proof.* It is clear that holomorphy and the growth condition are satisfied for  $f[\alpha_d]_k$ . It is also clear that  $f[\alpha_d]_k$  is a cusp form if  $f$  is. So all that is left to verify is the modularity condition. To see this, for any  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d' \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_1(N)$ , we have

$$\alpha_d \gamma \alpha_d^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} d & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d' \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} d^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & bd \\ d^{-1}c & d' \end{pmatrix} = \gamma',$$

where  $\gamma' = \begin{pmatrix} a & bd \\ d^{-1}c & d' \end{pmatrix}$ . Since  $c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}$  and  $d \mid \frac{N}{M}$ , we deduce that  $d^{-1}c \equiv 0 \pmod{M}$ . So  $\gamma' \in \Gamma_1(M)$  and therefore  $\alpha_d \Gamma_1(N) \alpha_d^{-1} \subseteq \Gamma_1(M)$ , or equivalently,  $\Gamma_1(N) \subseteq \alpha_d^{-1} \Gamma_1(M) \alpha_d$ . Writing  $\gamma = \alpha_d^{-1} \gamma' \alpha_d$ , we see that  $j(\gamma', \alpha_d z) = j(\gamma, z)$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} (f[\alpha_d]_k)(\gamma z) &= d^{k-1} f(d\gamma z) \\ &= d^{k-1} f(d\alpha_d^{-1} \gamma' \alpha_d z) \\ &= d^{k-1} f(\gamma' \alpha_d z) & d\alpha_d^{-1} z &= z \\ &= j(\gamma', \alpha_d z) d^{k-1} f(\alpha_d z) \\ &= j(\gamma, z) d^{k-1} f(dz) & j(\gamma', \alpha_d z) &= j(\gamma, z) \text{ and } \alpha_d z = dz \\ &= j(\gamma, z) (f[\alpha_d]_k)(z). \end{aligned}$$

This verifies  $f[\alpha_d]_k$  is modular and so  $f[\alpha_d]_k \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$ . □

We can now define oldforms and newforms. For each divisor  $d$  of  $N$ , set

$$i_d : \mathcal{S}_k \left( \Gamma_1 \left( \frac{N}{d} \right) \right) \times \mathcal{S}_k \left( \Gamma_1 \left( \frac{N}{d} \right) \right) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N)) \quad (f, g) \mapsto f + g[\alpha_d]_k.$$

This map is well-defined by Proposition 3.6.1. The subspace of **oldforms of level  $N$**  is

$$\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}} = \bigoplus_{p \mid N} \text{Im}(i_p),$$

and the subspace of **newforms of level  $N$**  is

$$\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}} = \left( \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}} \right)^\perp,$$

where the orthogonal complement is taken with respect to the Petersson inner product. The elements of such subspaces are called **oldforms** and **newforms** respectively. Both subspaces are invariant under the diamond and Hecke operators (see [DS05] for a proof):

**Proposition 3.6.2.** *The spaces  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}}$  and  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  are invariant under the diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$  and Hecke operators  $T_m$  for all  $m \geq 1$ .*

As a corollary, we deduce that these subspaces admit orthogonal bases of eigenforms:

**Corollary 3.6.1.**  *$\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}}$  and  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  admit orthonormal bases of eigenforms.*

*Proof.* This follows immediately from Theorem 3.5.1 and Proposition 3.6.2 □

Something quite amazing happens for the subspace in  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$ ; the condition  $(m, N) = 1$  for eigenforms in a base can be removed. Therefore the eigenforms are actually eigenfunctions for all of the diamond and Hecke operators. We require a preliminary result whose proof is quite involved but it is not beyond the scope of this text (see [DS05] for a proof):

**Lemma 3.6.1.** *If  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  with Fourier coefficients  $a_n(f)$  and such that  $a_n(f) = 0$  whenever  $(n, N) = 1$ , then*

$$f = \sum_{p|N} p^{k-1} f_p[\alpha_p],$$

for some  $f_p \in \mathcal{S}_k\left(\Gamma_1\left(\frac{N}{p}\right)\right)$ .

The important observation to make about Lemma 3.6.1 is that if  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  is such that its  $n$ -th Fourier coefficients vanish when  $n$  is relatively prime to the level, then  $f$  must be an oldform. With this lemma we can prove the main theorem about  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$ . The introduction of some language will be useful for the statement and its proof. We say that  $f$  is a **primitive Hecke eigenform** if it is a nonzero Hecke normalized Hecke eigenform in  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$ . We can now prove the main result about newforms:

**Theorem 3.6.1.** *Let  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  be an eigenform. Then the following hold:*

(i)  *$f$  is a Hecke eigenform.*

(ii) *If  $\tilde{f}$  satisfies the same conditions as  $f$  and has the same eigenvalues for the Hecke operators, then  $\tilde{f} = cf$  for some nonzero constant  $c$ .*

Moreover, the primitive Hecke eigenforms in  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  form an orthogonal basis with respect to the Petersson inner product and each such primitive Hecke eigenform  $f$  lies in an eigenspace  $\mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$ .

*Proof.* First suppose  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  is an eigenform with Fourier coefficients  $a_n(f)$ . For  $m \geq 1$  with  $(m, N) = 1$ , there exists  $\lambda_f(m), \mu_f(m) \in \mathbb{C}$  such that  $T_m f = \lambda_f(m)f$  and  $\langle m \rangle f = \mu_f(m)f$ . Actually,  $\langle m \rangle f = \mu_f(m)f$  holds for all  $m \geq 1$  because  $\langle m \rangle$  is the zero operator if  $(m, N) > 1$  and in this case we can take  $\mu_f(m) = 0$ . If we set  $\chi(n) = \mu_f(n)$ , then  $\chi$  is a Dirichlet character modulo  $N$ . This follows because multiplicativity of  $\langle m \rangle$  implies the same for  $\chi$  and  $\chi$  is  $N$ -periodic since  $\langle m \rangle$  is  $N$ -periodic ( $\langle m \rangle$  is defined by  $m$  taken modulo  $N$ ). But then  $\langle m \rangle f = \chi(m)f$  so that  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$ . As  $f$  is an eigenform, we also have  $a_m(f) = \lambda_f(m)a_1(f)$  provided  $(m, N) = 1$ . So if  $a_1(f) = 0$ , Lemma 3.6.1 implies  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}}$ . With this fact in hand, we can prove the statements.

(i) The claim is trivial if  $f$  is zero, so assume otherwise. If  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$ , then  $f \notin \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}}$  and so by what we have shown  $a_1(f) \neq 0$ . Therefore we may Hecke normalize  $f$  so that  $a_1(f) = 1$  and  $a_m(f) = \lambda_f(m)$ . Now set  $g_m = T_m f - \lambda_f(m)f$  for any  $m \geq 1$ . By Proposition 3.6.2,  $g_m \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$ . Moreover,  $g_m$  is an eigenform and its first Fourier coefficient is zero. But then  $g_m \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}}$  too and so  $g_m = 0$  because  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  and  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}}$  are orthogonal subspaces. This means  $T_m f = \lambda_f(m)f$  for any  $m \geq 1$ . Therefore  $f$  is a primitive Hecke eigenform and so is a Hecke eigenform before Hecke normalization.



- (ii) Suppose  $\tilde{f}$  satisfies the same conditions as  $f$  with the same eigenvalues for the Hecke operators. By (i),  $f$  and  $\tilde{f}$  are Hecke eigenforms. After Hecke normalization,  $f$  and  $\tilde{f}$  have the same Fourier coefficients and so are identical. It follows that before Hecke normalization  $f = c\tilde{f}$  for some nonzero constant  $c$ .

Note that our initial remarks together with (i) show that each primitive Hecke eigenform  $f$  belongs to some eigenspace  $\mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$ . By Corollary 3.6.1,  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  admits an orthogonal basis of eigenforms which by (i) are Hecke eigenforms. As  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  is finite dimensional (because  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  is), it follows that all of the primitive Hecke eigenforms form an orthogonal basis for  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  if we can show that they are linearly independent. So suppose, to the contrary, that we have a nontrivial linear relation

$$\sum_{1 \leq i \leq r} c_i f_i = 0,$$

for some primitive Hecke eigenforms  $f_i$ , nonzero constants  $c_i$ , and with  $r$  minimal. Note that  $r \geq 2$  for else we do not have a nontrivial linear relation. Letting  $m \geq 1$  applying the operator  $T_m - \lambda_{f_1}(m)$  to our nontrivial linear relation gives

$$\sum_{2 \leq i \leq r} c_i (\lambda_{f_i}(m) - \lambda_{f_1}(m)) f_i = 0,$$

which has one less term. Since  $r$  was chosen to be minimal, this implies  $\lambda_{f_i}(m) - \lambda_{f_1}(m) = 0$  for all  $i$ . But  $m$  was arbitrary, so  $f_i = f_1$  for all  $i$  by (ii). Hence  $r = 1$  which is a contradiction.  $\square$

Statement (i) in Theorem 3.6.1 implies that primitive Hecke eigenforms satisfy the Hecke relations for all  $n, m \geq 1$ . Statement (ii) can be interpreted as saying that a basis of newforms for  $\mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  contains one element per “eigenvalue” where we mean a set of eigenvalues one for each Hecke operator  $T_m$ . Actually, we can obtain a slightly better result called **multiplicity one** for holomorphic forms:

**Theorem 3.6.2 (Multiplicity one, holomorphic version).** *Let  $f$  and  $g$  be primitive Hecke eigenforms of the same eigenvalue and level. Denote the Hecke eigenvalues by  $\lambda_f(n)$  and  $\lambda_g(n)$  respectively. If  $\lambda_f(p) = \lambda_g(p)$  for all primes  $p$ , then  $f = g$ .*

*Proof.* The Hecke relations imply that  $\lambda_f(n) = \lambda_g(n)$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . By Theorem 3.6.1 (ii),  $f = g$ .  $\square$

With a stronger version of multiplicity one, one can prove that the Fourier coefficients of primitive Hecke eigenforms are real. This result takes a lot of work to show (see [DS05] for a note and appropriate references) and while we will not need it in the following, we state it for convenience:

**Theorem 3.6.3.** *The Fourier coefficients of primitive Hecke eigenforms are real.*

We now require one last linear operator. Let

$$W_N = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ N & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

and note that  $\det(W_N) = N$ . We define the **Atkin–Lehner involution**  $\omega_N : \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(\omega_N f)(z) = (\sqrt{N}z)^{-k} f(W_N z) = (\sqrt{N}z)^{-k} f\left(-\frac{1}{Nz}\right).$$

To see that  $\omega_N$  is well-defined, first note that holomorphy and the growth condition are obvious. For modularity, note that for  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_1(N)$ , we have

$$W_N \gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ N & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -c & -d \\ Na & Nb \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} d & -N^{-1}c \\ -Nb & a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ N & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \gamma' W_N,$$

where  $\gamma' = \begin{pmatrix} d & -N^{-1}c \\ -Nb & a \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_1(N)$ . It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} (\omega_N f)(\gamma z) &= (\sqrt{N} \gamma z)^{-k} f(W_N \gamma z) \\ &= (\sqrt{N} \gamma z)^{-k} f(\gamma' W_N z) \\ &= \left( \sqrt{N} \frac{az + b}{cz + d} \right)^{-k} \left( \frac{b}{z} + a \right)^k f\left(-\frac{1}{Nz}\right) \\ &= \left( \sqrt{N} \frac{az + b}{cz + d} \right)^{-k} \left( \frac{z}{az + b} \right)^{-k} f\left(-\frac{1}{Nz}\right) \\ &= (cz + d)^k (\sqrt{N} z)^{-k} f\left(-\frac{1}{Nz}\right) \\ &= j(\gamma, z)^k (\omega_N f)(z). \end{aligned}$$

This verifies modularity for  $\omega_N f$ . Lastly, it is clear that  $\omega_N f$  is a cusp form because  $f$  is. Altogether, this shows that  $\omega_N f$  is well-defined. It is also an involution because  $\omega_N^2 f = f$ . The important fact we need is how  $\omega_N$  acts on  $\mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$ . To state the result, for  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$  define

$$\overline{f}(z) = \overline{f(-z)}.$$

Then we have the following (see [CS17] for a proof):

**Proposition 3.6.3.** *If  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$  is a primitive Hecke eigenform, then*

$$\omega_N f = \omega_N(f) \overline{f},$$

where  $\overline{f} \in \mathcal{S}_k(N, \overline{\chi})$  is a primitive Hecke eigenform and  $\omega_N(f) \in \mathbb{C}$  is nonzero with  $|\omega_N(f)| = 1$ .

## 3.7 The Ramanujan-Petersson Conjecture

We will now discuss a famous conjecture about the size of the Hecke eigenvalues of primitive Hecke eigenforms. Historically the conjecture was born from conjectures made about the **modular discriminant**  $\Delta$  given by

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{1728} (E_4^3 - E_6^2),$$

which is a weight 12 primitive Hecke eigenform on  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) \backslash \mathbb{H}$  (see [DS05]). Therefore it is natural to begin our discussion here. It can be shown that the Fourier series of the modular discriminant is

$$\Delta(z) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \tau(n) e^{2\pi i n z},$$

where the  $\tau(n)$  are integers with  $\tau(1) = 1$  and  $\tau(2) = -24$  (see [Apo76] for a proof). The function  $\tau : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  is called **Ramanujan's  $\tau$  function**. Ramanujan himself studied this function in his 1916 paper (see [Ram16]), and computed  $\tau(n)$  for  $1 \leq n \leq 30$ . From these computations he conjectured the following three properties  $\tau$  should satisfy:

- (i) If  $(n, m) = 1$ , then  $\tau(nm) = \tau(n)\tau(m)$ .
- (ii)  $\tau(p^n) = \tau(p^{n-1})\tau(p) - p^{11}\tau(p^{n-2})$  for all prime  $p$ .
- (iii)  $|\tau(p)| \leq 2p^{\frac{11}{2}}$  for all prime  $p$ .

Note that (i) and (ii) are strikingly similar to the properties satisfied by the Hecke operators. In fact, (i) and (ii) are special cases of the properties of Hecke operators since  $\Delta$  is a primitive Hecke eigenform on  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z}) \backslash \mathbb{H}$  (note that  $\Gamma_1(1) = \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ ) with eigenvalue  $\tau(n)$  for the  $n$ -th Hecke operator. This ends our commentary on properties (i) and (ii). Property (iii) turned out to be drastically more difficult to prove and is known as the classical **Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture**. To state the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture for holomorphic forms, suppose  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$  is a primitive Hecke eigenform with Hecke eigenvalues  $\lambda_f(n)$ . For each prime  $p$ , consider the polynomial

$$1 - \lambda_f(p)p^{-\frac{k-1}{2}}p^{-s} + \chi(p)p^{-2s}.$$

We call this the  $p$ -th **Hecke polynomial** of  $f$ . Let  $\alpha_1(p)$  and  $\alpha_2(p)$  denote the roots. From this quadratic, we have

$$\alpha_1(p) + \alpha_2(p) = \lambda_f(p)p^{-\frac{k-1}{2}} \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha_1(p)\alpha_2(p) = \chi(p).$$

The more general **Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture** for holomorphic forms is following statement:

**Theorem 3.7.1 (Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture, holomorphic version).** *Suppose  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$  is a primitive Hecke eigenform with Hecke eigenvalues  $\lambda_f(n)$ . Let  $\alpha_1(p)$  and  $\alpha_2(p)$  be the roots of the  $p$ -th Hecke polynomial. Then for all primes  $p$ ,*

$$|\lambda_f(p)| \leq 2p^{\frac{k-1}{2}}.$$

Moreover, if  $p \nmid N$ , then

$$|\alpha_1(p)| = |\alpha_2(p)| = 1.$$

In the 1970's Deligne proved the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture (see [Del71] and [Del74] for the full proof). The argument is significantly beyond the scope of this text, and in actuality follows from Deligne's work on the Weil conjectures (except in the case  $k = 1$  which requires a modified argument). This requires understanding classical algebraic topology and  $\ell$ -adic cohomology in addition to the basic analytic number theory. As such, the proof of the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture has been one of the biggest advances in analytic number theory in recent decades. Nevertheless, it is not difficult to get close to the Ramanujan conjecture without much effort. Indeed, suppose  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$  be a primitive Hecke eigenform. Then  $\left|f(z)\mathrm{Im}(z)^{\frac{k}{2}}\right|$  is  $\Gamma_0(N)$ -invariant because  $\mathrm{Im}(\gamma z)^{\frac{k}{2}} = \frac{\mathrm{Im}(z)^{\frac{k}{2}}}{|j(\gamma, z)|^k}$  and  $|\chi(\gamma)| = 1$ . Moreover, it is bounded on  $\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma_0(N)}$  because  $f$  is a cusp form. Then  $\Gamma_0(N)$ -invariance implies  $\left|f(z)\mathrm{Im}(z)^{\frac{k}{2}}\right|$  is bounded on  $\mathbb{H}$ . From the definition of the Fourier coefficients, it follows that

$$\lambda_f(n)y^{\frac{k}{2}} = \int_0^1 f(x+iy)y^{\frac{k}{2}}e^{-2\pi in(x+iy)}dx \leq e^{2\pi ny} \int_0^1 \left|f(x+iy)y^{\frac{k}{2}}\right|dx \ll e^{2\pi ny}.$$

Setting  $y = \frac{1}{n}$  implies

$$\lambda_f(n) \ll n^{\frac{k}{2}}.$$

This bound is known as the **Hecke bound** for holomorphic forms. However, the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture gives the bound  $\lambda_f(n) \ll \sigma_0(n)n^{\frac{k-1}{2}} \ll n^{\frac{k-1}{2}+\varepsilon}$ .

### 3.8 Twists of Holomorphic Forms

We can also twist of holomorphic forms by Dirichlet characters. Let  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi)$  with Fourier series

$$f(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n(f) e^{2\pi i n z},$$

and let  $\psi$  be a Dirichlet character modulo  $M$ . We define the **twisted holomorphic form**  $f \otimes \psi$  of  $f$  twisted by  $\psi$  by the Fourier series

$$(f \otimes \psi)(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n(f) \psi(n) e^{2\pi i n z}.$$

In order for  $f \otimes \psi$  to be well-defined, we need to prove that it is a holomorphic form. The following proposition proves this and more when  $\psi$  is primitive:

**Proposition 3.8.1.** *Suppose  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi)$  and  $\psi$  is a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q$ . Then  $f \otimes \psi \in \mathcal{M}_k(Nq^2, \chi\psi^2)$ . Moreover, if  $f$  is a cusp form then so is  $f \otimes \psi$ .*

*Proof.* By Corollary 1.4.1, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} (f \otimes \psi)(z) &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n(f) \psi(n) e^{2\pi i n z} \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n(f) \left( \frac{1}{\tau(\bar{\psi})} \sum_{r \pmod{q}} \bar{\psi}(r) e^{\frac{2\pi i r n}{q}} \right) e^{2\pi i n z} \\ &= \frac{1}{\tau(\bar{\psi})} \sum_{r \pmod{q}} \bar{\psi}(r) \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n(f) e^{2\pi i n (z + \frac{r}{q})} \\ &= \frac{1}{\tau(\bar{\psi})} \sum_{r \pmod{q}} \bar{\psi}(r) f\left(z + \frac{r}{q}\right). \end{aligned}$$

From this last expression, holomorphy is immediate since the sum is finite. For modularity, let  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(Nq^2)$  and set  $\gamma_r = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{r}{q} \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  for every  $r$  modulo  $q$ . Then for  $r$  and  $r'$  modulo  $q$ , we compute

$$\gamma_r \gamma_{r'}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{r}{q} \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\frac{r'}{q} \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a + \frac{cr}{q} & b - \frac{ar' - dr}{q} - \frac{crr'}{q^2} \\ c & d - \frac{cr'}{q} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Since  $c \equiv 0 \pmod{Nq^2}$ , if we choose  $r'$  (for each  $r$ ) such that  $ar' \equiv dr \pmod{q}$ , then  $\gamma_r \gamma_{r'}^{-1} \in \Gamma_0(N)$ . Such a choice exists and is unique by Bézout's identity because  $a$  and  $d$  are relatively prime to  $q$  as  $ad \equiv 1 \pmod{Nq^2}$ . Making this choice and setting  $\eta_r = \gamma_r \gamma_{r'}^{-1}$ , we compute

$$f\left(\gamma z + \frac{r}{q}\right) = f(\gamma_r \gamma z) = f(\eta_r \gamma_{r'} z) = \chi(\eta_r) j(\eta_r, \gamma_{r'} z)^k f(\gamma_{r'} z) = \chi(\eta_r) j(\eta_r, \gamma_{r'} z)^k f\left(z + \frac{r'}{q}\right).$$

Moreover,

$$\chi(\eta_r) j(\eta_r, \gamma_{r'} z) = \chi\left(d - \frac{cr'}{q}\right) \left(c\gamma_{r'} z + d - \frac{cr'}{q}\right) = \chi(d)(cz + d) = \chi(\gamma) j(\gamma, z).$$

Together these two computations imply

$$f\left(\gamma z + \frac{r}{q}\right) = \chi(\gamma)j(\gamma, z)^k f\left(z + \frac{r'}{q}\right).$$

Now, as  $ar' \equiv dr \pmod{q}$  and  $ad \equiv 1 \pmod{q}$ , we have

$$\bar{\psi}(r) = \bar{\psi}(ad\bar{r}') = \psi^2(d)\bar{\psi}(r') = \psi^2(\gamma)\bar{\psi}(r').$$

Putting everything together,

$$\begin{aligned} (f \otimes \psi)(\gamma z) &= \frac{1}{\tau(\bar{\psi})} \sum_{r \pmod{q}} \bar{\psi}(r) f\left(\gamma z + \frac{r}{q}\right) \\ &= \chi(\gamma)j(\gamma, z)^k \frac{1}{\tau(\bar{\psi})} \sum_{r \pmod{q}} \bar{\psi}(r) f\left(z + \frac{r'}{q}\right) \\ &= \chi\psi^2(\gamma)j(\gamma, z)^k \frac{1}{\tau(\bar{\psi})} \sum_{r \pmod{q}} \bar{\psi}(r') f\left(z + \frac{r'}{q}\right) \\ &= \chi\psi^2(\gamma)j(\gamma, z)^k (f \otimes \psi)(z). \end{aligned}$$

from which the modularity of  $f \otimes \psi$  follows. For the growth condition, let  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  be a scaling matrix for the cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$  of  $\Gamma_0(Nq^2)$ . As  $\gamma_r \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ ,  $\gamma_r \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  takes  $\infty$  to an element of  $\mathbb{Q} \cup \{\infty\}$ . Thus  $\gamma_r \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} \infty = \mathfrak{b}$  for some cusp  $\mathfrak{b}$  of  $\Gamma_0(N) \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . Then from

$$(f \otimes \psi)(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z) = \frac{1}{\tau(\bar{\psi})} \sum_{r \pmod{q}} \bar{\psi}(r) f(\gamma_r \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z),$$

the growth condition for  $f \otimes \psi$  is satisfied. It is also clear that  $f \otimes \psi$  is a cusp form if  $f$  is. This proves the claim.  $\square$

The generalization of Proposition 3.8.1 to all characters is slightly more involved. To this end, define operators  $U_p$  and  $V_p$  on  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  to be the linear operators given by

$$(U_p f)(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_{np}(f) e^{2\pi i n z},$$

and

$$(V_p f)(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n(f) e^{2\pi i n p z},$$

if  $f$  has Fourier series

$$f(z) = \sum_{n \geq 0} a_n(f) e^{2\pi i n z}.$$

We will show that both  $U_p$  and  $V_p$  map  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  into  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(Np))$  and more:

**Lemma 3.8.1.** *For any prime  $p$ ,  $U_p$  and  $V_p$  map  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$  into  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(Np))$ . In particular,  $U_p$  and  $V_p$  map  $\mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi)$  into  $\mathcal{M}_k(Np, \chi\chi_{p,0})$ . Moreover,  $U_p$  and  $V_p$  preserve the subspace of cusp forms.*

*Proof.* In light of Proposition 3.5.1, the first statement follows from the second. As  $N \mid Np$ ,  $\Gamma_1(Np) \leq \Gamma_1(N)$  so that  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(Np))$  if  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$ . Now suppose  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi)$ . Similarly,  $N \mid Np$  implies  $\Gamma_0(Np) \leq \Gamma_0(N)$  so that  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(Np, \chi\chi_{p,0})$  for the modulus  $Np$  character  $\chi\chi_{p,0}$ . Therefore we may assume  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(Np, \chi\chi_{p,0})$ . Now consider  $U_p$ . As  $p \mid Np$ , Equation (3.3) implies  $U_p = T_p$  for the  $p$ -th Hecke operator on  $\mathcal{M}_k(\Gamma_1(Np))$  and the claim follows from the definition of the Hecke operators and Proposition 3.5.4. Now consider  $V_p$ . We have

$$(V_p f)(z) = f(pz),$$

and the claim follows by regarding  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(Np, \chi\chi_{p,0})$  and that  $\begin{pmatrix} p & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix}$  lies in the center of  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ .  $\square$

We can now generalize Proposition 3.8.1 to all characters:

**Proposition 3.8.2.** *Suppose  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(N, \chi)$  and  $\psi$  is a Dirichlet character modulo  $M$ . Then  $f \otimes \psi \in \mathcal{M}_k(NM^2, \chi\psi^2)$ . Moreover, if  $f$  is a cusp form then so is  $f \otimes \psi$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\tilde{\psi}$  be the primitive character of conductor  $q$  inducing  $\psi$ . Then  $\psi = \tilde{\psi}\psi_{\frac{M}{q},0}$ . As  $\psi_{\frac{M}{q},0} = \prod_{p \mid \frac{M}{q}} \psi_{p,0}$ , it suffices to prove the claim when  $\psi$  is primitive and when  $\psi = \psi_{p,0}$ . The primitive case follows from Proposition 3.8.1. So suppose  $\psi = \psi_{p,0}$ . Then

$$f \otimes \psi_{p,0} = f - V_p U_p f.$$

Now by Lemma 3.8.1,  $V_p U_p f \in \mathcal{M}_k(Np^2, \chi\psi_{p,0}^2)$  and is a cusp form if  $f$  is (where we have written  $\psi_{p,0}^2$  in place of  $\chi_{p,0}$ ). Since we also have  $f \in \mathcal{M}_k(Np^2, \chi\psi_{p,0}^2)$  (because  $N \mid Np^2$  so that  $\Gamma_1(Np^2) \leq \Gamma_1(N)$  and  $\Gamma_0(Np^2) \leq \Gamma_0(N)$  and again writing  $\psi_{p,0}^2$  in place of  $\chi_{p,0}$ ), it follows that  $f \otimes \psi_{p,0} \in \mathcal{M}_k(Np^2, \chi\psi_{p,0}^2)$  and is a cusp form if  $f$  is. This proves the claim in the case  $\psi = \psi_{p,0}$  and thus completes the proof.  $\square$

# Chapter 4

## The Theory of Maass Forms

Maass forms are the non-holomorphic analog to holomorphic forms. They are real-analytic, eigenfunctions for a differential operator, invariant with respect to a subgroup of  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ , and satisfy a growth condition. We introduce both Maass forms and their general theory.

### 4.1 Maass Forms

Define  $\varepsilon(\gamma, z)$  by

$$\varepsilon(\gamma, z) = \left( \frac{cz + d}{|cz + d|} \right),$$

for all  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$  and  $z \in \mathbb{H}$ . Note that  $|\varepsilon(\gamma, z)| = 1$ . Moreover, we have the relation

$$\varepsilon(\gamma, z) = \left( \frac{j(\gamma, z)}{|j(\gamma, z)|} \right).$$

As a consequence, the cocycle condition for  $j(\gamma, z)$  implies

$$\varepsilon(\gamma'\gamma, z) = \varepsilon(\gamma', \gamma z)\varepsilon(\gamma, z),$$

and this is called the **cocycle condition** for  $\varepsilon(\gamma, z)$ . For any  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$  and any  $\gamma \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$  we define the **slash operator**  $|_{\varepsilon, k} : C(\mathbb{H}) \rightarrow C(\mathbb{H})$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(f|_{\varepsilon, k}\gamma)(z) = \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^{-k} f(\gamma z).$$

Any operator that commutes with the slash operators  $|_{\varepsilon, k}\gamma$  for every  $\gamma \in \mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  is said to be **invariant**. We define differential operators  $R_k : C^\infty(\mathbb{H}) \rightarrow C^\infty(\mathbb{H})$  and  $L_k : C^\infty(\mathbb{H}) \rightarrow C^\infty(\mathbb{H})$  to be the linear operators given by

$$R_k = \frac{k}{2} + y \left( i \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \right) \quad \text{and} \quad L_k = \frac{k}{2} + y \left( i \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \right).$$

We call these operators the **Maass differential operators**. In particular,  $R_k$  is the **Maass raising operator** and  $L_k$  is the **Mass lowering operator**. The **Laplace operator**  $\Delta_k : C^\infty(\mathbb{H}) \rightarrow C^\infty(\mathbb{H})$  is the linear operator given by

$$\Delta_k = -y^2 \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} \right) + iky \frac{\partial}{\partial x}.$$

When  $k = 0$ , we will write  $\Delta_0 = \Delta$  which is the usual Laplace operator on  $\mathbb{H}$ . Expanding the products  $R_{k-2}L_k$  and  $L_{k+2}R_k$  and invoking the Cauchy-Riemann equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y} = i \frac{\partial}{\partial x},$$

we arrive at the identities

$$\Delta_k = -R_{k-2}L_k + \frac{k}{2} \left(1 - \frac{k}{2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta_k = -L_{k+2}R_k - \frac{k}{2} \left(1 - \frac{k}{2}\right).$$

The Mass differential operators and the Laplace operator satisfy important relations (see [Bum97] for a proof):

**Proposition 4.1.1.** *The Laplace operator  $\Delta_k$  is invariant. That is,*

$$\Delta_k(f|_{\varepsilon,k}\gamma) = \Delta_k(f)|_{\varepsilon,k}\gamma,$$

for all  $f \in C^\infty(\mathbb{H})$  and  $\gamma \in \text{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ . Moreover, the Maass differential operators  $R_k$  and  $L_k$  satisfy

$$(R_k f)|_{\varepsilon,k+2}\gamma = R_k(f|_{\varepsilon,k}\gamma) \quad \text{and} \quad (R_k f)|_{\varepsilon,k-2}\gamma = L_k(f|_{\varepsilon,k}\gamma).$$

Let  $\Gamma$  be a congruence subgroup of level  $N$  that is reduced at infinity and let  $\chi$  be a Dirichlet character of conductor  $q \mid N$ . Set  $\chi(\gamma) = \chi(d)$  for all  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma$ . We say that a function  $f : \mathbb{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a **Maass form** on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  of **weight**  $k$ , **eigenvalue**  $\lambda$ , **level**  $N$ , and **character**  $\chi$ , if the following properties are satisfied:

- (i)  $f$  is smooth on  $\mathbb{H}$ .
- (ii)  $(f|_{\varepsilon,k}\gamma)(z) = \chi(\gamma)f(z)$  for all  $\gamma \in \Gamma$ .
- (iii)  $f$  is an eigenfunction for  $\Delta_k$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda$ .
- (iv)  $f(\alpha z) = o(e^{2\pi \text{Im}(z)})$  as  $\text{Im}(z) \rightarrow \infty$  for all  $\alpha \in \text{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ .

We say  $f$  is a **(Maass) cusp form** if the additional property is satisfied:

- (v) For all cusps  $\mathfrak{a}$ ,

$$\int_0^1 f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}(x + iy)) dx = 0.$$

Property (ii) is called the **automorphy condition** and we say that  $f$  is **automorphic**. In particular,  $f$  is a function on  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$ . The automorphy condition can equivalently be expressed as

$$f(\gamma z) = \chi(\gamma)\varepsilon(\gamma, z)^k f(z).$$

In property (iii), we will often let  $s \in \mathbb{C}$  be such that  $\lambda = s(1 - s)$ . Accordingly, we will write  $\lambda = \lambda(s)$  when we want to make this distinction clear. Property (iv) is called the **growth condition** for  $f$  and we say  $f$  is of **moderate growth at the cusps**. Clearly we only need to verify the growth condition on a set of scaling matrices for the cups. It turns out that Property (i) is implied by (iii). This is because  $\Delta_k$  is an elliptic operator and any eigenfunction of an elliptic operator is automatically real-analytic and hence smooth (see [Eva22] for a proof in the weight zero case and [CS17] for notes on the general case).



**Remark 4.1.1.** *Holomorphic forms embed into Maass forms. If  $f(z)$  is a weight  $k$  holomorphic form on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ , then  $F(z) = \text{Im}(z)^{\frac{k}{2}} f(z)$  is a weight  $k$  Maass form on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . This is because  $\text{Im}(\gamma z) = \frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|\gamma(z)|^2}$  and  $F(z)$  clearly has polynomial growth in  $\text{Im}(z)$ . Moreover, as  $f(z)$  is holomorphic, it satisfies the Cauchy-Riemann equations so that*

$$L_k(F(z)) = \left( \frac{k}{2} + y \left( i \frac{\partial}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \right) \right) (F(z)) = \frac{k}{2} F(z) - \frac{k}{2} F(z) = 0.$$

Therefore

$$\Delta_k(F(z)) = \left( -R_{k-2} L_k + \frac{k}{2} \left( 1 - \frac{k}{2} \right) \right) (F(z)) = \frac{k}{2} \left( 1 - \frac{k}{2} \right) F(z).$$

This means  $F(z)$  is an eigenfunction for  $\Delta_k$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda\left(\frac{k}{2}\right)$ .

Maass forms also admit Fourier series. Indeed, automorphy implies

$$f(z+1) = f\left(\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} z\right) = f(z),$$

so that  $f$  is 1-periodic. Let  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  be a scaling matrix for the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp. As  $\Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} = \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} \Gamma_{\infty} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}$ , or equivalently  $\Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} = \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} \Gamma_{\infty}$ , the function  $f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z)$  is independent of the scaling matrix  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$ . Moreover, by the same reasoning

$$f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}(z+1)) = f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z).$$

Thus  $f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z)$  is 1-periodic. Then  $f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z)$  has a Fourier series

$$f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, y) e^{2\pi i n x}.$$

This Fourier series is independent of the scaling matrix because  $f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z)$  is. Moreover, the sum is over all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  since  $f$  may be unbounded as  $\text{Im}(z) \rightarrow \infty$ . The Fourier coefficients  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, y)$  are mostly determined by  $\Delta_k$ . To see this, since  $f$  is smooth we may differentiate the Fourier series of  $f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z)$  termwise. The fact that  $f$  is an eigenfunction for  $\Delta_k$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda$  gives the ODE

$$(4\pi^2 n^2 y^2 - 2\pi n k y) a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, y) - y^2 a_{\mathfrak{a}, yy}(n, y) = \lambda a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, y).$$

If  $n \neq 0$ , this is a Whittaker equation. To see this, first put the ODE in homogeneous form

$$y^2 a_{\mathfrak{a}, yy}(n, y) - (4\pi^2 n^2 y^2 - 2\pi n k y - \lambda) a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, y) = 0.$$

Now make the change of variables  $y \rightarrow \frac{y}{4\pi|n|}$  to get

$$y^2 a_{\mathfrak{a}, yy}(n, 4\pi|n|y) - \left( \frac{y^2}{4} - \text{sgn}(n) \frac{k}{2} y - \lambda \right) a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, 4\pi|n|y) = 0,$$

where  $\text{sgn}(n) = \pm 1$  if  $n$  is positive or negative respectively. Diving by  $y^2$  results in

$$a_{\mathfrak{a}, yy}(n, 4\pi|n|y) + \left( \frac{1}{4} - \frac{\text{sgn}(n) \frac{k}{2}}{y} - \frac{\lambda}{y^2} \right) a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, 4\pi|n|y) = 0.$$

Upon writing  $\lambda = s(1 - s)$ , we see that  $\lambda = \frac{1}{4} - (s - \frac{1}{2})^2$ , and the above equation becomes

$$a_{\mathfrak{a},yy}(n, 4\pi|n|y) + \left( \frac{1}{4} - \frac{\operatorname{sgn}(n)\frac{k}{2}}{y} - \frac{\frac{1}{4} - (s - \frac{1}{2})^2}{y^2} \right) a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, 4\pi|n|y) = 0.$$

This is the Whittaker equation (see Appendix B.8). Since  $f$  has moderate growth at the cusps, the general solution is the Whittaker function  $W_{\operatorname{sgn}(n)\frac{k}{2}, s-\frac{1}{2}}(4\pi|n|y)$ . Therefore

$$a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n, y) = a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n) W_{\operatorname{sgn}(n)\frac{k}{2}, s-\frac{1}{2}}(4\pi|n|y),$$

for some coefficients  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n)$  and  $b_{\mathfrak{a}}(n)$  possibly depending upon  $s$ . If  $n = 0$ , then the differential equation is a second order linear ODE which in is

$$-y^2 a_{\mathfrak{a},yy}(0, y) = \lambda a_{\mathfrak{a}}(0, y).$$

This is a Cauchy-Euler equation, and since  $s$  and  $1 - s$  are the two roots of  $z^2 - z + \lambda$ , the general solution is

$$a_{\mathfrak{a}}(0, y) = a_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)y^s + b_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)y^{1-s},$$

for some coefficients  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)$  and  $b_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)$  possibly depending upon  $s$ . The coefficients  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n)$ ,  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)$ , and  $b_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)$  are the only part of the Fourier series that actually depend on the implicit congruence subgroup  $\Gamma$ . Using these coefficients,  $f$  admits a **Fourier series at the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp**:

$$f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z) = a_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)y^s + b_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)y^{1-s} + \sum_{n \neq 0} a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n) W_{\operatorname{sgn}(n)\frac{k}{2}, s-\frac{1}{2}}(4\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x}.$$

For ease of notation, if it is clear what cusp we are working at we will mention the Fourier series and its coefficients without mentioning the cusp. Moreover, property (v) implies that  $f$  is a cusp form if and only if  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(0) = 0$  and  $b_{\mathfrak{a}}(0) = 0$  for every cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$ . We can simplify this Fourier series in the weight zero case. Indeed, Theorem B.8.1 implies that the Fourier series at the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp takes the form

$$f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z) = a_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)y^s + b_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)y^{1-s} + \sum_{n \neq 0} a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n) \sqrt{y} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x},$$

for some different Fourier coefficients  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n)$ . We can simplify the Fourier series further. We say  $f$  is **even** if  $f(-\bar{z}) = f(z)$  and is **odd** if  $f(-\bar{z}) = -f(z)$ . Since  $-\bar{z} = -x + iy$ , this means that  $f$  is even or odd with respect to  $\operatorname{Re}(z) = x$ . Note that if  $f$  is odd it must be a cusp form. As  $e^{2\pi i n x} = \cos(nx) + i \sin(nx)$ , if  $f$  has eigenvalue  $\lambda = s(1 - s)$ , then the Fourier series of  $f$  at the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp takes the form

$$f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z) = a_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)y^s + b_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)y^{1-s} + \sum_{n \neq 0} a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n) \sqrt{y} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y) \cos\left(\frac{2\pi n x}{t}\right),$$

if  $f$  is even, and

$$f(z) = \sum_{n \neq 0} a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n) i \sqrt{y} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y) \sin\left(\frac{2\pi n x}{t}\right),$$

if  $f$  is odd. Therefore, in even case  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(-n) = a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n)$  and in the odd case  $-a_{\mathfrak{a}}(-n) = a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n)$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . Either way, we can compactly write the Fourier series of  $f$  at the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp as

$$f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z) = a_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)y^s + b_{\mathfrak{a}}(0)y^{1-s} + \sum_{n \geq 1} a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n) \sqrt{y} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi n y) \operatorname{SC}\left(\frac{2\pi n x}{t}\right),$$

for some different Fourier coefficients  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n)$  and where  $\text{SC}(x) = \cos(x)$  if  $f$  is even and  $\text{SC}(x) = \sin(x)$  if  $f$  is odd. As we have said, if  $f$  is odd, or more generally a cusp form, then necessarily  $a_{\mathfrak{a}}(0) = 0$  and  $b_{\mathfrak{a}}(0) = 0$ . From now on, if we are discussing an even or odd Maass form we will always mean the corresponding Fourier series (and so the implicit weight is zero). For cusp forms, we can derive an important growth condition. Indeed, the Fourier series of  $f$  at the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp is given by

$$f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z) = \sum_{n \neq 0} a_{\mathfrak{a}}(n) W_{\text{sgn}(n)\frac{k}{2}, s-\frac{1}{2}}(4\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x}.$$

Using Lemma B.8.1, we get the weaker asymptotic  $W_{\text{sgn}(n)\frac{k}{2}, s-\frac{1}{2}}(4\pi|n|y) = O(y^{\frac{k}{2}} e^{-2\pi|n|y})$  which implies

$$f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}z) = O\left(y^{\frac{k}{2}} \sum_{n \neq 0} e^{-2\pi|n|y}\right) = O\left(y^{\frac{k}{2}} \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} e^{-2\pi|n|y}\right) = O\left(\frac{2y^{\frac{k}{2}}}{1 - e^{-2\pi y}}\right) = O(y^{\frac{k}{2}} e^{-2\pi y}).$$

Accordingly, we say that  $f$  exhibits **moderate decay at the cusps**. In particular,  $f$  is bounded on  $\mathbb{H}$ .

## 4.2 Eisenstein & Poincaré Series

Throughout, let  $\Gamma$  be a congruence subgroup of level  $N$  and let  $\chi$  be a Dirichlet character with conductor  $q \mid N$ . We will first introduce a class of Maass forms naturally defined on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . They are actually functions defined on a large space  $\mathbb{H} \times \mathbb{C}$  and hence are functions of two variables namely  $z$  and  $s$ . These functions are Maass forms for fixed  $s$ . For every cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$  of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ , there is an associated Maass form. So let  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  be a scaling matrix for the cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$ . The **(Maass) Eisenstein series**  $E_{k, \chi, \mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  of weight  $k$  and character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  at the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp and is defined as

$$E_{k, \chi, \mathfrak{a}}(z, s) = \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma) \varepsilon(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma, z)^{-k} \text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z)^s.$$

We first show that  $E_{k, \chi, \mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  is well-defined. To see that  $\bar{\chi}(\gamma)$  is independent of  $\gamma$ , recall  $\Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} = \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} \Gamma_{\infty} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}$  and let  $\gamma' = \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} \eta_{\infty} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma$  with  $\eta_{\infty} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & n \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_{\infty}$ . Then

$$\chi(\gamma') = \chi(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} \eta_{\infty} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma) = \chi(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}) \chi(\eta_{\infty}) \chi(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}})^{-1} \chi(\gamma) = \chi(\gamma).$$

This verifies that  $\bar{\chi}(\gamma)$  is independent of the representative  $\gamma$ . Moreover, we can write  $\gamma' = \eta_{\mathfrak{a}} \gamma$  where  $\eta_{\mathfrak{a}} = \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} \eta_{\infty} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}$  and so  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma' = (\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}')^{-1} \gamma$  for some other scaling matrix  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}' = \eta_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$ . Therefore we are left to verify that  $E_{k, \chi, \mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  is independent of the scaling matrix  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$ . Writing  $(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}')^{-1} = \eta_{\infty} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}$  and noting that  $\eta_{\infty}$  does not affect the imaginary part as it acts by translation, we conclude  $\text{Im}((\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}')^{-1} \gamma z) = \text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z)$ . Therefore  $\text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z)$  is independent of the scaling matrix used. Similarly, the cocycle relation implies

$$\varepsilon((\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}')^{-1} \gamma, z) = \varepsilon(\eta_{\infty} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma, z) = \varepsilon(\eta_{\infty}, \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z) \varepsilon(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma, z) = \varepsilon(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma, z),$$

where the last equality follows because  $\varepsilon(\eta_{\infty}, \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z) = 1$  (as  $j(\eta_{\infty}, \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z) = 1$ ). Thus  $\varepsilon(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma, z)$  is also independent of the scaling matrix used. Altogether, this shows  $E_{k, \chi, \mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  is independent of the scaling matrix used and thus is well-defined. We now show that this series is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $z \in \mathbb{H}$  and  $\text{Re}(s) > 1$ . To see this, applying the Bruhat decomposition to  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \backslash \Gamma = \Gamma_{\infty} \backslash \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \Gamma$  yields

$$E_{k, \chi, \mathfrak{a}}(z, s) \ll \sum_{(c, d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{\mathbf{0}\}} \frac{\text{Im}(z)^{\sigma}}{|cz + d|^{2\sigma}}.$$

The latter series is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1$  and  $z \in \mathbb{H}$  by Proposition B.9.1. Therefore  $E_{k,\chi,a}(z, s)$  does too. To see that it is automorphic on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ , let  $\gamma \in \Gamma$ . Then we make a short computation:

$$\begin{aligned}
E_{k,\chi,a}(\gamma z, s) &= \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_a \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma') \varepsilon(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma', \gamma z)^{-k} \operatorname{Im}(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' \gamma z)^s \\
&= \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_a \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma') \left( \frac{\varepsilon(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' \gamma, z)}{\varepsilon(\gamma, z)} \right)^{-k} \operatorname{Im}(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' \gamma z)^s && \text{cocycle condition} \\
&= \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^k \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_a \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma') \varepsilon(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' \gamma, z)^{-k} \operatorname{Im}(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' \gamma z)^s \\
&= \chi(\gamma) \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^k \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_a \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma') \bar{\chi}(\gamma) \varepsilon(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' \gamma, z)^{-k} \operatorname{Im}(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' \gamma z)^s \\
&= \chi(\gamma) \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^k \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_a \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma' \gamma) \varepsilon(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' \gamma, z)^{-k} \operatorname{Im}(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' \gamma z)^s \\
&= \chi(\gamma) \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^k \sum_{\gamma' \in \Gamma_a \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma') \varepsilon(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma', z)^{-k} \operatorname{Im}(\sigma_a^{-1} \gamma' z)^s && \gamma' \rightarrow \gamma' \gamma^{-1} \text{ bijection on } \Gamma \\
&= \chi(\gamma) \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^k E_{k,\chi,a}(z, s).
\end{aligned}$$

Now we show that it is an eigenfunction for  $\Delta_k$ . Observe that

$$\Delta_k(y^s) = \left( -y^2 \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} \right) + iky \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \right) (y^s) = \lambda(s) y^s.$$

Therefore  $\operatorname{Im}(z)^s = y^s$  is an eigenfunction for  $\Delta_k$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda(s)$ . Since  $\Delta_k$  is invariant,

$$\Delta_k((\operatorname{Im}(\cdot)^s|_{\varepsilon,k}\gamma)(z)) = ((\Delta_k \operatorname{Im}(\cdot)^s)|_{\varepsilon,k}\gamma)(z) = \lambda(s)(\operatorname{Im}(\cdot)^s|_{\varepsilon,k}\gamma)(z),$$

and so  $(\operatorname{Im}(\cdot)^s|_{\varepsilon,k}\gamma)(z) = \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^{-k} \operatorname{Im}(\gamma z)^s$  is also an eigenfunction for  $\Delta_k$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda(s)$  for all  $\gamma \in \operatorname{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ . We immediately conclude that

$$\Delta_k(E_{k,\chi,a}(z, s)) = \lambda(s) E_{k,\chi,a}(z, s),$$

which shows  $E_{k,\chi,a}(z, s)$  is also an eigenfunction for  $\Delta_k$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda(s)$ . We now verify the growth condition for  $E_{k,\chi,a}(z, s)$ . Let  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}}$  be a scaling matrix for the cusp  $\mathfrak{b}$  and write  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} = \begin{pmatrix} a' & b' \\ c' & d' \end{pmatrix}$ . Then

$$E_{k,\chi,a}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} z, s) \ll \sum_{(c,d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{0\}} \frac{\operatorname{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} z)^\sigma}{|c\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} z + d|^{2\sigma}} = \frac{\operatorname{Im}(z)^\sigma}{|c'z + d'|^{2\sigma}} \sum_{(c,d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{0\}} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} z + d|^{2\sigma}}.$$

Now decompose this last sum as

$$\sum_{(c,d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{0\}} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} z + d|^{2\sigma}} = \sum_{d \neq 0} \frac{1}{d^{2\sigma}} + \sum_{c \neq 0} \sum_{d \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} z + d|^{2\sigma}} = 2 \sum_{d \geq 1} \frac{1}{d^{2\sigma}} + 2 \sum_{c \geq 1} \sum_{d \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} z + d|^{2\sigma}}.$$

Notice that  $\sum_{c \geq 1} \sum_{d \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{1}{d^{2\sigma}}$  converges provided  $\sigma > 1$ . Moreover, the exact same argument as for holomorphic form Eisenstein series shows that  $\sum_{c \geq 1} \sum_{d \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{1}{|c\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} z + d|^{2\sigma}}$  converges in this region as well. Now for all  $\operatorname{Im}(z) \geq 1$  and  $\sigma > 1$ ,

$$\frac{\operatorname{Im}(z)^\sigma}{|c'z + d'|^{2\sigma}} \ll \frac{\operatorname{Im}(z)^\sigma}{|c' \operatorname{Im}(z)|^{2\sigma}} \ll \operatorname{Im}(z)^\sigma.$$

So altogether,

$$E_{\mathfrak{a}}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}}z, s) \ll \text{Im}(z)^{\sigma} = o(e^{2\pi\text{Im}(z)}),$$

provided  $\text{Im}(z) \geq 1$  and  $\sigma > 1$ . This verifies  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  is of moderate growth at the cusps. We collect all of this work as a theorem:

**Theorem 4.2.1.** *For  $\text{Re}(s) > 1$ , the Eisenstein series*

$$E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s) = \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma) \varepsilon(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma, z)^{-k} \text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma z)^s,$$

*is a weight  $k$  Maass form with eigenvalue  $\lambda(s)$  and character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ .*

It is now time to discuss the Poincaré series. Unlike in the holomorphic case, the Poincaré series are not genuine Maass forms. However, they are still automorphic functions. Let  $\psi : \mathbb{R}_{>0} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a smooth function such that  $\psi(y) \ll_{\varepsilon} y^{1+\varepsilon}$  as  $y \rightarrow 0$ . Let  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  be a scaling matrix for the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp and let  $m \geq 1$ . Then the  $m$ -th **(automorphic) Poincaré series**  $P_{m,k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi)$  of weight  $k$  and character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  at the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp and with respect to  $\psi$  is defined by

$$P_{m,k,\chi,\mathfrak{a},m}(z, \psi) = \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma) \varepsilon(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma, z)^{-k} \psi(\text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma z)) e^{2\pi i m \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma z}.$$

We first show  $P_{m,k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi)$  is well-defined. We have already showed that  $\bar{\chi}(\gamma)$  is independent of the representative  $\gamma$  and  $\varepsilon(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma, z)^{-k}$  and  $\text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma z)$  are independent of the scaling matrix used when discussing  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$ . So it suffices to show that  $e^{2\pi i m \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma z}$  is independent of the scaling matrix too. As before, suppose  $\sigma'_{\mathfrak{a}} = \eta_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  with  $\eta_{\mathfrak{a}} = \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} \eta_{\infty} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}$  and  $\eta_{\infty} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & n \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_{\infty}$ . Then  $(\sigma'_{\mathfrak{a}})^{-1} = \eta_{\infty} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}$ , and we have

$$e^{2\pi i m (\sigma'_{\mathfrak{a}})^{-1}\gamma z} = e^{2\pi i m \eta_{\infty} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma z} = e^{2\pi i m (\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma z + n)} = e^{2\pi i m \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma z} e^{2\pi i m n z} = e^{2\pi i m \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma z},$$

and hence  $e^{2\pi i m \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}\gamma z}$  is independent of the representative  $\gamma$  used. It follows that  $P_{m,k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi)$  is well-defined. Moreover,  $P_{m,k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi)$  is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $z \in \mathbb{H}$ , but to see this we first require a technical lemma:

**Lemma 4.2.1.** *For any compact subset  $K$  of  $\mathbb{H}$ , there are finitely many pairs  $(c, d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{0\}$ , with  $c \neq 0$ , for which*

$$\frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|cz + d|^2} > 1,$$

*for all  $z \in K$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\beta = \sup_{z \in K} |z|$ . As  $|cz + d| \geq |cz| > 0$  and  $\text{Im}(z) < |z|$ , we have

$$\frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|cz + d|^2} \leq \frac{1}{|c|^2 |z|} \leq \frac{1}{|c|^2 \beta}.$$

So if  $\frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|cz + d|^2} > 1$ , then  $\frac{1}{|c|^2 \beta} > 1$  which is to say  $|c| < \frac{1}{\sqrt{\beta}}$  and therefore  $|c|$  is bounded. On the other hand,  $|cz + d| \geq |d| \geq 0$ . Excluding the finitely many terms  $(c, 0)$ , we may assume  $|d| > 0$ . In this case, similarly

$$\frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|cz + d|^2} \leq \frac{|z|}{|d|^2} \leq \frac{\beta}{|d|^2}.$$

So if  $\frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|cz + d|^2} > 1$ , then  $\frac{\beta}{|d|^2} > 1$  which is to say  $|d| < \sqrt{\beta}$ . So  $|d|$  is also bounded. Since both  $|c|$  and  $|d|$  are bounded, the claim follows.  $\square$

Now we are ready to show that  $P_{m,k,\chi,a}(z, \psi)$  is locally absolutely uniformly convergent. Let  $K$  be a compact subset of  $\mathbb{H}$ . Then it suffices to show  $P_{m,k,\chi,a}(z, \psi)$  is uniformly convergent on  $K$ . Applying the Bruhat decomposition to  $\sigma_a^{-1}\Gamma_a \backslash \Gamma = \Gamma_\infty \backslash \sigma_a^{-1}\Gamma$  gives

$$P_{m,k,\chi,a}(z, \psi) \ll |\psi(\text{Im}(z))| + \sum_{(c,d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{0\}} \left| \psi \left( \frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|cz + d|^2} \right) \right|.$$

It now further suffices to show that the series above is uniformly convergent on  $K$ . By Lemma 4.2.1 there are all but finitely many terms in the sum with  $\psi \left( \frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|cz + d|^2} \right) \ll \left( \frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|cz + d|^2} \right)^{1+\varepsilon}$ . But the finitely many other terms are all uniformly bounded on  $K$  because  $\psi$  is continuous (as it is smooth). Therefore

$$\sum_{(c,d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{0\}} \left| \psi \left( \frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|cz + d|^2} \right) \right| \ll_\varepsilon \sum_{(c,d) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{0\}} \left( \frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|cz + d|^2} \right)^{1+\varepsilon},$$

and this last series is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $z \in \mathbb{H}$  by Proposition B.9.1. It follows that  $P_{m,k,\chi,a}(z, \psi)$  is too. Automorphy for  $P_{m,k,\chi,a}(z, \psi)$  is verified in exactly the same way as for  $E_{k,\chi,a}(z, s)$ . We collect this work as a theorem:

**Theorem 4.2.2.** *Let  $\psi : \mathbb{R}_{>0} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a smooth function such that  $\psi(y) \ll_\varepsilon y^{1+\varepsilon}$  as  $y \rightarrow 0$ . The Poincaré series*

$$P_{m,k,\chi,a}(z, \psi) = \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_a \backslash \Gamma} \overline{\chi}(\gamma) \varepsilon(\sigma_a^{-1}\gamma, z)^{-k} \psi(\text{Im}(\sigma_a^{-1}\gamma z)) e^{2\pi i m \sigma_a^{-1}\gamma z},$$

*is a holomorphic automorphic function on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ .*

### 4.3 $L^2$ -integrable Automorphic Functions

We will describe the space of automorphic functions and appropriate subspaces of interest. Let  $\Gamma$  be a congruence subgroup of level  $N$  and let  $\chi$  be a Dirichlet character of conductor  $q \mid N$ . We will let  $\mathcal{A}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  denote the space of all automorphic functions of weight  $k$  and character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . Let  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  be the subspace of  $\mathcal{A}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  consisting of those function with bounded norm where the norm is given by

$$\|f\| = \left( \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} |f(z)|^2 d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Moreover, if  $\chi$  is the trivial character or if  $k = 0$  we will suppress the dependences accordingly. Since  $f$  is automorphic, the integral  $\Gamma$ -invariant and hence is independent of the choice of fundamental domain. Since this is an  $L^2$ -space,  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is an induced inner product space (because the parallelogram law is satisfied). In particular, for any  $f, g \in \mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  we define their **Petersson inner product** to be

$$\langle f, g \rangle_\Gamma = \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} f(z) \overline{g(z)} d\mu.$$

If the congruence subgroup is clear from context we will suppress the dependence upon  $\Gamma$ . The integral is absolutely bounded by the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality and that  $f, g \in \mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . As  $f$  and  $g$  are automorphic, the integral is independent of the choice of fundamental domain. These two facts imply that the Petersson inner product is well-defined. We will continue to use this notion even if  $f$  and  $g$  do not belong to  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  provided the integral is absolutely bounded. Moreover, we have the following proposition:

**Proposition 4.3.1.**  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is a Hilbert space with respect to the Petersson inner product.

*Proof.* To show that the Petersson inner product is a Hermitian inner product on  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ , just mimic the corresponding part of proof of Proposition 3.3.1 with  $k = 0$ . We now show that  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is complete. Let  $(f_n)_{n \geq 1}$  be a Cauchy sequence in  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . Then  $\|f_n - f_m\| \rightarrow 0$  as  $n, m \rightarrow \infty$ . But

$$\|f_n - f_m\| = \left( \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} |f_n(z) - f_m(z)|^2 d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

and this integral tends to zero if and only if  $|f_n(z) - f_m(z)| \rightarrow 0$  as  $n, m \rightarrow \infty$ . Therefore  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(z)$  exists and we define the limiting function  $f$  by  $f(z) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(z)$ . We claim that  $f$  is automorphic. Indeed, as the  $f_n$  are automorphic, we have

$$f(\gamma z) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(\gamma z) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \chi(\gamma) \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^k f_n(z) = \chi(\gamma) \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^k \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(z) = \chi(\gamma) \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^k f(z),$$

for any  $\gamma \in \Gamma$ . Also,  $\|f\| < \infty$ . To see this, since  $(f_n)_{n \geq 1}$  is Cauchy we know  $(\|f_n\|)_{n \geq 1}$  converges. In particular,  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|f_n\| < \infty$ . But

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|f_n\| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} |f_n(z)|^2 d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \left( \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \left| \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(z) \right|^2 d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \left( \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} |f(z)|^2 d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \|f\|,$$

where the second equality holds by the dominated convergence theorem. Hence  $\|f\| < \infty$  as desired and so  $f \in \mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . We now show that  $f_n \rightarrow f$  in the  $L^2$ -norm. Indeed,

$$\|f(z) - f_n(z)\| = \left( \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} |f(z) - f_n(z)|^2 d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

and it follows that  $\|f(z) - f_n(z)\| \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  so that the Cauchy sequence  $(f_n)_{n \geq 1}$  converges.  $\square$

We will need two more subspaces. Let  $\mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  be the subspace of  $\mathcal{A}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  such that  $f$  is smooth and bounded and let  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  be the subspace of  $\mathcal{A}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  such that  $f$  and  $\Delta_k f$  are smooth and bounded. Again, if  $\chi$  is the trivial character or if  $k = 0$  we will suppress the dependences accordingly. Since boundedness on  $\mathbb{H}$  implies square-integrability over  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$ , we have the following chain of inclusions:

$$\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \subseteq \mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \subseteq \mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \subseteq \mathcal{A}_k(\Gamma, \chi).$$

Moreover,  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is almost all of  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  as the following proposition shows:

**Proposition 4.3.2.**  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is dense in  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ .

*Proof.* Note that  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is an algebra of functions that vanish at infinity. We will show that  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is nowhere vanishing, separates points, and is self-adjoint. For nowhere vanishing fix a  $z \in \mathbb{H}$ . Let  $\varphi_z$  be a bump function defined on some sufficiently small neighborhood  $U_z$  of  $z$ . Then

$$\Phi(v) = \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma} \overline{\chi}(\gamma) \varepsilon(\gamma, v)^{-k} \varphi_z(\gamma v),$$

belongs to  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  and is nonzero at  $z$  (the automorphy follows exactly as in the case of Eisenstein series). We now show  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  also separates points. To see this consider two distinct points  $z, w \in \mathbb{H}$ . Let  $U_{z,w}$  be a small neighborhood of  $z$  not containing  $w$ . Then  $\Phi_z|_{U_{z,w}}$  belongs to  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  with  $\Phi_z|_{U_{z,w}}(z) \neq 0$

and  $\varphi_z|_{U_{z,w}}(w) = 0$ . To see why  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is self-adjoint, recall that complex conjugation is smooth and commutes with partial derivatives so that if  $f$  belongs to  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  then so does  $\bar{f}$ . Therefore the Stone–Weierstrass theorem for complex functions defined on locally compact Hausdorff spaces (as  $\mathbb{H}$  is a locally compact Hausdorff space) implies that  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is dense in  $C_0(\mathbb{H})$  with the supremum norm. Note that  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \subseteq C_0(\mathbb{H})$  on the level of sets. Now we show  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is dense in  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . Let  $f \in \mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . By what we have just show, there exists a sequence  $(f_n)_{n \geq 1}$  in  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  converging to  $f$  in the supremum norm. But

$$\|f - f_n\| = \left( \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} |f(z) - f_n(z)|^2 d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq \left( \frac{1}{V_\Gamma} \int_{\mathcal{F}_\Gamma} \sup_{z \in \mathcal{F}_\Gamma} |f(z) - f_n(z)|^2 d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

and the last expression tends to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  because  $f_n \rightarrow f$  in the supremum norm.  $\square$

As  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \subseteq \mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ , Proposition 4.3.2 implies that  $\mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is dense in  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  too. It can be shown that the Laplace operator  $\Delta_k$  is positive and symmetric on  $\mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  and hence admits a self-adjoint extension to  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  (see [Iwa02] for a proof in the weight zero case and [CS17] for notes on the general case):

**Theorem 4.3.1.** *On  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ , the Laplace operator  $\Delta_k$  is positive semi-definite and self-adjoint.*

If we suppose  $f \in \mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is an eigenfunction for  $\Delta_k$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda = \lambda(s)$ , then Theorem 4.3.1 implies  $\lambda(s)$  is real and positive. Moreover,  $s$  and  $1 - s$  are roots of the polynomial  $z^2 - z + \lambda$ . As  $\lambda$  is real, these roots are either conjugate symmetric or real. In the former case,  $s = 1 - \bar{s}$  and we find

$$\sigma = 1 - \sigma \quad \text{and} \quad t = t.$$

Therefore  $s = \frac{1}{2} + it$ . In the later case,  $s$  is real and since  $\lambda(s)$  is positive we must have  $s \in (0, 1)$ . It follows that in either case, we may write  $\lambda = \frac{1}{4} + t^2$  with either  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  or  $it \in [0, \frac{1}{2})$ . We refer to  $t$  as the **spectral parameter** of  $f$ . Note that we can then write

$$\lambda = s(1 - s) = \frac{1}{4} + t^2.$$

Unfortunately the Eisenstein series  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  are not  $L^2$ -integrable over  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$  and so do not belong to  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . To obtain integrable automorphic functions we will argument these Eisenstein series so that they have compact support. Let  $\psi : \mathbb{R}_{>0} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a smooth compactly supported function and let  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}$  be a scaling matrix for the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp. We define the **(incomplete) Eisenstein series**  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi)$  of weight  $k$  and character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  at the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp and with respect to  $\psi$  by

$$E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi) = \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \backslash \Gamma} \bar{\chi}(\gamma) \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^{-k} \psi(\text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z)).$$

This series is locally absolutely uniformly convergent since only finitely many of the terms are nonzero. Indeed,  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \Gamma$  is a Fuchsian group because it is a subset of the modular group. So using  $\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \backslash \Gamma = \Gamma_{\infty} \backslash \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \Gamma$  we see that  $\{\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z : \gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \backslash \Gamma\}$  is discrete. Since  $\text{Im}(z)$  is an open map it takes discrete sets to discrete sets so that  $\{\text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z) : \gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \backslash \Gamma\}$  is also discrete. Now  $\psi(\text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z))$  is nonzero if and only if  $\text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z) \in \text{Supp}(\psi)$  and  $\{\text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z) : \gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \backslash \Gamma\} \cap \text{Supp}(\psi)$  is finite as it is a discrete subset of a compact set (since  $\psi$  has compact support). Hence finitely many of the terms are nonzero. Also,  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi)$  is automorphic on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  and the automorphy is proved in exactly the same way as for the Eisenstein series  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$ . Moreover, the compact support of  $\psi$  implies that  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi)$  is also compactly supported (since the function  $\psi(\text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z))$  is continuous and  $\mathbb{C}$  is Hausdorff) and hence bounded on  $\mathbb{H}$ . As a consequence,  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi)$  is  $L^2$ -integrable and therefore belongs to  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . This is the advantage of these Eisenstein series. We collect this work as a theorem:



**Theorem 4.3.2.** *For any smooth compactly supported function  $\psi : \mathbb{R}_{>0} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , the Eisenstein series*

$$E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi) = \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\mathfrak{a}} \backslash \Gamma} \overline{\chi}(\gamma) \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^{-k} \psi(\text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z)),$$

*is an automorphic function on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  and belongs to  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ .*

Unfortunately, the Eisenstein series  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi)$  fail to be Maass forms because they are not eigenfunctions for the Laplace operator. This is because compactly supported functions cannot be real-analytic (which as we have already mentioned is implied for any eigenfunction of the Laplace operator). However, there is an important interaction between incomplete Eisenstein series and Maass cusp forms. Let  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  and  $\mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  denote the spaces generated by such forms respectively. Moreover, let  $\mathcal{A}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  be the space of all Maass forms. Note that  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  and  $\mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  are subspaces of  $\mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  but  $\mathcal{A}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  need not be. Let  $\mathcal{E}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi)$ ,  $\mathcal{C}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi)$ ,  $\mathcal{A}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi)$ , and  $\mathcal{B}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi)$  denote the corresponding subspaces of such forms whose eigenvalue is  $\lambda = \frac{1}{4} + t^2$ . For all of these spaces, if  $\chi$  is the trivial character or if the weight  $k$  is zero, we will suppress these dependences. As we will now show,  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  and  $\mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  constitute all of  $\mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . Indeed, let  $f \in \mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  with  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(\cdot, \psi) \in \mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . We compute their inner product:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle f, E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(\cdot, \psi) \rangle &= \frac{1}{V_{\Gamma}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma}} f(z) \overline{E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \psi)} d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{V_{\Gamma}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma}} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\infty} \backslash \Gamma} \chi(\gamma) \overline{\varepsilon(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma, z)^{-k}} f(z) \overline{\psi(\text{Im}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma z))} d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{V_{\Gamma}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma}} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\infty} \backslash \Gamma} \chi(\gamma) \overline{\varepsilon(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \gamma, \gamma^{-1} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z)^{-k}} f(\gamma^{-1} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z) \overline{\psi(\text{Im}(z))} d\mu \quad z \rightarrow \gamma^{-1} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z \\ &= \frac{1}{V_{\Gamma}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma}} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\infty} \backslash \Gamma} \chi(\gamma) \left( \frac{\varepsilon(I, z)}{\varepsilon(\gamma^{-1}, \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z)} \right)^{-k} f(\gamma^{-1} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z) \overline{\psi(\text{Im}(z))} d\mu \quad \text{cocycle condition} \\ &= \frac{1}{V_{\Gamma}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma}} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\infty} \backslash \Gamma} \chi(\gamma) \varepsilon(\gamma^{-1}, \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z)^{-k} f(\gamma^{-1} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z) \overline{\psi(\text{Im}(z))} d\mu \quad \overline{\varepsilon(\gamma, z)} = \varepsilon(\gamma, z)^{-1} \\ &= \frac{1}{V_{\Gamma}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma}} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\infty} \backslash \Gamma} \chi(\gamma^{-1})^{-1} \varepsilon(\gamma^{-1}, \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z)^{-k} f(\gamma^{-1} \sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z) \overline{\psi(\text{Im}(z))} d\mu \quad \chi(\gamma) = \chi(\gamma^{-1})^{-1} \\ &= \frac{1}{V_{\Gamma}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma}} f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z) \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_{\infty} \backslash \Gamma} \overline{\psi(\text{Im}(z))} d\mu \quad \text{automorphy} \\ &= \int_{\Gamma_{\infty} \backslash \mathbb{H}} f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}} z) \overline{\psi(\text{Im}(z))} d\mu \quad \text{unfolding} \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} \int_0^1 f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}(x + iy)) \overline{\psi(y)} \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} \left( \int_0^1 f(\sigma_{\mathfrak{a}}(x + iy)) dx \right) \overline{\psi(y)} \frac{dy}{y^2}. \end{aligned}$$

The inner integral is precisely the constant term in the Fourier series of  $f$  at the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp. It follows that  $f$  is orthogonal to  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  if and only if  $f$  is a cusp form. By what we have just shown,

$$\mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi) = \mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \oplus \mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{B}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi) = \mathcal{E}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi) \oplus \mathcal{C}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi),$$

and since  $\mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is dense in  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  we have

$$\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi) = \overline{\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)} \oplus \overline{\mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi)},$$

where the closure is with respect to the topology induced by the  $L^2$ -norm.

## 4.4 Spectral Theory of the Laplace Operator

We are now ready to discuss the spectral theory of the Laplace operator  $\Delta_k$ . What we want to do is to decompose  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  into subspaces invariant under  $\Delta_k$  such that on each subspace  $\Delta_k$  has either pure point spectrum, absolutely continuous spectrum, or residual spectrum. Although the proof is beyond the scope of this text, the spectral resolution of the Laplace operator on  $\mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is as follows (see [Iwa02] for a proof in the weight zero case and [CS17] for notes on the general case):

**Theorem 4.4.1.** *The Laplace operator  $\Delta_k$  has pure point spectrum on  $\mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . The corresponding subspaces  $\mathcal{C}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi)$  have finite dimension and are mutually orthogonal. Letting  $\{u_j\}$  be any orthonormal basis of cusp forms for  $\mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ , every  $f \in \mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  admits a series of the form*

$$f(z) = \sum_j \langle f, u_j \rangle u_j(z),$$

which is locally absolutely uniformly convergent if  $f \in \mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  and converges in the  $L^2$ -norm otherwise.

We will now discuss the spectrum of the Laplace operator on  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . Essential is the meromorphic continuation of the Eisenstein series  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  (see [Iwa02] for a proof in the weight zero case and [CS17] for notes on the general case):

**Theorem 4.4.2.** *Let  $\mathfrak{a}$  and  $\mathfrak{b}$  be cusps of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . The Eisenstein series  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  admits meromorphic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  in the  $s$ -plane, via a Fourier series at the  $\mathfrak{b}$  cusp given by*

$$E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{b}} z, s) = \delta_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}} y^s + \tau_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}}(s) y^{1-s} + \sum_{n \neq 0} \tau_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}}(n, s) W_{\text{sgn}(n)\frac{k}{2}, s - \frac{1}{2}}(4\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x},$$

where  $\tau_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}}(s)$  and  $\tau_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}}(n, s)$  are meromorphic functions.

The Eisenstein series  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  also satisfy a functional equation. To state it we need some notation. Fix an ordering of the cusps  $\mathfrak{a}$  of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  and define

$$\mathcal{E}(z, s) = (E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s))_{\mathfrak{a}}^t \quad \text{and} \quad \Phi(s) = (\tau_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}}(s))_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}}.$$

In other words,  $\mathcal{E}(z, s)$  is the column vector of the Eisenstein series and  $\Phi(s)$  is the square matrix of meromorphic functions  $\tau_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}}(s)$  described in Theorem 4.4.2. Then we have the following (see [Iwa02] for a proof in the weight zero case and [CS17] for notes on the general case):

**Theorem 4.4.3.** *The Eisenstein series  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  of weight  $k$  and character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  satisfy the functional equation*

$$\mathcal{E}(z, s) = \Phi(s) \mathcal{E}(z, 1 - s).$$

Moreover, the matrix  $\Phi(s)$  satisfies the functional equation

$$\Phi(s) \Phi(1 - s) = I,$$

is unitary on the line  $\text{Re}(s) = \frac{1}{2}$ , and hermitian if  $s$  is real.

Understanding the poles of  $\tau_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}}$  are also important for understanding the poles of the Eisenstein series  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  (see [Iwa02] for a proof in the weight zero case and [CS17] for notes on the general case):

**Theorem 4.4.4.** *The functions  $\tau_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}}(s)$  are meromorphic for  $\operatorname{Re}(s) \geq \frac{1}{2}$  with a finite number of simple poles in the segment  $(\frac{1}{2}, 1]$ . A pole of  $\tau_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}}(s)$  is also a pole of  $\tau_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{a}}(s)$ . Moreover, the poles of  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  are among the poles of  $\tau_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{a}}(s)$ ,  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  has no poles on the line  $\operatorname{Re}(s) = \frac{1}{2}$ , and the residues of  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  are Maass forms in  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ .*

To begin decomposing the space  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ , consider the subspace  $C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}_{>0})$  of  $\mathcal{L}^2(\mathbb{R}_{>0})$  with the normalized standard inner product

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^\infty f(r) \overline{g(r)} dr,$$

for any  $f, g \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}_{>0})$ . For each cusp  $\mathfrak{a}$  of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  we associate the **Eisenstein transform**  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}} : C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}_{>0}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  defined by

$$(E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}f)(z) = \frac{1}{4\pi} \int_0^\infty f(r) E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}} \left( z, \frac{1}{2} + ir \right) dr.$$

Clearly  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}f$  is automorphic because  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$  is. It is not too hard to show the following (see [Iwa02] for a proof in the weight zero case and [CS17] for notes on the general case):

**Proposition 4.4.1.** *If  $f \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}_{>0})$ , then  $E_{\mathfrak{a}}f$  is  $L^2$ -integrable over  $\mathcal{F}_\Gamma$ . That is,  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}} : C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}_{>0}) \rightarrow \mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . Moreover,*

$$\langle E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}f, E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{b}}g \rangle = \delta_{\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{b}} \langle f, g \rangle,$$

for any  $f, g \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}_{>0})$  and any two cusps  $\mathfrak{a}$  and  $\mathfrak{b}$ .

We let  $\mathcal{E}_{k,\mathfrak{a}}(\Gamma, \chi)$  denote the image of the Eisenstein transform  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}$ . We call  $\mathcal{E}_{k,\mathfrak{a}}(\Gamma, \chi)$  the **Eisenstein space** of  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, s)$ . An immediate consequence of Proposition 4.4.1 is that the Eisenstein spaces for distinct cusps are orthogonal. Moreover, since  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \frac{1}{2} + ir)$  is an eigenfunction for the Laplace operator with eigenvalue  $\lambda = \frac{1}{4} + r^2$ , and  $f$  and  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(z, \frac{1}{2} + ir)$  are smooth, the Leibniz integral rule implies

$$\Delta E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}} = E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}M,$$

where  $M : C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}_{>0}) \rightarrow C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}_{>0})$  is the multiplication operator given by

$$(Mf)(r) = \left( \frac{1}{4} + r^2 \right) f(r),$$

for all  $f \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}_{>0})$ . Therefore if  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}f$  belongs to  $\mathcal{E}_{k,\mathfrak{a}}(\Gamma, \chi)$  then so does  $E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}}(Mf)$ . But as  $f, Mf \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}_{>0})$ , this means  $\mathcal{E}_{k,\mathfrak{a}}(\Gamma, \chi)$  is invariant under the Laplace operator. While the Eisenstein spaces are invariant, they do not make up all of  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . By Theorem 4.4.4, the residues of the Eisenstein series belong to  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . Let  $\mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  denote the subspace spanned by the residues of these Eisenstein series. We call any element of  $\mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  a **(residual) Maass form** (by Theorem 4.4.4 they are Maass forms). Also let  $\mathcal{R}_{k,s_j}(\Gamma, \chi)$  denote the subspace spanned by those residues taken at  $s = s_j$ . Since there are finitely many cusps of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ , each  $\mathcal{R}_{k,s_j}(\Gamma, \chi)$  is finite dimensional. As the number of residues in  $(\frac{1}{2}, 1]$  is finite by Theorem 4.4.4, it follows that  $\mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is finite dimensional too. So  $\mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  decomposes as

$$\mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi) = \bigoplus_{\frac{1}{2} < s_j \leq 1} \mathcal{R}_{k,s_j}(\Gamma, \chi).$$

This decomposition is orthogonal because the Maass forms belonging to distinct subspaces  $\mathcal{R}_{k,s_j}(\Gamma, \chi)$  have distinct eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of self-adjoint operators are orthogonal (recall that  $\Delta_k$  is self-adjoint by Theorem 4.3.1). Also, each subspace  $\mathcal{R}_{k,s_j}(\Gamma, \chi)$  is clearly invariant under the Laplace operator because its elements are Maass forms. We are now ready for the spectral resolution. Although the proof is beyond the scope of this text, the spectral resolution of the Laplace operator on  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is as follows (see [Iwa02] for a proof in the weight zero case and [CS17] for notes on the general case):

**Theorem 4.4.5.**  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  admits the orthogonal decomposition

$$\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi) = \mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a}} \mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi),$$

where the direct sum is over the cusps of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . The Laplace operator  $\Delta_k$  has discrete spectrum on  $\mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  in the segment  $[0, \frac{1}{4})$  and has pure continuous spectrum on each Eisenstein space  $\mathcal{E}_{k,\mathfrak{a}}(\Gamma, \chi)$  covering the segment  $[\frac{1}{4}, \infty)$  uniformly with multiplicity 1. Letting  $\{u_j\}$  be any orthonormal basis residual Maass forms for  $\mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ , every  $f \in \mathcal{E}_{k,\mathfrak{a}}(\Gamma, \chi)$  admits a decomposition of the form

$$f(z) = \sum_j \langle f, u_j \rangle u_j(z) + \sum_{\mathfrak{a}} \frac{1}{4\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left\langle f, E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}} \left( \cdot, \frac{1}{2} + ir \right) \right\rangle E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}} \left( z, \frac{1}{2} + ir \right) dr.$$

The series is locally absolutely uniformly convergent and the integrals are locally absolutely uniformly bounded if  $f \in \mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  and converges in the  $L^2$ -norm otherwise.

Combining Theorems 4.4.1 and 4.4.5 gives the full spectral resolution of  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ :

**Theorem 4.4.6.**  $\mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  admits the orthogonal decomposition

$$\mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi) = \mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \oplus \mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a}} \mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi),$$

where the sum is over all cusps of  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . The Laplace operator has pure point spectrum on  $\mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ , discrete spectrum on  $\mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ , and absolutely continuous spectrum on  $\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ . Letting  $\{u_j\}$  be any orthonormal basis of Maass forms for  $\mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \oplus \mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ , any  $f \in \mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  has a series of the form

$$f(z) = \sum_j \langle f, u_j \rangle u_j(z) + \sum_{\mathfrak{a}} \frac{1}{4\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left\langle f, E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}} \left( \cdot, \frac{1}{2} + ir \right) \right\rangle E_{k,\chi,\mathfrak{a}} \left( z, \frac{1}{2} + ir \right) dr,$$

which is locally absolutely uniformly convergent if  $f \in \mathcal{D}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  and in the  $L^2$ -norm otherwise. Moreover,

$$\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi) = \overline{\mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi)} \oplus \overline{\mathcal{R}_k(\Gamma, \chi)} \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a}} \overline{\mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi)},$$

where the closure is with respect to the topology induced by the  $L^2$ -norm.

*Proof.* Combine Theorems 4.4.1 and 4.4.5 and use the fact that  $\mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi) = \mathcal{E}_k(\Gamma, \chi) \oplus \mathcal{C}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  for the first statement. The last statement holds because  $\mathcal{B}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$  is dense in  $\mathcal{L}_k(\Gamma, \chi)$ .  $\square$

## 4.5 Double Coset Operators

We can extend the theory of double coset operators to weight zero Maass form just as we did for holomorphic forms. Indeed, for any  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ , we define the operator  $[\alpha]$  on  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma)$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(f[\alpha])(z) = \det(\alpha)^{-\frac{1}{2}} f(\alpha z),$$

Clearly  $[\alpha]$  is multiplicative. Moreover, if  $\gamma \in \Gamma$  and we choose the representative with positive determinant, then the chain of equalities

$$(f[\gamma])(z) = f(\gamma z) = f(z),$$

is equivalent to the automorphy of  $f$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . For any two congruence subgroups  $\Gamma_1$  and  $\Gamma_2$  (not necessarily of the same level) and any  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ , we define the **double coset operator**  $[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]$  to be the linear operator on  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1)$  given by

$$(f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2])(z) = \sum_j (f[\beta_j])(z) = \sum_j \det(\beta_j)^{-\frac{1}{2}} f(\beta_j z).$$

As was the case for holomorphic forms, Proposition 3.4.1 implies that this sum is finite. Mimicking the same argument for  $[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]_k$ , we see that  $[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]$  is also well-defined. There is also an analogous statement about the double coset operators for Maass forms:

**Proposition 4.5.1.** *For any two congruence subgroups  $\Gamma_1$  and  $\Gamma_2$ ,  $[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]$  maps  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1)$  into  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_2)$ . Moreover,  $[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]$  preserves the subspace of cusp forms.*

*Proof.* Mimicking the proof of Proposition 3.4.2 with  $k = 0$  (except  $k = \frac{1}{2}$  for the power of the determinant), smoothness replacing holomorphy, and the analogous growth condition for Maass forms, the only piece left to verify is that  $f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]$  is an eigenfunction for  $\Delta$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda$  if  $f$  is. This is easy, since

$$\Delta(f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2])(z) = \sum_j \Delta(f[\beta_j])(z) = \lambda \sum_j \det(\beta_j)^{-\frac{1}{2}} f(\beta_j z) = \lambda(f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2])(z).$$

Thus  $f[\Gamma_1 \alpha \Gamma_2]$  is an eigenfunction for  $\Delta$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda$ . This completes the proof.  $\square$

## 4.6 Diamond & Hecke Operators

Extending the theory of diamond operators and Hecke operators to weight zero Maass form is fairly straightforward. To see this, we have already shown that  $\Gamma_1(N)$  is normal in  $\Gamma_0(N)$  so

$$(f[\Gamma_1(N) \alpha \Gamma_1(N)])(z) = \sum_j (f[\beta_j])(z) = (f[\alpha])(z),$$

for any  $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$ . Therefore, for any  $d$  taken modulo  $N$ , we define the **diamond operator**  $\langle d \rangle : \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(\langle d \rangle f)(z) = (f[\alpha])(z),$$

for any  $\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$ . As for holomorphic forms, the diamond operators are multiplicative and invertible. They also decompose  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  into eigenspaces. For any Dirichlet character modulo  $N$ , let

$$\mathcal{A}_t(N, \chi) = \{f \in \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N)) : \langle d \rangle f = \chi(d)f \text{ for all } d \in (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^*\},$$

be the  $\chi$ -eigenspace. Also let  $\mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$  be the corresponding subspace of cusp forms. Then  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  admits a decomposition into these eigenspaces:

**Proposition 4.6.1.** *We have a direct sum decomposition*

$$\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N)) = \bigoplus_{\chi \pmod{N}} \mathcal{A}_t(N, \chi).$$

*Moreover, this decomposition respects the subspace of cusp forms.*

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Proposition 3.5.1. □

If  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} * & * \\ * & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_0(N)$  and we choose the representative with positive determinant, then  $\chi(\gamma) = \chi(d)$  and the chain of equalities

$$(\langle d \rangle f)(z) = (f[\gamma])(z) = f(\gamma z) = \chi(d)f(z),$$

is equivalent to the automorphy of  $f$  with character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma_0(N) \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . So  $f$  is a Maass form with character  $\chi$  on  $\Gamma_0(N) \backslash \mathbb{H}$  if and only if  $f[\gamma] = \chi(\gamma)f$  for all  $\gamma \in \Gamma_0(N)$  where  $\gamma$  is chosen to be the representative with positive determinant. This means that if  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma, \chi)$  denotes the space of Maass forms on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$  with spectral parameter  $t$  and character  $\chi$ , and  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma, \chi)$  denotes the corresponding subspace of cusp forms, then  $\mathcal{A}_t(N, \chi) = \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_0(N), \chi)$  and  $\mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi) = \mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_0(N), \chi)$ . So by Proposition 4.6.1, we have

$$\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N)) = \bigoplus_{\chi \pmod{N}} \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_0(N), \chi),$$

and this decomposition respects the subspace of cusp forms. As for holomorphic forms, this decomposition helps clarify why we consider Maass forms with nontrivial characters. We define the Hecke operators in the same way as for holomorphic forms. For a prime  $p$ , we define the  $p$ -th **Hecke operator**  $T_p : \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(T_p f)(z) = \left( f \left[ \Gamma_1(N) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \Gamma_1(N) \right] \right) (z).$$

By Proposition 4.5.1,  $T_p$  preserves the subspaces of Maass forms and cusp forms. The diamond and Hecke operators commute:

**Proposition 4.6.2.** *For every  $d \in (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^*$  and prime  $p$ , the diamond operator  $\langle d \rangle$  and the Hecke operator  $T_p$  on  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  commute:*

$$\langle d \rangle T_p = T_p \langle d \rangle$$

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Proposition 4.6.2. □

Exactly as for holomorphic forms, Lemma 3.5.1 will give an explicit description of the Hecke operator  $T_p$ :

**Proposition 4.6.3.** *Let  $f \in \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$ . Then the Hecke operator  $T_p$  acts on  $f$  as follows:*

$$(T_p f)(z) = \begin{cases} \sum_{j \pmod{p}} \left( f \left[ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \right] \right) (z) + \left( f \left[ \begin{pmatrix} m & n \\ N & p \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} p & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right] \right) (z) & \text{if } p \nmid N, \\ \sum_{j \pmod{p}} \left( f \left[ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \right] \right) (z) & \text{if } p \mid N, \end{cases}$$

where  $m$  and  $n$  are chosen such that  $\det \left( \begin{pmatrix} m & n \\ N & p \end{pmatrix} \right) = 1$ .

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Proposition 3.5.3. □

We use Proposition 4.6.3 to understand how the Hecke operators act on the Fourier coefficients of Maass forms:

**Proposition 4.6.4.** *Let  $f \in \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  Fourier coefficients  $a_n(f)$ ,  $a_0(f)$ , and  $b_0(f)$ . Then for primes  $p$  with  $(p, N) = 1$ ,*

$$(T_p f)(z) = (a_0(f) + \chi_{N,0}(p)a_0(\langle p \rangle f))y^{\frac{1}{2}+it} + (b_0(f) + \chi_{N,0}(p)b_0(\langle p \rangle f))y^{\frac{1}{2}-it} \\ + \sum_{n \neq 0} \left( a_{np}(f) + \chi_{N,0}(p)a_{\frac{n}{p}}(\langle p \rangle f) \right) \sqrt{y} K_{it}(2\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x},$$

is the Fourier series of  $T_p f$  where it is understood that  $a_{\frac{n}{p}}(f) = 0$  if  $p \nmid n$ . Moreover, if  $f \in \mathcal{A}_t(N, \chi)$ , then  $T_p f \in \mathcal{A}_t(N, \chi)$  and

$$(T_p f)(z) = (a_0(f) + \chi(p)a_0(f))y^{\frac{1}{2}+it} + (b_0(f) + \chi(p)b_0(f))y^{\frac{1}{2}-it} \\ + \sum_{n \neq 0} \left( a_{np}(f) + \chi(p)a_{\frac{n}{p}}(f) \right) \sqrt{y} K_{it}(2\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x},$$

where it is understood that  $a_{\frac{n}{p}}(f) = 0$  if  $p \nmid n$ .

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Proposition 3.5.4. □

As for holomorphic forms, the Hecke operators form a simultaneously commuting family with the diamond operators:

**Proposition 4.6.5.** *Let  $p$  and  $q$  be primes and  $d, e \in (\mathbb{Z}/N\mathbb{Z})^*$ . Then the Hecke operators  $T_p$  and  $T_q$  and diamond operators  $\langle d \rangle$  and  $\langle e \rangle$  on  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  form a simultaneously commuting family:*

$$T_p T_q = T_q T_p, \quad \langle d \rangle T_p = T_p \langle d \rangle, \quad \text{and} \quad \langle d \rangle \langle e \rangle = \langle e \rangle \langle d \rangle.$$

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Proposition 3.5.5. □

We use Proposition 4.6.5 to construct diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$  and Hecke operators  $T_m$  for all  $m \geq 1$  exactly as for holomorphic forms. Explicitly, the **diamond operator**  $\langle m \rangle : \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  is defined to be the linear operator given by

$$\langle m \rangle = \begin{cases} \langle m \rangle \text{ with } m \text{ taken modulo } N & \text{if } (m, N) = 1, \\ 0 & \text{if } (m, N) > 1. \end{cases}$$

For the Hecke operators, if  $m = p_1^{r_1} p_2^{r_2} \cdots p_k^{r_k}$  is the prime decomposition of  $m$ , then the  $m$ -th **Hecke operator**  $T_m : \mathcal{A}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi)$  is the linear operator given by

$$T_m = \prod_{1 \leq i \leq k} T_{p_i^{r_i}},$$

where  $T_{p^r}$  is defined inductively by

$$T_{p^r} = \begin{cases} T_p T_{p^{r-1}} - \langle p \rangle T_{p^{r-2}} & \text{if } p \nmid N, \\ T_p^r & \text{if } p \mid N, \end{cases}$$

for all  $r \geq 2$ . By Proposition 4.6.5, the Hecke operators  $T_m$  are multiplicative but not completely multiplicative in  $m$  and they commute with the diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$ . Moreover, a more general formula for how the Hecke operators  $T_m$  act on the Fourier coefficients can be derived:

**Proposition 4.6.6.** *Let  $f \in \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  with Fourier coefficients  $a_n(f)$ ,  $a_0(f)$ , and  $b_0(f)$ . Then for  $m \geq 1$  with  $(m, N) = 1$ ,*

$$(T_m f)(z) = \left( \sum_{d|m} a_0(\langle d \rangle f) \right) y^{\frac{1}{2}+it} + \left( \sum_{d|m} b_0(\langle d \rangle f) \right) y^{\frac{1}{2}-it} \\ + \sum_{n \neq 0} \left( \sum_{d|(n,m)} a_{\frac{nm}{d^2}}(\langle d \rangle f) \right) \sqrt{y} K_{it}(2\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x},$$

*is the Fourier series of  $T_m f$ . Moreover, if  $f \in \mathcal{A}_t(N, \chi)$ , then*

$$(T_m f)(z) = \left( \sum_{d|m} \chi(d) a_0(f) \right) y^{\frac{1}{2}+it} + \left( \sum_{d|m} \chi(d) b_0(f) \right) y^{\frac{1}{2}-it} \\ + \sum_{n \neq 0} \left( \sum_{d|(n,m)} \chi(d) a_{\frac{nm}{d^2}}(f) \right) \sqrt{y} K_{it}(2\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x}.$$

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Proposition 3.5.6. □

The diamond and Hecke operators turn out to be normal with respect to the Petersson inner product on the subspace of cusp forms. We can use Lemma 3.5.2 to compute adjoints:

**Proposition 4.6.7.** *Let  $\Gamma$  be a congruence subgroup and let  $\alpha \in \text{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$ . Then the following are true:*

(i) *If  $\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha \subseteq \text{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$ , then for all  $f \in \mathcal{C}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi)$  and  $g \in \mathcal{C}_t(\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha)$ , we have*

$$\langle f[\alpha], g \rangle_{\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha} = \langle f, g[\alpha^{-1}] \rangle_{\Gamma}.$$

(ii) *For all  $f, g \in \mathcal{C}_{k,t}(\Gamma, \chi)$ , we have*

$$\langle f[\Gamma\alpha\Gamma], g \rangle = \langle f, g[\Gamma\alpha^{-1}\Gamma] \rangle.$$

*In particular, if  $\alpha^{-1}\Gamma\alpha = \Gamma$  then  $[\alpha]^* = [\alpha^{-1}]$  and  $[\Gamma\alpha\Gamma]^* = [\Gamma\alpha^{-1}\Gamma]$ .*

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Proposition 3.5.7. □

We can now prove that the diamond and Hecke operators are normal:

**Proposition 4.6.8.** *On  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$ , the diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$  and Hecke operators  $T_m$  are normal with respect to the Petersson inner product for all  $m \geq 1$  with  $(m, N) = 1$ . Moreover, their adjoints are given by*

$$\langle m \rangle^* = \langle \overline{m} \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad T_p^* = \langle \overline{p} \rangle T_p.$$

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Proposition 3.5.8. □



When we are considering Maass forms on the full modular group, Proposition 4.6.8 says that all of the diamond and Hecke operators are normal. Before discussing the spectral theory, we need one last operator. Define  $T_{-1} : \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(T_{-1}f)(z) = f(-\bar{z}).$$

Clearly  $T_{-1}$  preserves the subspace of cusp forms. Moreover, we also have the following proposition encompassing important properties of the  $T_{-1}$  operator:

**Proposition 4.6.9.**

1. On  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$ , the operator  $T_{-1}$  commutes with the diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$  and Hecke operators  $T_n$  for all  $m, n \geq 1$ .
2. On  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  the operator  $T_{-1}$  is normal with respect to the Petersson inner product and the adjoint is given by

$$T_{-1}^* = -T_{-1}.$$

*Proof.* To prove (i), for any matrix  $\alpha \in \mathrm{GL}_2^+(\mathbb{Q})$  observe that  $-\alpha\bar{z} = \alpha(-\bar{z})$ . Hence  $T_{-1}$  commutes with the  $[\alpha]$  operator. Since  $T_{-1}$  is linear, it follows that it commutes with the double coset operators and hence the diamond operators and Hecke operators as well. For (ii),  $z \rightarrow -\bar{z}$  is an automorphism of  $\mathbb{H}$  sending  $d\mu \rightarrow -d\mu$ . So for any  $f, g \in \mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \langle T_{-1}f, g \rangle &= \frac{1}{V_{\Gamma_1(N)}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma_1(N)}} (T_{-1}f)(z) \overline{g(z)} d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{V_{\Gamma_1(N)}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma_1(N)}} f(-\bar{z}) \overline{g(z)} d\mu \\ &= -\frac{1}{V_{\Gamma_1(N)}} \int_{\mathcal{F}_{\Gamma_1(N)}} f(z) \overline{g(-\bar{z})} d\mu \\ &= \langle f, -T_{-1}g \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

This proves the adjoint formula  $T_{-1}^* = -T_{-1}$  and normality is now clear.  $\square$

In the case of the modular group, Proposition 4.6.8 says that all of the diamond and Hecke operators are normal. Suppose  $f$  is a non-constant Maass form with Fourier coefficients  $a_n(f)$ . Let the eigenvalue of  $T_m$  for  $f$  be  $\lambda_f(m)$ . We say that the  $\lambda_f(m)$  are the **Hecke eigenvalues** of  $f$ . Similar to the case for holomorphic forms, if  $f$  is a Maass form on  $\Gamma_1(N) \backslash \mathbb{H}$  that is a simultaneous eigenfunction for the operator  $T_{-1}$  and all diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$  and Hecke operators  $T_m$  with  $(m, N) = 1$ , we call  $f$  an **eigenform** (necessarily  $f$  is even or odd because  $T_{-1}^2 f = f$  so that the only possible eigenvalues are  $\pm 1$ ). If the condition  $(m, N) = 1$  can be dropped, so that  $f$  is a simultaneous eigenfunction for all diamond and Hecke operators, then we say  $f$  is a **Hecke-Maass eigenform**. In particular, on  $\mathrm{PSL}_2(\mathbb{Z})$  all eigenforms are Hecke-Maass eigenforms. As for holomorphic forms, if  $f$  an eigenform Proposition 4.6.6 implies that the first Fourier coefficient of  $T_m f$  is  $a_m(f)$  and so  $a_m(f) = \lambda_f(m) a_1(f)$  for all  $m \geq 1$  with  $(m, N) = 1$ . Therefore we cannot have  $a_1(f) = 0$  and so we can normalize  $f$  by dividing by  $a_1(f)$  which guarantees that the Fourier series has constant term 1. Then the  $m$ -th Fourier coefficient of  $f$ , when  $(m, N) = 1$ , is precisely the Hecke eigenvalue  $\lambda_f(m)$ . This normalization is called the **Hecke normalization** of  $f$ . The **Petersson normalization** of  $f$  is where we normalize so that  $\langle f, f \rangle = 1$ . From the spectral theorem we have an analogous corollary as for holomorphic forms:

**Theorem 4.6.1.**  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  admits an orthonormal basis of eigenforms.

*Proof.* This follows from the spectral theorem along with Propositions 4.6.5, 4.6.8 and 4.6.9.  $\square$

In particular, Theorem 4.6.1 implies that the orthonormal basis in Theorem 4.4.1 can be taken to be an orthonormal basis of eigenforms since it is clear that the  $T_{-1}$  operator, diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$ , and Hecke operators  $T_m$  all commute with  $\Delta$ . Also, just as in the holomorphic setting, we have **Hecke relations** for Maass forms:

**Proposition 4.6.10 (Hecke relations, Maass version).** *Let  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$  be a Hecke-Maass eigenform with Fourier coefficients  $\lambda_f(n)$ . Then the Fourier coefficients are multiplicative and satisfy*

$$\lambda_f(n)\lambda_f(m) = \sum_{d|(n,m)} \chi(d)\lambda_f\left(\frac{nm}{d^2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_f(nm) = \sum_{d|(n,m)} \mu(d)\chi(d)\lambda_f\left(\frac{n}{d}\right)\lambda_f\left(\frac{m}{d}\right),$$

for all  $n, m \geq 1$  with  $(nm, N) = 1$ .

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of the Hecke relations for holomorphic forms.  $\square$

As an immediate consequence of the Hecke relations, the Hecke operators satisfy analogous relations:

**Corollary 4.6.1.** *For all  $n, m \geq 1$  with  $(nm, N) = 1$ , we have*

$$T_n T_m = \sum_{d|(n,m)} \chi(d) T_{\frac{nm}{d^2}} \quad \text{and} \quad T_{nm} = \sum_{d|(n,m)} \mu(d) \chi(d) T_{\frac{n}{d}} T_{\frac{m}{d}}.$$

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Corollary 3.5.1.  $\square$

Just as for holomorphic forms, the identities in Corollary 4.6.1 can also be established directly and the first identity can be used to show that the Hecke operators commute.

## 4.7 Atkin–Lehner Theory

There is also an Atkin–Lehner theory for weight zero Maass form. As with holomorphic forms, we will only deal with congruence subgroups of the form  $\Gamma_1(N)$  and cusp forms on  $\Gamma_1(N) \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . The trivial way to lift Maass forms from a smaller level to a larger level is via the natural inclusion  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(M)) \subseteq \mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  provided  $M \mid N$  which follows from  $\Gamma_1(N) \leq \Gamma_1(M)$ . Alternatively, for any  $d \mid \frac{N}{M}$ , let  $\alpha_d = \begin{pmatrix} d & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ . If  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(M))$ , then

$$(f[\alpha_d])(z) = f(\alpha_d z) = f(dz).$$

Similar to holomorphic forms,  $[\alpha_d]$  maps  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(M))$  into  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$ :

**Proposition 4.7.1.** *Let  $M$  and  $N$  be positive integers such that  $M \mid N$ . For any  $d \mid \frac{N}{M}$ ,  $[\alpha_d]$  maps  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(M))$  into  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$ .*

*Proof.* Mimicking the proof of Proposition 3.6.1 with  $k = 0$ , smoothness replacing holomorphy, and the analogous growth condition for Maass forms, the only piece left to verify is that  $f[\alpha_d]$  is an eigenfunction for  $\Delta$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda$  if  $f$  is. This is easy, for

$$\Delta(f[\alpha_d])(z) = (\Delta f)(dz) = \lambda f(dz) = \lambda(f[\alpha_d])(z).$$

Therefore  $f[\alpha_d]$  is an eigenfunction for  $\Delta$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda$ . This completes the proof.  $\square$

We can now define oldforms and newforms. For each divisor  $d$  of  $N$ , set

$$i_d : \mathcal{C}_t\left(\Gamma_1\left(\frac{N}{d}\right)\right) \times \mathcal{C}_t\left(\Gamma_1\left(\frac{N}{d}\right)\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N)) \quad (f, g) \mapsto f + g[\alpha_d].$$

This map is well-defined by Proposition 4.7.1. The subspace of **oldforms of level  $N$**  is

$$\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}} = \bigoplus_{p|N} \text{Im}(i_p),$$

and the subspace of **newforms of level  $N$**  is

$$\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}} = (\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}})^{\perp},$$

where the orthogonal complement is taken with respect to the Petersson inner product. The elements of such subspaces are called **oldforms** and **newforms** respectively. Both subspaces are invariant under the diamond and Hecke operators (mimic the proof of Proposition 3.6.2 given in [DS05]):

**Proposition 4.7.2.** *The spaces  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}}$  and  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  are invariant under the diamond operators  $\langle m \rangle$  and Hecke operators  $T_m$  for all  $m \geq 1$ .*

As a corollary, these subspaces admit orthogonal bases of eigenforms:

**Corollary 4.7.1.**  *$\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{old}}$  and  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  admit orthonormal bases of eigenforms.*

*Proof.* This follows immediately from Theorem 4.6.1 and Proposition 4.7.2 □

We can remove the condition  $(m, N) = 1$  for eigenforms in a basis of  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  so that the eigenforms are eigenfunctions for all of the diamond and Hecke operators. As for holomorphic forms, we need a preliminary result (mimic the proof of Lemma 3.6.1 as given in [DS05]):

**Lemma 4.7.1.** *If  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  with Fourier coefficients  $a_n(f)$  and such that  $a_n(f) = 0$  whenever  $(n, N) = 1$ , then*

$$f = \sum_{p|N} f_p[\alpha_p],$$

for some  $f_p \in \mathcal{C}_t\left(\Gamma_1\left(\frac{N}{p}\right)\right)$ .

As was the case for holomorphic forms, we observe from Lemma 4.7.1 that if  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  is such that its  $n$ -th Fourier coefficients vanish when  $n$  is relatively prime to the level, then  $f$  must be an oldform. The main theorem about  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  can now be proved. We say that  $f$  is a **primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform** if it is a nonzero Hecke normalized Hecke-Maass eigenform in  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$ . We can now prove the main result about newforms:

**Theorem 4.7.1.** *Let  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  be an eigenform. Then the following hold:*

(i)  *$f$  is a Hecke-Maass eigenform.*

(ii) *If  $\tilde{f}$  satisfies the same conditions as  $f$  and has the same eigenvalues for the Hecke operators, then  $\tilde{f} = cf$  for some nonzero constant  $c$ .*

Moreover, the primitive Hecke-Maass eigenforms in  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  form an orthogonal basis with respect to the Petersson inner product and each such primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform  $f$  lies in an eigenspace  $\mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$ .

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Theorem 3.6.1. □

Statement (i) in Theorem 4.7.1 implies that primitive Hecke-Maass eigenforms satisfy the Hecke relations for all  $n, m \geq 1$ . Statement (ii) in Theorem 4.7.1 is referred to as the **multiplicity one theorem** for Maass forms. So as is the case for holomorphic forms,  $\mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))^{\text{new}}$  contains one element per “eigenvalue” where we mean a set of eigenvalues one for each Hecke operator  $T_m$ . Since the Fourier coefficients are multiplicative, the Hecke relations imply that  $f$  is actually determined by its Fourier coefficients at primes.

**Theorem 4.7.2 (Multiplicity one, Maass version).** *Let  $f$  and  $g$  be primitive Hecke-Maass eigenforms of the same eigenvalue and level. Denote the Hecke eigenvalues by  $\lambda_f(n)$  and  $\lambda_g(n)$  respectively. If  $\lambda_f(p) = \lambda_g(p)$  for all primes  $p$ , then  $f = g$ .*

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of multiplicity one for holomorphic forms. □

Interestingly, unlike holomorphic forms it is unknown if the Fourier coefficients of Maass forms are real or even algebraic in general. We require one last piece of machinery. As for holomorphic forms, we have an involution on the space  $\mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$ . Recall the matrix

$$W_N = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ N & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

with  $\det(W_N) = N$ . We define the **Atkin–Lehner involution**  $\omega_N : \mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  to be the linear operator given by

$$(\omega_N f)(z) = f(W_N z) = f\left(-\frac{1}{Nz}\right).$$

To see that  $\omega_N$  is well-defined, first note that smoothness and the growth condition are obvious. For automorphy, recall that for  $\gamma = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_1(N)$ , we have

$$W_N \gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ N & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -c & -d \\ Na & Nb \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} d & -N^{-1}c \\ -Nb & a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ N & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \gamma' W_N,$$

with  $\gamma' = \begin{pmatrix} d & -N^{-1}c \\ -Nb & a \end{pmatrix} \in \Gamma_1(N)$ . Then

$$(\omega_N f)(\gamma z) = f(W_N \gamma z) = f(\gamma' W_N z) = f\left(-\frac{1}{Nz}\right) = (\omega_N f)(z).$$

This verifies automorphy for  $\omega_N f$ . Also, it is clear that  $\omega_N f$  is a cusp form because  $f$  is. Hence  $\omega_N f$  is well-defined. Moreover, it is an involution because  $\omega_N^2 f = f$  and so its only possible eigenvalues are  $\pm 1$ . The crucial fact we need is how  $\omega_N$  acts on  $\mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$ . To state the result, for  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$  define

$$\bar{f}(z) = \overline{f(-z)}.$$

Then we have the following (mimic the proof for holomorphic forms given in [CS17]):

**Proposition 4.7.3.** *If  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$  is a primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform, then*

$$\omega_N f = \omega_N(f) \bar{f},$$

where  $\bar{f} \in \mathcal{C}_t(N, \bar{\chi})$  is a primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform and  $\omega_N(f) \in \mathbb{C}$  is nonzero with  $|\omega_N(f)| = 1$ .

## 4.8 The Ramanujan-Petersson Conjecture

As for the size of the Fourier coefficients of weight zero Maass form, much is currently unknown. But there is an analogous conjecture to the one for holomorphic forms. To state it, suppose  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$  is a primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform with Fourier coefficients  $\lambda_f(n)$ . For each prime  $p$ , consider the polynomial

$$1 - \lambda_f(p)p^{-s} + \chi(p)p^{-2s}.$$

We call this the  $p$ -th **Hecke polynomial** of  $f$ . Let  $\alpha_1(p)$  and  $\alpha_2(p)$  denote the roots. Then

$$\alpha_1(p) + \alpha_2(p) = \lambda_f(p) \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha_1(p)\alpha_2(p) = \chi(p).$$

The **Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture** for Maass forms is following statement:

**Conjecture 4.8.1 (Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture, Maass version).** *Suppose  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$  is a primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform with Hecke eigenvalues  $\lambda_f(n)$ . Let  $\alpha_1(p)$  and  $\alpha_2(p)$  be the roots of the  $p$ -th Hecke polynomial. Then for all primes  $p$ ,*

$$|\lambda_f(p)| \leq 2.$$

Moreover, if  $p \nmid N$ , then

$$|\alpha_1(p)| = |\alpha_2(p)| = 1.$$

The Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture has not been proven, but there has been partial progress toward the conjecture. The current best bound is  $|\lambda_f(p)| \leq 2p^{\frac{7}{64}}$  and is due to Kim and Sarnak (see [KRS03] for the proof). Nevertheless, we can get close to the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture without much work. Let  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$  be a primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform. Fix some  $Y > 0$  and consider

$$\int_Y^\infty \int_0^1 |f(x + iy)|^2 \frac{dx dy}{y^2}.$$

Since  $f$  is a cusp form, this integral is absolutely bounded by Method 1.5.1. Moreover, this integral can be expressed as

$$\int_Y^\infty \int_0^1 \sum_{n, m \neq 0} \lambda_f(n) \overline{\lambda_f(m)} K_{it}(2\pi|n|y) \overline{K_{it}(2\pi|m|y)} e^{2\pi i(n-m)x} e^{-2\pi(n+m)y} \frac{dx dy}{y}.$$

Appealing to the dominated convergence theorem, we can interchange the sum and the inner integral. Then Equation (3.1) implies that the inner integral cuts off all of the terms except the diagonal resulting in

$$\int_Y^\infty \sum_{n \neq 0} |\lambda_f(n)|^2 |K_{it}(2\pi|n|y)|^2 e^{-4\pi ny} \frac{dx dy}{y}.$$

As this expression is finite, we have

$$|\lambda_f(n)|^2 \int_Y^\infty |K_{it}(2\pi|n|y)|^2 e^{-4\pi ny} \frac{dx dy}{y} \ll \int_Y^\infty \int_0^1 |f(x + iy)|^2 \frac{dx dy}{y^2},$$

where we note that the integral on the left-hand side is finite. Now  $f$  is bounded on  $\mathbb{H}$  so that

$$\int_Y^\infty \int_0^1 |f(x + iy)|^2 \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \ll \int_Y^\infty \int_0^1 \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \ll \frac{1}{Y}.$$

Putting these two estimates together gives

$$|\lambda_f(n)|^2 \int_Y^\infty |K_{it}(2\pi|n|y)|^2 e^{-4\pi ny} \frac{dx dy}{y} \ll \frac{1}{Y}.$$

Taking  $Y = \frac{1}{n}$  results in

$$\lambda_f(n) \ll n^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

This bound is known as the **Hecke bound** for Maass forms. However, the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture gives the bound  $\lambda_f(n) \ll \sigma_0(n)n^{\frac{1}{2}} \ll n^{\frac{1}{2}+\varepsilon}$ . It turns out that the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture is tightly connected to another conjecture of Selberg about the smallest possible eigenvalue of weight zero Maass form on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ . Note that the possible eigenvalues are discrete by Theorem 4.4.6 and so there exists a smallest eigenvalue. To state it, recall that if  $f$  is a Maass form with eigenvalue  $\lambda$  on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ , then  $\lambda = \frac{1}{4} + t^2$  with either  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  or  $it \in [0, \frac{1}{2})$ . **Selberg's eigenvalue conjecture** claims that the second case never occurs in weight zero:

**Conjecture 4.8.2 (Selberg's eigenvalue conjecture).** *If  $\lambda$  is the smallest eigenvalue for weight zero Maass forms on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ , then*

$$\lambda \geq \frac{1}{4}.$$

Selberg was able to achieve a remarkable lower bound using the analytic continuation of a certain Dirichlet series and the Weil bound for Kloosterman sums (see [Iwa02] for a proof):

**Theorem 4.8.1.** *If  $\lambda$  is the smallest eigenvalue for weight zero Maass forms on  $\Gamma \backslash \mathbb{H}$ , then*

$$\lambda \geq \frac{3}{16}.$$

In the language of automorphic representations, these two conjectures are a consequence of a much larger conjecture (see [BB13] for details).

## 4.9 Twists of Maass Forms

We can also twist of Maass forms by Dirichlet characters. Let  $f \in \mathcal{A}_t(N, \chi)$  with Fourier series

$$f(z) = a_0(f)y^{\frac{1}{2}+it} + b_0(f)y^{\frac{1}{2}-it} + \sum_{n \neq 0} a_n(f)\sqrt{y}K_{it}(2\pi|n|y)e^{2\pi inx}.$$

and let  $\psi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character modulo  $M$ . We define the **twisted Maass form**  $f \otimes \psi$  of  $f$  twisted by  $\psi$  by the Fourier series

$$(f \otimes \psi)(z) = a_0(f)\psi(0)y^{\frac{1}{2}+it} + b_0(f)\psi(0)y^{\frac{1}{2}-it} + \sum_{n \neq 0} a_n(f)\psi(n)\sqrt{y}K_{it}(2\pi|n|y)e^{2\pi inx}.$$

In order for  $f \otimes \psi$  to be well-defined, we need to prove that it is a Maass form. The following proposition proves this and more when  $\psi$  is primitive:

**Proposition 4.9.1.** *Suppose  $f \in \mathcal{A}_t(N, \chi)$  and  $\psi$  is a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q$ . Then  $f \otimes \psi \in \mathcal{A}_t(Nq^2, \chi\psi^2)$ . Moreover, if  $f$  is a cusp form then so is  $f \otimes \psi$ .*

*Proof.* Mimicking the proof of Proposition 3.8.2 with  $k = 0$ , smoothness replacing holomorphy, and the analogous growth condition for Maass forms, the only piece left to verify is that  $f \otimes \psi$  is an eigenfunction for  $\Delta$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda$  if  $f$  is in the case  $\psi$  is primitive. This is easy, since

$$\Delta(f \otimes \chi)(z) = \frac{1}{\tau(\psi)} \sum_{r \pmod{q}} \bar{\psi}(r) \Delta(f) \left( z + \frac{r}{q} \right) = \frac{\lambda}{\tau(\psi)} \sum_{r \pmod{q}} \bar{\psi}(r) f \left( z + \frac{r}{q} \right) = \lambda(f \otimes \chi)(z). \quad \square$$

The generalization of Proposition 4.9.1 to all characters is slightly more involved. Define operators  $U_p$  and  $V_p$  on  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  to be the linear operators given by

$$(U_p f)(z) = a_0(f) y^{\frac{1}{2}+it} + b_0(f) y^{\frac{1}{2}-it} + \sum_{n \neq 0} a_{np}(f) \sqrt{y} K_{it}(2\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x},$$

and

$$(V_p f)(z) = a_0(f) (py)^{\frac{1}{2}+it} + b_0(f) (py)^{\frac{1}{2}-it} + \sum_{n \neq 0} a_n(f) \sqrt{py} K_{it}(2\pi|n|py) e^{2\pi i n p x},$$

if  $f$  has Fourier series

$$f(z) = a_0(f) y^{\frac{1}{2}+it} + b_0(f) y^{\frac{1}{2}-it} + \sum_{n \neq 0} a_n(f) \sqrt{y} K_{it}(2\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x}.$$

We will show that both  $U_p$  and  $V_p$  map  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  into  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(Np))$  and more:

**Lemma 4.9.1.** *For any prime  $p$ ,  $U_p$  and  $V_p$  map  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$  into  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(Np))$ . In particular,  $U_p$  and  $V_p$  map  $\mathcal{A}_t(N, \chi)$  into  $\mathcal{A}_t(Np, \chi\chi_{p,0})$ . Moreover,  $U_p$  and  $V_p$  preserve the subspace of cusp forms.*

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Proposition 3.5.1.  $\square$

We can now generalize Proposition 4.9.1 to all characters:

**Proposition 4.9.2.** *Suppose  $f \in \mathcal{A}_t(N, \chi)$  and  $\psi$  is a Dirichlet character modulo  $M$ . Then  $f \otimes \psi \in \mathcal{A}_t(NM^2, \chi\psi^2)$ . Moreover, if  $f$  is a cusp form then so is  $f \otimes \psi$ .*

*Proof.* Mimicking the proof of Proposition 3.8.2, it remains to show that  $f \otimes \psi_{p,0}$  is an eigenfunction with eigenvalue  $\lambda$  if  $f$  is. As  $U_p = T_p$  for the  $p$ -th Hecke operator on  $\mathcal{A}_t(\Gamma_1(Np))$ ,  $U_p$  commutes with  $\Delta$ . It is also clear that  $V_p$  commutes with  $\Delta$ . These facts together with

$$f \otimes \psi_{p,0} = f - V_p U_p f,$$

show that  $f \otimes \psi_{p,0}$  is an eigenfunction with eigenvalue  $\lambda$  if  $f$  is.  $\square$

# Chapter 5

## Trace Formulas

There are various types of formulas that relate the Fourier coefficients of holomorphic and Maass forms to various other types of functions. One of the most important such formulas is the Petersson trace formula.

### 5.1 The Petersson Trace Formula

From Theorem 3.6.1,  $\mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$  admits an orthonormal basis of Hecke eigenforms (note that generally they are not Hecke normalized). Call this basis  $\{u_j\}_{1 \leq j \leq r}$  where  $r$  is the dimension of  $\mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$ . Each of these cusp forms admits a Fourier series

$$u_j(z) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a_j(n) e^{2\pi i n z}.$$

The Petersson trace formula is an equation relating the Fourier coefficients  $a_j(n)$  of the basis  $\{u_j\}_{1 \leq j \leq r}$  to a sum of  $J$ -Bessel functions and Salié sums. To prove the Petersson trace formula we compute the inner product of two Poincaré series  $P_{n,k,\chi}$  and  $P_{m,k,\chi}$  in two different ways. One way is geometric in nature using the unfolding method and the other uses the spectral theory of  $\mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$ . Since Equation (3.2) says that  $\langle P_{n,k,\chi}, P_{m,k,\chi} \rangle$  essentially extracts the  $m$ -th Fourier coefficient of  $P_{n,k,\chi}$ , the Petersson trace formula amounts to computing the  $m$ -th Fourier coefficient of  $P_{n,k,\chi}$  in two different ways. We will begin with the geometric method first which utilizes Equation (3.2). In order to make use of this equation we need to compute the Fourier series of  $P_{n,k,\chi}$  and this is achieved by the Poisson summation formula. From Remark 2.2.3, we have

$$P_{n,k,\chi}(z) = e^{2\pi i n z} + \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1, d \in \mathbb{Z} \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N} \\ (c,d)=1}} \bar{\chi}(d) \frac{e^{2\pi i n \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 z + cd} \right)}}{(cz + d)^k},$$

where  $a$  and  $b$  are chosen such that  $\det \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = 1$  and we have used the fact that

$$\frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 z + cd} = \frac{az + b}{cz + d}.$$

Now summing over all pairs  $(c, d)$  with  $c \geq 1$ ,  $d \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}$ , and  $(c, d) = 1$  is the same as summing over all triples  $(c, \ell, r)$  with  $c \geq 1$ ,  $\ell \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $r \pmod{c}$ , with  $c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}$  and  $(r, c) = 1$ . Indeed, this is seen by writing  $d = c\ell + r$ . Moreover, since  $ad - bc = 1$  we have  $a(c\ell + r) - bc = 1$  which further



implies that  $ar \equiv 1 \pmod{c}$ . So we may take  $a$  to be the inverse for  $r$  modulo  $c$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{\substack{c \geq 1, d \in \mathbb{Z} \\ (c, d) = 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}}} \bar{\chi}(d) \frac{e^{2\pi i n \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 z + cd} \right)}}{(cz + d)^k} &= \sum_{(c, \ell, r)} \bar{\chi}(c\ell + r) \frac{e^{2\pi i n \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 z + c^2 \ell + cr} \right)}}{(cz + c\ell + r)^k} \\
&= \sum_{(c, \ell, r)} \bar{\chi}(r) \frac{e^{2\pi i n \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 z + c^2 \ell + cr} \right)}}{(cz + c\ell + r)^k} \\
&= \sum'_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N} \\ r \pmod{c}}} \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{Z}} \bar{\chi}(r) \frac{e^{2\pi i n \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 z + c^2 \ell + cr} \right)}}{(cz + c\ell + r)^k} \\
&= \sum'_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N} \\ r \pmod{c}}} \bar{\chi}(r) \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{e^{2\pi i n \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 z + c^2 \ell + cr} \right)}}{(cz + c\ell + r)^k},
\end{aligned}$$

where the second line holds since  $\chi$  has conductor  $q \mid N$  and  $c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}$ . We will now apply the Poisson summation formula to the innermost sum. Set

$$I_{c,r}(z) = \sum_{\ell \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{e^{2\pi i n \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 z + c^2 \ell + cr} \right)}}{(cz + c\ell + r)^k}.$$

We will prove a transformation law for  $I_{c,r}(z)$ . Note that this function is holomorphic on  $\mathbb{H}$  because  $P_{n,k,\chi}(z)$  is holomorphic on  $\mathbb{H}$ . So by the identity theorem we may verify a transformation law on a set containing a limit point. Accordingly, set  $z = iy$  for  $y > 1$  and define

$$f(x) = \frac{e^{2\pi i n \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 x + cr + ic^2 y} \right)}}{(cx + r + icy)^k}.$$

To see that  $f(x)$  is Schwarz first observe

$$\operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 x + cr + ic^2 y} \right) = \operatorname{Im} \left( -\frac{1}{c^2 x + cr + ic^2 y} \right) = \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{c^2 x + cr - ic^2 y}{|c^2 x + cr + ic^2 y|} \right) = \frac{c^2 y}{|c^2 x + cr + ic^2 y|}.$$

It follows that  $\operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 x + cr + ic^2 y} \right)$  tends to zero as  $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$ . Moreover,  $|cx + r + icy| \geq |icy| \geq c$  so that

$$f(x) \ll \frac{e^{-2\pi n \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 x + cr + ic^2 y} \right)}}{c},$$

as  $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$ . Since the right-hand side of this estimate has exponential decay,  $f(x)$  is Schwarz. We now compute the Fourier transform:

$$\hat{f}(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{-2\pi i t x} dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{2\pi i n \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 x + cr + ic^2 y} \right)}}{(cx + r + icy)^k} e^{-2\pi i t x} dx.$$

Complexify the integral to get

$$\int_{\text{Im}(z)=0} \frac{e^{2\pi i n \left( \frac{a}{c} - \frac{1}{c^2 z + cr + ic^2 y} \right)}}{(cz + r + icy)^k} e^{-2\pi i t z} dz.$$

Now make the change of variables  $z \rightarrow z - \frac{r}{c} - iy$  to obtain

$$e^{2\pi i n \frac{a}{c} + 2\pi i t \left( iy + \frac{r}{c} \right)} \int_{\text{Im}(z)=y} \frac{e^{-\frac{2\pi i n}{c^2 z}}}{(cz)^k} e^{-2\pi i t z} dz.$$

The integrand is meromorphic with a pole only at  $z = 0$ . Therefore by shifting the line of integration we may take the limit as  $\text{Im}(z) \rightarrow \infty$  without picking up additional residues. However

$$\left| e^{-\frac{2\pi i n}{c^2 z}} \right| = e^{2\pi n \left( \frac{\text{Im}(z)}{|cz|^2} \right)} \quad \text{and} \quad \left| e^{-2\pi i t z} \right| = e^{2\pi t \text{Im}(z)}.$$

So as  $\text{Im}(z) \rightarrow \infty$ , the first expression has exponential decay and the second expression does too if and only if  $t < 0$ . Moreover, when  $t = 0$  the second expression is bounded. Altogether, this means that the integral vanishes if  $t \leq 0$ . It remains to compute the integral for  $t \geq 1$ . To do this, make the change of variables  $z \rightarrow -\frac{z}{2\pi i t}$  to the last integral to rewrite it as

$$\begin{aligned} -\frac{1}{2\pi i t} \int_{(2\pi t y)} \frac{e^{-\frac{4\pi^2 n t}{c^2 z}}}{\left(-\frac{cz}{2\pi i t}\right)^k} e^z dz &= -\frac{1}{2\pi i t} \int_{(2\pi t y)} \left(-\frac{2\pi i t}{cz}\right)^k e^{z - \frac{4\pi^2 n t}{c^2 z}} dz \\ &= \frac{(-2\pi i t)^{k-1}}{c^k} \int_{(2\pi t y)} z^{-k} e^{z - \frac{4\pi^2 n t}{c^2 z}} dz \\ &= \frac{(-2\pi i t)^{k-1}}{c^k} \int_{-\infty}^{(0^+)} z^{-k} e^{z - \frac{4\pi^2 n t}{c^2 z}} dz \\ &= \frac{2\pi i^{-k}}{c} \left(\frac{\sqrt{t}}{\sqrt{n}}\right)^{k-1} J_{k-1}\left(\frac{4\pi\sqrt{nt}}{c}\right), \end{aligned}$$

where in the second to last line we have homotoped the line of integration to a Hankel contour about the negative real axis and in the last line we have used the Schlöflin integral representation for the  $J$ -Bessel function (see Appendix B.7). So in total we obtain

$$\left( \frac{2\pi i^{-k}}{c} \left(\frac{\sqrt{t}}{\sqrt{n}}\right)^{k-1} J_{k-1}\left(\frac{4\pi\sqrt{nt}}{c}\right) e^{2\pi i n \frac{a}{c} + 2\pi i t \frac{r}{c}} \right) e^{2\pi i t y},$$

when  $t \geq 1$ . By the Poisson summation formula and the identity theorem, we have

$$I_{c,r}(z) = \sum_{t \geq 1} \left( \frac{2\pi i^{-k}}{c} \left(\frac{\sqrt{t}}{\sqrt{n}}\right)^{k-1} J_{k-1}\left(\frac{4\pi\sqrt{nt}}{c}\right) e^{2\pi i n \frac{a}{c} + 2\pi i t \frac{r}{c}} \right) e^{2\pi i t z},$$

for all  $z \in \mathbb{H}$ . Plugging this back into the Poincaré series gives a form of the Fourier series

$$\begin{aligned}
P_{n,k,\chi}(z) &= e^{2\pi i n z} + \sum'_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N} \\ r \pmod{c}}} \bar{\chi}(r) \sum_{t \geq 1} \left( \frac{2\pi i^{-k}}{c} \left( \frac{\sqrt{t}}{\sqrt{n}} \right)^{k-1} J_{k-1} \left( \frac{4\pi \sqrt{nt}}{c} \right) e^{2\pi i n \frac{a}{c} + 2\pi i t \frac{r}{c}} \right) e^{2\pi i n z} \\
&= \sum_{t \geq 1} \left( \delta_{n,t} + \left( \frac{\sqrt{t}}{\sqrt{n}} \right)^{k-1} \sum'_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N} \\ r \pmod{c}}} \bar{\chi}(r) \frac{2\pi i^{-k}}{c} J_{k-1} \left( \frac{4\pi \sqrt{nt}}{c} \right) e^{2\pi i n \frac{a}{c} + 2\pi i t \frac{r}{c}} \right) e^{2\pi i n z} \\
&= \sum_{t \geq 1} \left( \delta_{n,t} + \left( \frac{\sqrt{t}}{\sqrt{n}} \right)^{k-1} \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}}} \frac{2\pi i^{-k}}{c} J_{k-1} \left( \frac{4\pi \sqrt{nt}}{c} \right) \sum'_{r \pmod{c}} \bar{\chi}(r) e^{2\pi i n \frac{a}{c} + 2\pi i t \frac{r}{c}} \right) e^{2\pi i n z}.
\end{aligned}$$

We will simplify the innermost sum. Since  $a$  is the inverse for  $r$  modulo  $c$ , the innermost sum above becomes

$$\sum'_{r \pmod{c}} \bar{\chi}(r) e^{2\pi i n \frac{a}{c} + 2\pi i t \frac{r}{c}} = \sum'_{r \pmod{c}} \bar{\chi}(\bar{a}) e^{2\pi i n \frac{a}{c} + 2\pi i t \frac{\bar{a}}{c}} = \sum'_{a \pmod{c}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i (an + \bar{a}t)}{c}} = S_{\chi}(n, t; c).$$

So at last, we obtain our desired Fourier series

$$P_{n,k,\chi}(z) = \sum_{t \geq 1} \left( \delta_{n,t} + \left( \frac{\sqrt{t}}{\sqrt{n}} \right)^{k-1} \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}}} \frac{2\pi i^{-k}}{c} J_{k-1} \left( \frac{4\pi \sqrt{nt}}{c} \right) S_{\chi}(n, t; c) \right) e^{2\pi i n z}.$$

We can now derive the first half of the Petersson trace formula. Using Equation (3.2) we obtain

$$\langle P_{n,k,\chi}, P_{m,k,\chi} \rangle = \frac{\Gamma(k-1)}{V_{\Gamma_0(N)}(4\pi m)^{k-1}} \left( \delta_{n,m} + \left( \frac{\sqrt{m}}{\sqrt{n}} \right)^{k-1} \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}}} \frac{2\pi i^{-k}}{c} J_{k-1} \left( \frac{4\pi \sqrt{nm}}{c} \right) S_{\chi}(n, m; c) \right).$$

To obtain the second half of the Petersson trace formula, we use the fact that  $\{u_j\}_{1 \leq j \leq r}$  is an orthonormal basis and Equation (3.2) to write

$$\begin{aligned}
P_{n,k,\chi}(z) &= \sum_{1 \leq j \leq r} \langle P_{n,k,\chi}, u_j \rangle u_j(z) \\
&= \sum_{1 \leq j \leq r} \overline{\langle P_{n,k,\chi}, u_j \rangle} u_j(z) \\
&= \frac{\Gamma(k-1)}{V_{\Gamma_0(N)}(4\pi n)^{k-1}} \sum_{1 \leq j \leq r} a_j(n) u_j(z) \\
&= \frac{\Gamma(k-1)}{V_{\Gamma_0(N)}(4\pi n)^{k-1}} \sum_{1 \leq j \leq r} a_j(n) \sum_{t \geq 1} a_j(t) e^{2\pi i n z} \\
&= \sum_{t \geq 1} \left( \frac{\Gamma(k-1)}{V_{\Gamma_0(N)}(4\pi n)^{k-1}} \sum_{1 \leq j \leq r} \overline{a_j(n)} a_j(t) \right) e^{2\pi i n z}.
\end{aligned}$$

The last expression is an alternative representation of the Fourier series of  $P_{n,k,\chi}$ . Using Equation (3.2) again but applied to this representation, we obtain the second half of the Petersson trace formula

$$\langle P_{n,k,\chi}, P_{m,k,\chi} \rangle = \left( \frac{\Gamma(k-1)}{V_{\Gamma_0(N)}(4\pi\sqrt{nm})^{k-1}} \right)^2 \sum_{1 \leq j \leq r} \overline{a_j(n)} a_j(m).$$

Equating the first and second half and canceling the common  $\frac{\Gamma(k-1)}{V_{\Gamma_0(N)}(4\pi m)^{k-1}}$  factor gives

$$\frac{\Gamma(k-1)}{V_{\Gamma_0(N)}(4\pi n)^{k-1}} \sum_{1 \leq j \leq r} \overline{a_j(n)} a_j(m) = \delta_{n,m} + \left( \frac{\sqrt{m}}{\sqrt{n}} \right)^{k-1} \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}}} \frac{2\pi i^{-k}}{c} J_{k-1} \left( \frac{4\pi\sqrt{nm}}{c} \right) S_\chi(n, m; c).$$

Since  $\left( \frac{\sqrt{m}}{\sqrt{n}} \right)^{k-1} = 1$  when  $n = m$ , we can factor this term out of the entire right-hand side and cancel it resulting in the **Petersson trace formula**:

$$\frac{\Gamma(k-1)}{V_{\Gamma_0(N)}(4\pi\sqrt{nm})^{k-1}} \sum_{1 \leq j \leq r} \overline{a_j(n)} a_j(m) = \delta_{n,m} + \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}}} \frac{2\pi i^{-k}}{c} J_{k-1} \left( \frac{4\pi\sqrt{nm}}{c} \right) S_\chi(n, m; c).$$

We refer to the left-hand side as the **spectral side** and the right-hand side as the **geometric side**. We collect our work as a theorem:

**Theorem 5.1.1 (Petersson trace formula).** *Let  $\{u_j\}_{1 \leq j \leq r}$  be an orthonormal basis of Hecke eigenforms for  $\mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$  with Fourier coefficients  $a_j(n)$ . Then for any positive integers  $n, m \geq 1$ , we have*

$$\frac{\Gamma(k-1)}{V_{\Gamma_0(N)}(4\pi\sqrt{nm})^{k-1}} \sum_{1 \leq j \leq r} \overline{a_j(n)} a_j(m) = \delta_{n,m} + \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ c \equiv 0 \pmod{N}}} \frac{2\pi i^{-k}}{c} J_{k-1} \left( \frac{4\pi\sqrt{nm}}{c} \right) S_\chi(n, m; c).$$

## Part III

### An Introduction to $L$ -functions

# Chapter 6

## The Theory of $L$ -functions

We start our discussion of  $L$ -functions with Dirichlet series. Dirichlet series are essential tools in analytic number theory because they are a way of analytically encoding arithmetic information. If the Dirichlet series possesses sufficiently large analytic continuation we call it an  $L$ -function and from the analytic properties of  $L$ -functions we can extract number theoretic results. After discussing Dirichlet series we will define  $L$ -functions and their associated data. We will also define a special class of  $L$ -functions called the Selberg class. Selberg class  $L$ -functions are conjectured to satisfy two results known as the Riemann hypothesis and Lindelöf hypothesis which we also introduce in some generality.

### 6.1 Dirichlet Series

A **Dirichlet series**  $D(s)$  is a sum of the form

$$D(s) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n)}{n^s},$$

with  $a(n) \in \mathbb{C}$ . We exclude the case  $a(n) = 0$  for all  $n \geq 1$  so that  $D(s)$  is not identically zero. We would first like to understand where this series converges. It does not take much for  $D(s)$  to converge uniformly in a sector:

**Theorem 6.1.1.** *Suppose  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series that converges at  $s_0 = \sigma_0 + it_0$ . Then for any  $H > 0$ ,  $D(s)$  converges uniformly in the sector*

$$\{s \in \mathbb{C} : \sigma \geq \sigma_0, |t - t_0| \leq H(\sigma - \sigma_0)\}.$$

*Proof.* Set  $R(u) = \sum_{n \geq u} \frac{a(n)}{n^{s_0}}$  so that  $a(n) = (R(n) - R(n+1))n^{s_0}$ . Then for any two positive integers  $N$  and  $M$  with  $1 \leq M < N$ , partial summation (see Appendix B.3) implies

$$\sum_{M \leq n \leq N} \frac{a(n)}{n^s} = R(M)M^{s_0-s} - R(N)N^{s_0-s} - \sum_{M+1 \leq n \leq N} R(n)((n-1)^{s_0-s} - n^{s_0-s}). \quad (6.1)$$

We will now express the sum on the right-hand side as an integral. To do this, observe that

$$(n-1)^{s_0-s} - n^{s_0-s} = -(s_0-s) \int_{n-1}^n u^{s_0-s-1} du.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{M+1 \leq n \leq N} R(n)((n-1)^{s_0-s} - n^{s_0-s}) &= -(s_0 - s) \sum_{M+1 \leq n \leq N} R(n) \int_{n-1}^n u^{s_0-s-1} du \\
&= -(s_0 - s) \sum_{M+1 \leq n \leq N} \int_{n-1}^n R(u) u^{s_0-s-1} du \\
&= -(s_0 - s) \int_M^N R(u) u^{s_0-s-1} du,
\end{aligned} \tag{6.2}$$

where the second to last line follows because  $R(u)$  is constant on the interval  $[u, u+1)$ . Combining Equations (6.1) and (6.2) gives

$$\sum_{M \leq n \leq N} \frac{a(n)}{n^s} = R(M)M^{s_0-s} - R(N)N^{s_0-s} + (s_0 - s) \int_M^N R(u) u^{s_0-s-1} du. \tag{6.3}$$

Now there exists an  $M$  such that  $|R(u)| < \varepsilon$  for all  $u \geq M$  because  $D(s)$  is convergent at  $s_0$ . In particular,  $|R(u)u^{s_0-s}| < \varepsilon$  for all  $u \geq M$  because  $\sigma \geq \sigma_0$ . Moreover for  $s$  in the prescribed sector,

$$|s - s_0| \leq (\sigma - \sigma_0) + |t - t_0| \leq (H+1)(\sigma - \sigma_0).$$

These estimates and Equation (6.3) together imply

$$\left| \sum_{M \leq n \leq N} \frac{a(n)}{n^s} \right| \leq 2\varepsilon + \varepsilon|s - s_0| \int_M^N u^{\sigma_0-\sigma-1} du \leq 2\varepsilon + \varepsilon(H+1)(\sigma - \sigma_0) \int_M^N u^{\sigma_0-\sigma-1} du.$$

Since the integral is finite,  $\sum_{M \leq n \leq N} \frac{a(n)}{n^s}$  can be made arbitrarily small uniformly for  $s$  in the desired sector. The claim now follows by the uniform version of Cauchy's criterion.  $\square$

By taking  $H \rightarrow \infty$  in Theorem 6.1.1 we see that  $D(s)$  converges in the region  $\sigma > \sigma_0$ . Let  $\sigma_c$  be the infimum of all  $\sigma$  for which  $D(s)$  converges. We call  $\sigma_c$  the **abscissa of convergence** of  $D(s)$ . Similarly, let  $\sigma_a$  be the infimum of all  $\sigma$  for which  $D(s)$  converges absolutely. Since the terms of  $D(s)$  are holomorphic, the convergence is locally absolutely uniform (actually uniform in sectors) for  $\sigma > \sigma_a$ . It follows that  $D(s)$  is holomorphic in the region  $\sigma > \sigma_a$ . We call  $\sigma_a$  the **abscissa of absolute convergence** of  $D(s)$ . One should think of  $\sigma_c$  and  $\sigma_a$  as the boundaries of convergence and absolute convergence respectively. Of course, anything can happen at  $\sigma = \sigma_c$  and  $\sigma = \sigma_a$ , but to the right of these lines we have convergence and absolute convergence of  $D(s)$  respectively. It turns out that  $\sigma_a$  is never far from  $\sigma_c$  provided  $\sigma_c$  is finite:

**Theorem 6.1.2.** *If  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series with finite abscissa of convergence  $\sigma_c$ , then*

$$\sigma_c \leq \sigma_a \leq \sigma_c + 1.$$

*Proof.* The first inequality is trivial since absolute convergence implies convergence. For the second inequality, since  $D(s)$  converges at  $\sigma_c + \varepsilon$ , the terms  $a(n)n^{-(\sigma_c+\varepsilon)}$  tend to zero as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Therefore  $a(n) \ll_\varepsilon n^{\sigma_c+\varepsilon}$  where the implicit constant is independent of  $n$ . But then  $a(n)n^{-(\sigma_c+\varepsilon)} \ll_\varepsilon 1$  which implies  $\sum_{n \geq 1} a(n)n^{-(\sigma_c+1+2\varepsilon)}$  is absolutely convergent by the comparison test with respect to  $\sum_{n \geq 1} n^{-(1+\varepsilon)}$ . In terms of  $D(s)$ , this means  $\sigma_a \leq \sigma_c + 1 + 2\varepsilon$  and taking  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  gives the second inequality.  $\square$

We will now introduce several convergence theorems for Dirichlet series. It will be useful to setup some notation first. If  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series with coefficients  $a(n)$ , then for  $X > 0$ , we set

$$A(X) = \sum_{n \leq X} a(n) \quad \text{and} \quad A^*(X) = \sum_{n \leq X} |a(n)|.$$

These are the partial sums of the coefficients  $a(n)$  and  $|a(n)|$  up to  $X$  respectively. Our first convergence theorem relates boundedness of  $A(X)$  to the value of  $\sigma_c$ :

**Proposition 6.1.1.** *Suppose  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series and that  $A(X) \ll 1$ . Then  $\sigma_c \leq 0$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $s$  be such that  $\sigma > 0$ . Since  $A(X) \ll 1$ ,  $A(X)X^{-s} \rightarrow 0$  as  $X \rightarrow \infty$ . Abel's summation formula (see Appendix B.3) then implies

$$D(s) = s \int_1^\infty A(u) u^{-(s+1)} du.$$

But because  $A(u) \ll 1$ , we have

$$s \int_1^\infty A(u) u^{-(s+1)} du \ll s \int_1^\infty u^{-(\sigma+1)} du = -\frac{s}{\sigma} u^{-\sigma} \Big|_1^\infty = \frac{s}{\sigma}.$$

Therefore the integral converges for  $\sigma > 0$  and hence  $D(s)$  does too. It follows that  $\sigma_c \leq 0$ .  $\square$

Our next theorem states that if the coefficients of  $D(s)$  are of polynomial growth, we can obtain an upper bound for the abscissa of absolute convergence:

**Proposition 6.1.2.** *Suppose  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series whose coefficients satisfy  $a(n) \ll_\alpha n^\alpha$  for some real  $\alpha$ . Then the abscissa of absolute convergence satisfies  $\sigma_a \leq 1 + \alpha$ .*

*Proof.* It suffices to show that  $D(s)$  is absolutely convergent in the region  $\sigma > 1 + \alpha$ . For  $s$  is in this region, the polynomial bound gives

$$D(s) \ll \sum_{n \geq 1} \left| \frac{a(n)}{n^s} \right| \ll_\alpha \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{n^{\sigma-\alpha}}.$$

The latter series converges by the integral test because  $\sigma - \alpha > 1$ . Therefore  $D(s)$  is absolutely convergent.  $\square$

Obtaining polynomial bounds on coefficients of Dirichlet series are, in most cases, not hard to establish. So the assumption in Proposition 6.1.2 is mild. Actually, there is a partial converse to Proposition 6.1.2 which gives an approximate size to  $A(X)$ :

**Proposition 6.1.3.** *Suppose  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series with finite and nonnegative abscissa of absolute convergence  $\sigma_a$ . Then*

$$A(X) \ll_\varepsilon X^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon}.$$

*Proof.* By Abel's summation formula (see Appendix B.3),

$$\sum_{n \leq X} \frac{a(n)}{n^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon}} = A(X) X^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon)} + (\sigma_a + \varepsilon) \int_0^X A(u) u^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon + 1)} du. \quad (6.4)$$

If we set  $R(u) = \sum_{n \geq u} \frac{a(n)}{n^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon}}$ , then  $a(n) = (R(n) - R(n+1))n^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon}$  and it follows that

$$A(u) = \sum_{n \leq u} (R(n) - R(n+1))n^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon}.$$



Substituting this into Equation (6.4), we obtain

$$\int_0^X \sum_{n \leq u} (R(n) - R(n+1)) n^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon} u^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon + 1)} du.$$

As  $R(n)$  is constant on the interval  $[n, n+1)$ , linearity of the integral implies

$$\int_0^X \sum_{n \leq u} (R(n) - R(n+1)) n^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon} u^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon + 1)} du = \sum_{0 \leq n \leq X} (R(n) - R(n+1)) n^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon} \int_n^{n+1} u^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon + 1)} du + O_\varepsilon(1),$$

where the  $O$ -estimate is present since  $X$  may not be an integer. Now  $R(n) \ll_\varepsilon 1$  since it is the tail of  $D(\sigma_a + \varepsilon)$  and moreover,

$$\int_n^{n+1} u^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon + 1)} du = -\frac{u^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon)}}{\sigma_a + \varepsilon} \Big|_n^{n+1} = \frac{n^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon)}}{\sigma_a + \varepsilon} - \frac{(n+1)^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon)}}{\sigma_a + \varepsilon} \ll_\varepsilon 1,$$

because  $\sigma_a + \varepsilon > 0$ . So

$$\int_0^X A(u) u^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon + 1)} du = \int_0^X \sum_{n \leq u} (R(n) - R(n+1)) n^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon} u^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon + 1)} du \ll_\varepsilon 1.$$

Also,  $\sum_{n \leq X} \frac{a(n)}{n^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon}} \ll_\varepsilon 1$  because  $D(\sigma_a + \varepsilon)$  converges. We conclude

$$A(X) X^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon)} = \sum_{n \leq X} \frac{a(n)}{n^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon}} - (\sigma_a + \varepsilon) \int_0^X A(u) u^{-(\sigma_a + \varepsilon + 1)} du \ll_\varepsilon 1,$$

which is equivalent to the desired estimate.  $\square$

A way to think about Proposition 6.1.3 is that if the abscissa of absolute convergence is  $\sigma_a \geq 0$  then the size of the coefficients  $a(n)$  is at most  $n^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon}$  on average. Of course, if  $a(n) \ll_\alpha n^\alpha$  then Proposition 6.1.2 implies that  $\sigma_a \leq 1 + \alpha$  and so Proposition 6.1.3 gives the significantly weaker estimate  $A(X) \ll_\varepsilon X^{1+\alpha+\varepsilon}$ . However, if we have a bound of the form  $A^*(X) \ll_\alpha X^\alpha$  we can still obtain an upper estimate for the abscissa of absolute convergence:

**Proposition 6.1.4.** *Suppose  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series such that  $A^*(X) \ll_\alpha X^\alpha$  for some real  $\alpha \geq 0$ . Then the abscissa of absolute convergence satisfies  $\sigma_a \leq \alpha$ .*

*Proof.* It suffices to show that  $D(s)$  is absolutely convergent in the region  $\sigma > \alpha$ . Let  $s$  be in this region. Then

$$D(s) \ll \sum_{n \geq 1} \left| \frac{a(n)}{n^s} \right| = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{|a(n)|}{n^\sigma}.$$

By Abel's summation formula (see Appendix B.3),

$$\sum_{n \leq N} \frac{|a(n)|}{n^\sigma} = |a(N)| N^{-\sigma} - |a(1)| + \sigma \int_1^N A^*(u) u^{-(\sigma+1)} du,$$

By assumption  $A^*(u) \ll_\alpha u^\alpha$  so that there is some  $N'$  such that  $A^*(N) \ll_\alpha N^\alpha$  for all  $N \geq N'$ . In particular  $a(N) \ll_\alpha N^\alpha$ . So for such  $N$ , we estimate as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \leq N} \frac{|a(n)|}{n^\sigma} &= |a(N)|N^{-\sigma} - |a(1)| + \sigma \int_1^N A^*(u)u^{-(\sigma+1)} du \\ &= |a(N)|N^{-\sigma} - |a(1)| + \sigma \int_1^{N'} A^*(u)u^{-(\sigma+1)} du + \sigma \int_{N'}^N A^*(u)u^{-(\sigma+1)} du \\ &\ll_\alpha |a(N)|N^{-\sigma} + |a(1)| + \sigma \int_1^{N'} |A^*(u)|u^{-(\sigma+1)} du + \sigma \int_{N'}^N u^{\alpha-(\sigma+1)} du. \end{aligned}$$

As  $N \rightarrow \infty$ , the left-hand side tends towards  $\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{|a(n)|}{n^\sigma}$ . As for the right-hand side, the first term tends to zero since  $\sigma > \alpha$ . The second and third terms remain bounded as they are independent of  $N$ . For the last term, we compute

$$\int_{N'}^N u^{\alpha-(\sigma+1)} du = \frac{u^{\alpha-\sigma}}{\alpha-\sigma} \Big|_{N'}^N = \frac{N^{\alpha-\sigma}}{\alpha-\sigma} - \frac{(N')^{\alpha-\sigma}}{\alpha-\sigma}.$$

But  $\sigma > \alpha$  so this term is also bounded as  $N \rightarrow \infty$ . This finishes the proof.  $\square$

Do not be fooled; Proposition 6.1.4 is in general weaker than Proposition 6.1.2. For example, from our comments following Proposition 6.1.3, if  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series with coefficients  $a(n)$  and we have the estimate  $A^*(X) \ll_\beta X^\beta$  for some real  $\beta$  then Proposition 6.1.4 only says that  $\sigma_a \leq \beta$ . If  $\alpha$  is very small compared to  $\beta$ , this is a significantly worse upper bound for the abscissa of absolute convergence than what Proposition 6.1.2 would imply if  $a(n) \ll_\alpha n^\alpha$ . Actually, the question of sharp polynomial bounds for Dirichlet coefficients can be very deep. However, if the coefficients  $a(n)$  are always nonnegative, then **Landau's theorem** provides a way of obtaining a lower bound for their growth as well as describing a singularity of  $D(s)$ :

**Theorem 6.1.3 (Landau's theorem).** *Suppose  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series with nonnegative coefficients  $a(n)$  and finite abscissa of absolute convergence  $\sigma_a$ . Then  $\sigma_a$  is a singularity of  $D(s)$ .*

*Proof.* If we replace  $a(n)$  by  $a(n)n^{-\sigma_a}$  then we may assume  $\sigma_a = 0$ . Now suppose to the contrary that  $D(s)$  was holomorphic at  $s = 0$ . Therefore for some  $\delta > 0$ ,  $D(s)$  is holomorphic in the domain

$$\mathcal{D} = \{s : \sigma_a > 0\} \cup \{|s| < \delta\}.$$

Write  $D(s)$  as a power series at  $s = 1$ :

$$P(s) = \sum_{k \geq 0} c_k (s-1)^k,$$

where

$$c_k = \frac{D^{(k)}(1)}{k!} = \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n)(-\log(n))^k}{n},$$

because  $D(s)$  is holomorphic and so we can differentiate termwise. The radius of convergence of  $P(s)$  is the distance from  $s = 1$  to the nearest singularity of  $P(s)$ . Since  $P(s)$  is holomorphic on  $\mathcal{D}$ , the closest points are  $\pm i\delta$ . Therefore, the radius of convergence is at least  $|1 \pm i\delta| = \sqrt{1 + \delta^2}$ . We can write  $\sqrt{1 + \delta^2} = 1 + \delta'$  for some  $\delta' > 0$ . Then for  $|s-1| < 1 + \delta'$ , write  $P(s)$  as

$$P(s) = \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{(s-1)^k}{k!} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n)(-\log(n))^k}{n} = \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{(1-s)^k}{k!} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n)(\log(n))^k}{n}.$$

If  $s$  is real with  $s < 1$ , then this last double sum is a sum of positive terms because  $a(n) \geq 0$ . Moreover, since  $D(s)$  is convergent here the two sums can be interchanged by the dominated convergence theorem. Interchanging sums we see that

$$P(s) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n)}{n} \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{(1-s)^k (\log(n))^k}{k!} = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n)}{n} e^{(1-s) \log(n)} = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n)}{n^s} = D(s),$$

for  $-\delta' < s < 1$ . As  $\delta' > 0$ , this implies that  $D(s)$  converges absolutely (since  $a(n)$  is nonnegative) for some  $s < 0$  (say  $s = -\frac{\delta'}{2}$ ) which contradicts  $\sigma_a = 0$ .  $\square$

Landau's theorem is very useful as it implies that if  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series with nonnegative coefficients then  $a(n) \not\ll_{\varepsilon} n^{\sigma_a - (1+\varepsilon)}$  because otherwise Proposition 6.1.2 implies  $\sigma_a \leq \sigma_a - \varepsilon$ . Actually, Landau's theorem also implies  $A^*(X) \not\ll_{\varepsilon} X^{\sigma_a - \varepsilon}$  for otherwise Proposition 6.1.4 would similarly imply  $\sigma_a \leq \sigma_a - \varepsilon$ . When we come across Dirichlet series whose coefficients are of polynomial growth or of polynomial growth on average, we will invoke these results without mention, except for Landau's theorem, as this is also common practice in the literature. Generally speaking, if the coefficients  $a(n)$  are chosen at random,  $D(s)$  will not possess any good properties outside of convergence in some region (it might not even possess that). However, the Dirichlet series we will encounter, and most of interest in the wild, will have multiplicative coefficients. In this case, the Dirichlet series admits an infinite product expression:

**Proposition 6.1.5.** *Suppose the coefficients  $a(n)$  of a Dirichlet series  $D(s)$  are multiplicative and satisfy  $a(n) \ll_{\alpha} n^{\alpha}$  for some real  $\alpha \geq 0$ . Then*

$$D(s) = \prod_p \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{a(p^k)}{p^{ks}} \right),$$

for  $\sigma > 1 + \alpha$ . Conversely, suppose that there are coefficients  $a(n)$  such that

$$\prod_p \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} \left| \frac{a(p^k)}{p^{ks}} \right| \right),$$

converges for  $\sigma > 1 + \alpha$ . Then the equality above defines a Dirichlet series  $D(s)$  that converges absolutely in this region too. Moreover, if the coefficients  $a(n)$  are completely multiplicative, then

$$D(s) = \prod_p (1 - a(p)p^{-s})^{-1},$$

for  $\sigma > 1 + \alpha$ .

*Proof.* Since  $a(n) \ll_{\alpha} n^{\alpha}$ , Proposition 6.1.2 implies that  $D(s)$  converges absolutely for  $\sigma > 1 + \alpha$ . Let  $s$  be such that  $\sigma > 1 + \alpha$ . Since

$$\sum_{k \geq 0} \left| \frac{a(p^k)}{p^{ks}} \right| < \sum_{n \geq 1} \left| \frac{a(n)}{n^s} \right|,$$

the infinite series on the left converges because the right does by the absolute convergence of  $D(s)$ . Now let  $N > 0$  be an integer. Then by the fundamental theorem of arithmetic

$$\prod_{p < N} \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{a(p^k)}{p^{ks}} \right) = \sum_{n < N} \frac{a(n)}{n^s} + \sum_{n \geq N}^* \frac{a(n)}{n^s}, \quad (6.5)$$

where the  $*$  denotes that we are summing over only those additional terms  $\frac{a(n)}{n^s}$  that appear in the expanded product on the left-hand side with  $n \geq N$ . As  $N \rightarrow \infty$ , the first sum on the right-hand side tends to  $D(s)$  and the second sum tends to zero because it is part of the tail of  $D(s)$  (which tends to zero by convergence). This proves that the product converges, and is equal to  $D(s)$ . Equation (6.5) also holds absolutely in the sense that

$$\prod_{p < N} \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} \left| \frac{a(p^k)}{p^{ks}} \right| \right) = \sum_{n < N} \left| \frac{a(n)}{n^s} \right| + \sum_{n \geq N}^* \left| \frac{a(n)}{n^s} \right|, \quad (6.6)$$

since  $D(s)$  converges absolutely. For the converse statement, since the product

$$\prod_p \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} \left| \frac{a(p^k)}{p^{ks}} \right| \right),$$

converges for  $\sigma > 1 + \alpha$  each factor is necessarily finite. That is, for each prime  $p$  the series  $\sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{a(p^k)}{p^{ks}}$  converges absolutely in this region. Now fix an integer  $N > 0$ . Then Equation (6.6) holds. Taking  $N \rightarrow \infty$  in Equation (6.6), the left-hand side converges by assumption. Therefore the right-hand side does too. But the first sum on the right-hand side tends to

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \left| \frac{a(n)}{n^s} \right|,$$

and the second sum is part of its tail. So the first sum must converge hence defining an absolutely convergent Dirichlet series in  $\sigma > 1 + \alpha$ , and the second sum must tend to zero. Lastly, if the  $a(n)$  are completely multiplicative the formula for a geometric series gives

$$\prod_p \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{a(p^k)}{p^{ks}} \right) = \prod_p \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} \left( \frac{a(p)}{p^s} \right)^k \right) = \prod_p (1 - a(p)p^{-s})^{-1}. \quad \square$$

Note that in Proposition 6.1.5, the requirement for a product to define an absolutely convergent Dirichlet series is that the series defining the factors in the product must be absolutely convergent. Thankfully, this is always the case for geometric series. Now suppose  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series that has the product expression

$$D(s) = \prod_p (1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})^{-1} (1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s})^{-1} \cdots (1 - \alpha_d(p)p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

We call this product the **Euler product** of  $D(s)$ , and it is said to be of **degree**  $d$ . In Proposition 6.1.5, complete multiplicativity of the coefficients is enough to guarantee that  $D(s)$  has an Euler product of degree 1, but in general  $D(s)$  will admit an Euler product of degree  $d > 1$  if the coefficients are only multiplicative but satisfy additional properties like a recurrence relation. When we come across Dirichlet series whose coefficients are multiplicative or we are given an Euler product we will use Proposition 6.1.5 without mention as this is common practice in the literature. Lastly, if  $D(s)$  has an Euler product then for any  $N \geq 1$  we let  $D^{(N)}(s)$  denote the Dirichlet series with the factors  $p \mid N$  in the Euler product removed. That is,

$$D^{(N)}(s) = D(s) \prod_{p \mid N} (1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s}) (1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s}) \cdots (1 - \alpha_d(p)p^{-s}).$$

## 6.2 Perron Formulas

With the Mellin inversion formula, it is not hard to prove a very useful integral expression for the sum of coefficients of a Dirichlet series. First, we setup some general notation. If  $D(s)$  is a Dirichlet series with coefficients  $a(n)$ , then for  $X > 0$ , we set

$$A'(X) = \sum'_{n \leq X} a(n),$$

where the  $'$  indicates that the last term is multiplied by  $\frac{1}{2}$  if  $X$  is an integer. We would like to relate  $A'(X)$  to an integral involving the entire Dirichlet series  $D(s)$ . In particular, this integral is a type of inverse Mellin transform. Any formula that relates a finite sum of coefficients of a Dirichlet series to an integral involving the entire Dirichlet series is called a **Perron-type formula**. We will see several of them, the first being **(classical) Perron's formula** which is a consequence of Abel's summation formula and the Mellin inversion formula applied to Dirichlet series:

**Theorem 6.2.1 (Perron's formula, classical version).** *Let  $D(s)$  be a Dirichlet series with coefficient  $a(n)$  and finite and nonnegative abscissa of absolute convergence  $\sigma_a$ . Then for any  $c > \sigma_a$ ,*

$$A'(X) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(c)} D(s) X^s \frac{ds}{s}.$$

*Proof.* Let  $s$  be such that  $\sigma > \sigma_a$ . By Abel's summation formula (see Appendix B.3),

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n)}{n^s} = \lim_{Y \rightarrow \infty} A'(Y) Y^{-s} + s \int_1^\infty A'(u) u^{-(s+1)} du.$$

Now  $A'(Y) \leq A(Y)$  and  $A(Y) \ll_\varepsilon Y^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon}$  by Proposition 6.1.3 so that  $A'(Y) Y^{-s} \ll_\varepsilon Y^{\sigma_a + \varepsilon - \sigma}$ . Choosing  $\varepsilon < \sigma - \sigma_a$ , this latter term tends to zero as  $Y \rightarrow \infty$ , which implies that  $A'(Y) Y^{-s} \rightarrow 0$  as  $Y \rightarrow \infty$ . Therefore we can write the equation above as

$$\frac{D(s)}{s} = \int_1^\infty A'(u) u^{-(s+1)} du = \int_0^\infty A'(u) u^{-(s+1)} du,$$

where the second equality follows because  $A(u) = 0$  in the interval  $[0, 1)$ . The Mellin inversion formula immediately gives the result.  $\square$

We would like to relate this sum to an integral involving the entire Dirichlet series  $D(s)$ . In particular, this integral is a type of inverse Mellin transform. Any formula that resembles Perron's formula is particularly useful because it allows one examine a sum of Dirichlet coefficients, a discrete object, by means of a complex integral where analytic techniques are at our disposal. There is also a truncated version of Perron's formula which is often more useful for estimates rather than abstract results. To state it, we need to setup some notation and will require a lemma. For any  $c > 0$ , consider the discontinuous integral (see [Dav80])

$$\delta(y) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(c)} y^s \frac{ds}{s} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } 0 < y < 1, \\ \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } y = 1, \\ 1 & \text{if } y > 1. \end{cases}$$

Also, for any  $T > 0$ , let

$$I(y, T) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} y^s \frac{ds}{s},$$

be  $\delta(y)$  truncated outside of height  $T$ . The lemma we require gives an approximation for how close  $I(y, T)$  is to  $\delta(y)$  (see [Dav80] for a proof):

**Lemma 6.2.1.** *For any  $c > 0$ ,  $y > 0$ , and  $T > 0$ , we have*

$$I(y, T) - \delta(y) = \begin{cases} O\left(y^c \min\left(1, \frac{1}{T|\log(y)|}\right)\right) & \text{if } y \neq 1, \\ O\left(\frac{c}{T}\right) & \text{if } y = 1. \end{cases}$$

We can now state and prove **(truncated) Perron's formula**:

**Theorem 6.2.2 (Perron's formula, truncated version).** *Let  $D(s)$  be a Dirichlet series with coefficient  $a(n)$  and finite and nonnegative abscissa of absolute convergence  $\sigma_a$ . Then for any  $c > \sigma_a$  and  $T > 0$ ,*

$$A'(X) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} D(s) X^s \frac{ds}{s} + O\left(X^c \sum_{\substack{n \geq 1 \\ n \neq X}} \frac{a(n)}{n^c} \min\left(1, \frac{1}{T|\log(\frac{X}{n})|}\right) + \delta_X a(X) \frac{c}{T}\right),$$

where  $\delta_X = 1, 0$  according to if  $X$  is an integer or not.

*Proof.* By Appendix D.1, we have

$$A'(X) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a(n) \delta\left(\frac{X}{n}\right).$$

Using Lemma 6.2.1, we may replace  $\delta\left(\frac{X}{n}\right)$  and obtain

$$A'(X) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a(n) \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} \frac{X^s}{n^s} \frac{ds}{s} + \sum_{\substack{n \geq 1 \\ n \neq X}} a(n) O\left(\frac{X^c}{n^c} \min\left(1, \frac{1}{T|\log(\frac{X}{n})|}\right)\right) + \delta_X a(X) O\left(\frac{c}{T}\right).$$

Since  $D(s)$  converges absolutely the sum may be moved inside of the first  $O$ -estimate. Then combine the two  $O$ -estimates. The dominated convergence theorem implies we may interchange the sum and the integral. The statement of the lemma follows.  $\square$

There is a slightly weaker variant of truncated Perron's formula that follows as a corollary:

**Corollary 6.2.1.** *Let  $D(s)$  be a Dirichlet series with coefficient  $a(n)$  and finite and nonnegative abscissa of absolute convergence  $\sigma_a$ . Then for any  $c > \sigma_a$  and  $T > 0$ ,*

$$A'(X) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} D(s) X^s \frac{ds}{s} + O\left(\frac{X^c}{T}\right),$$

*Proof.* For sufficiently large  $X$ , we have

$$\min\left(1, \frac{1}{T|\log(\frac{X}{n})|}\right) \ll \frac{X^c}{T}.$$

The statement now follows from truncated Perron's formula.  $\square$

There is also a version of Perron's formula where we add a smoothing function. For any  $X > 0$ , we set

$$A_\psi(X) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a(n) g\left(\frac{n}{X}\right),$$

where  $\psi : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  is smooth function such that  $\psi(y) \rightarrow 0$  as  $y \rightarrow \infty$ . This is most useful in two cases. The first is when we choose  $\psi(y)$  to be a bump function. In this setting, the bump function applies weight 1 or 0 to the Dirichlet coefficients  $a(n)$  and we can estimate sums like

$$\sum_{\frac{X}{2} \leq n < X} a(n) \quad \text{or} \quad \sum_{X \leq n < X+Y} a(n),$$

for some  $X$  and  $Y$  with  $Y < X$ . Sums of this type are called **unweighted**. As an example of an unweighted sum, let  $\psi : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  be a bump function that is identically 1 on  $[0, 1]$  and has compact support within the interval  $[1, \frac{X+1}{X}]$ . Explicitly,

$$\psi(y) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 0 \leq y \leq 1, \\ e^{-\frac{1-y}{\frac{X+1}{X}-y}} & \text{if } 1 \leq y < \frac{X+1}{X}, \\ 0 & \text{if } y \geq \frac{X+1}{X}. \end{cases}$$

Then

$$A_\psi(X) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a(n) \psi\left(\frac{n}{X}\right) = \sum_{n \leq X} a(n).$$

In the second case, we want  $\psi$  to dampen the  $a(n)$  with a weight other than 1 or 0. Sums of this type are called **weighted**. In any case, suppose the support of  $\psi(y)$  is contained in  $[0, M]$ . These conditions will force the Mellin transform  $\Psi(s)$  of  $\psi(y)$  to exist and have nice properties. To see that  $\Psi(s)$  exists, let  $K$  be a compact set in the region  $\sigma > 0$  and let  $\beta = \min_{s \in K} \{\sigma\}$ . Note that  $\psi(y)$  is bounded because it is compactly supported. Then for  $s \in K$ ,

$$\Psi(s) = \int_0^\infty \psi(y) y^s \frac{dy}{y} \ll \int_0^M y^{\sigma-1} dy = \frac{y^\sigma}{\sigma} \Big|_0^M \leq \frac{M^\sigma}{\beta}.$$

Therefore  $\Psi(s)$  is locally absolutely bounded for  $\sigma > 0$ . In particular, the Mellin inversion formula implies that  $\psi(y)$  is the Mellin inverse of  $\Psi(s)$ . As for nice properties,  $\Psi(s)$  does not grow too fast in vertical strips:

**Proposition 6.2.1.** *Suppose  $\psi : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  is a bump function and let  $\Psi(s)$  denote its Mellin transform. Then for any  $N \geq 1$ ,*

$$\Psi(s) \ll (|s| + 1)^{-N},$$

*provided  $s$  is contained in the vertical strip  $a < \sigma < b$  for any  $a$  and  $b$  with  $0 < a < b$ .*

*Proof.* Fix  $a$  and  $b$  with  $a < b$ . Also, let the support of  $\psi(y)$  be contained in  $[0, M]$ . Now consider

$$\Psi(s) = \int_0^\infty \psi(y) y^s \frac{dy}{y}.$$

Since  $\psi(y)$  is compactly supported, integrating by parts yields

$$\Psi(s) = \frac{1}{s} \int_0^\infty \psi'(y) y^{s+1} \frac{dy}{y}.$$

Repeatedly integrating by parts  $N \geq 1$  times, we arrive at

$$\Psi(s) = \frac{1}{s(s+1) \cdots (s+N-1)} \int_0^\infty \psi^{(N)}(y) y^{s+N} \frac{dy}{y}.$$

Therefore

$$\Psi(s) \ll (|s|+1)^{-N} \int_0^\infty \psi^{(N)}(y) y^{\sigma+N} \frac{dy}{y}.$$

The claim will follow if we can show that the integral is bounded. Since  $\psi(y)$  is compactly supported in  $[0, M]$  so is  $\psi^{(N)}(y)$ . In particular,  $\psi^{(N)}(y)$  is bounded. Therefore

$$\int_0^\infty \psi^{(N)}(y) y^{\sigma+N} \frac{dy}{y} \ll \int_0^M y^{\sigma+N} \frac{dy}{y} = \frac{y^{\sigma+N}}{\sigma+N} \Big|_0^M = \frac{M^{\sigma+N}}{\sigma+N} \ll \frac{M^{b+N}}{N} \ll 1,$$

where the second to last estimate follows because  $a < \sigma < b$  with  $0 < a < b$ . So the integral is bounded and the claim follows.  $\square$

The following theorem is **(smoothed) Perron's formula**:

**Theorem 6.2.3 (Perron's formula, smoothed version).** *Let  $D(s)$  be a Dirichlet series with coefficient  $a(n)$  and finite and nonnegative abscissa of absolute convergence  $\sigma_a$ . Let  $\psi : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  be a bump function. Then for any  $c > \sigma_a$ ,*

$$A_\psi(X) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(c)} D(s) \Psi(s) X^s ds,$$

where  $\Psi$  is the Mellin transform of  $\psi$ .

*Proof.* This is just a computation:

$$\begin{aligned} A_\psi(X) &= \sum_{n \geq 1} a(n) \psi\left(\frac{n}{X}\right) \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n)}{2\pi i} \int_{(c)} \Psi(s) \left(\frac{n}{X}\right)^{-s} ds && \text{Mellin inversion formula} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(c)} \sum_{n \geq 1} a(n) \Psi(s) \left(\frac{n}{X}\right)^{-s} ds && \text{DCT} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(c)} D(s) \Psi(s) X^s ds. \end{aligned}$$

$\square$

Smoothed Perron's formula is useful because it is often more versatile as the convergence of the integral is improved if  $\psi$  is chosen appropriately.

## 6.3 Analytic Data of $L$ -functions

We are now ready to discuss  $L$ -functions in some generality. In the following, we will denote an  $L$ -function by  $L(s, f)$ , and for the moment,  $f$  will carry no formal meaning. It is only used to suggest that the  $L$ -function is attached to some interesting arithmetic object  $f$ . When we discuss specific  $L$ -functions,  $f$  will carry a formal meaning. An  **$L$ -series**  $L(s, f)$  is a Dirichlet series

$$L(s, f) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^s},$$



where the  $a_f(n) \in \mathbb{C}$  are coefficients usually attached to some arithmetic object  $f$ . We call  $L(s, f)$  an  **$L$ -function** if it satisfies the following properties:

- (i)  $L(s, f)$  is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1$  and admits a degree  $d$  Euler product

$$L(s, f) = \prod_p (1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})^{-1} (1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s})^{-1} \cdots (1 - \alpha_d(p)p^{-s})^{-1},$$

with  $a_f(n), \alpha_i(p) \in \mathbb{C}$ ,  $a_f(1) = 1$ , and  $|\alpha_i(p)| \leq p$  for all primes  $p$ . We call

$$L_p(s, f) = (1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})^{-1} (1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s})^{-1} \cdots (1 - \alpha_d(p)p^{-s})^{-1},$$

the **local factor** at  $p$ , and the  $\alpha_i(p)$  are called the **local roots** (or **local parameters**) at  $p$ .

- (ii) There exists a factor

$$\gamma(s, f) = \pi^{-\frac{ds}{2}} \prod_{1 \leq i \leq d} \Gamma\left(\frac{s + \kappa_i}{2}\right),$$

with  $\kappa_i \in \mathbb{C}$  that are either real or appear in conjugate pairs. We also require  $\operatorname{Re}(\kappa_i) \geq -1$ . The  $\kappa_i$  are called the **local roots** (or **local parameters**) at infinity.

- (iii) There exists an integer  $q(f) \geq 1$  called the **conductor** such that  $\alpha_i(p) \neq 0$  for all prime  $p$  such that  $p \nmid q(f)$ . If  $p \mid q(f)$ , then we say  $p$  is **ramified** and is **unramified** otherwise. The **analytic conductor**  $q(s, f)$  is defined to be

$$q(s, f) = q(f)q_\infty(s, f),$$

where we set

$$q_\infty(s, f) = \prod_{1 \leq i \leq d} (|s + \kappa_i| + 3).$$

- (iv) The **completed  $L$ -function**

$$\Lambda(s, f) = q(f)^{\frac{s}{2}} \gamma(s, f) L(s, f),$$

must admit meromorphic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  with at most poles at  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$ . Moreover, it must satisfy the functional equation

$$\Lambda(s, f) = \varepsilon(f) \Lambda(1 - s, \bar{f}),$$

where  $\varepsilon(f)$  is a complex number with  $|\varepsilon(f)| = 1$  called the **root number** of  $L(s, f)$ , and  $\bar{f}$  is an object associated to  $f$  called the **dual** of  $f$  such that  $L(s, \bar{f})$  satisfies  $a_{\bar{f}}(n) = \overline{a_f(n)}$ ,  $\gamma(s, \bar{f}) = \gamma(s, f)$ ,  $q(\bar{f}) = q(f)$ , and  $\varepsilon(\bar{f}) = \overline{\varepsilon(f)}$ . We call  $L(s, \bar{f})$  the **dual** of  $L(s, f)$ . If  $\bar{f} = f$  in the functional equation, we say  $L(s, f)$  is **self-dual**.

- (v)  $L(s, f)$  admits meromorphic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  with at most a pole at  $s = 1$ , and must be of order 1 (see Appendix B.5) after clearing the possible polar divisor.

We will also continue to refer to objects  $L(s, f)$  as  $L$ -functions if they satisfy a subset of these conditions or perhaps all of them with some perturbations. However, if we are discussing  $L$ -functions generally we will always assume that they satisfy properties (i)-(v) unless stated otherwise. Property (ii) ensures that  $\gamma(s, f)$  has at most poles at  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$  for  $\sigma \geq 0$ . As  $L(s, f)$  admits meromorphic continuation by property (v), we denote the continuation by  $L(s, f)$  as well. Moreover, we say that an  $L$ -function  $L(s, f)$  belongs to the **Selberg class** if the additional adjustments to (i), (ii), and (v) hold:

- (i) The local roots at  $p$  satisfy  $|\alpha_i(p)| = 1$  if  $p \nmid q(f)$  and  $|\alpha_i(p)| \leq 1$  if  $p \mid q(f)$ .
- (ii) The local roots at infinity satisfy  $\operatorname{Re}(\kappa_i) \geq 0$ .
- (v)  $L(s, f)$  has at most a pole at  $s = 1$ .

The adjustment for (i) forces  $a_f(n) \ll n^\varepsilon$  while the adjustment for (ii) ensures that  $\gamma(s, f)$  has at most a pole at  $s = 0$  for  $\sigma \geq 0$ . The Selberg class constitutes a very special class of  $L$ -functions. Nevertheless, suppose we are given two  $L$ -functions  $L(s, f)$  and  $L(s, g)$  with degree  $d$  and  $e$  Euler products, local roots  $\alpha_i(p)$  and  $\beta_j(p)$  at  $p$ , and local roots  $\kappa_i$  and  $\nu_j$  at infinity respectively. We say that an  $L$ -function  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  of degree  $de$  is the **Rankin-Selberg convolution** of  $L(s, f)$  and  $L(s, g)$  (or **Rankin-Selberg square** if  $f = g$ ) if it satisfies the following adjustments:

- (i) The Euler product of  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  takes the form

$$L(s, f \otimes g) = \prod_{p \nmid q(f)q(g)} L_p(s, f \otimes g) \prod_{p \mid q(f)q(g)} H_p(p^{-s}),$$

with

$$L_p(s, f \otimes g) = \prod_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq d \\ 1 \leq j \leq e}} \left(1 - \alpha_i(p) \overline{\beta_j(p)} p^{-s}\right)^{-1} \quad \text{and} \quad H_p(p^{-s}) = \prod_{1 \leq i \leq de} (1 - \gamma_i(p) p^{-s}),$$

for some  $\gamma_i(p) \in \mathbb{C}$  with  $|\gamma_i(p)| \leq p$ .

- (ii) The gamma factor  $\gamma(s, f \otimes g)$  takes the form

$$\gamma(s, f \otimes g) = \pi^{-\frac{des}{2}} \prod_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq d \\ 1 \leq j \leq e}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s + \mu_{i,j}}{2}\right),$$

with the local roots at infinity satisfying the additional bounds  $\operatorname{Re}(\mu_{i,j}) \leq \operatorname{Re}(\kappa_i) + \operatorname{Re}(\nu_j)$  and  $|\mu_{i,j}| \leq |\kappa_i| + |\nu_j|$ .

- (iii) The root number  $q(f \otimes g)$  satisfies  $q(f \otimes g) \mid q(f)^d q(g)^e$ . If  $q(f \otimes g)$  is a proper divisor of  $q(f)^d q(g)^e$ , we say that **conductor dropping** occurs.

- (v)  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  has a pole at  $s = 1$  if  $g = f$ .

A few additional comments are in order for  $L$ -functions in general. The **critical strip** is the strip

$$\left\{ s \in \mathbb{C} : \left| \sigma - \frac{1}{2} \right| \leq \frac{1}{2} \right\}.$$

This is precisely the region where we cannot determine the value of an  $L$ -function from its representation as a Dirichlet series using the functional equation. It turns out that much of the important information about  $L$ -functions are contained inside of the critical strip. The **critical line** is the vertical line that bisects the critical strip. So the critical line is  $\sigma = \frac{1}{2}$  as displayed in Figure 6.1.

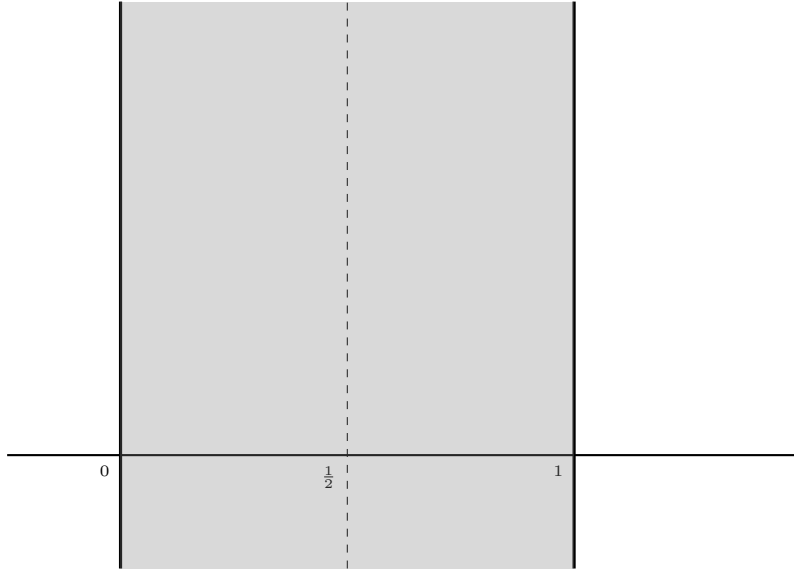


Figure 6.1: The critical strip and critical line.

## 6.4 The Approximate Functional Equation

If  $L(s, f)$  is an  $L$ -function, then there is a formula which acts as a compromise between the functional equation for  $L(s, f)$  and expressing  $L(s, f)$  as a Dirichlet series. This formula is known as the approximate functional equation and it is important because it is valid inside of the critical strip and therefore can be used to obtain data about  $L(s, f)$ . First, we need to state an important asymptotic about the ratio of gamma factors that we will use later on. First suppose  $\sigma$  is bounded and  $|t| > 1$ . This guarantees that  $s$  is bounded away from zero so by Corollary 1.6.2, we have

$$\Gamma(s) \sim \sqrt{2\pi} t^{\sigma - \frac{1}{2}} e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}|t|}.$$

This gives the weaker estimates

$$\Gamma(s) \ll t^{\sigma - \frac{1}{2}} e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}|t|} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{\Gamma(s)} \ll t^{\frac{1}{2} - \sigma} e^{\frac{\pi}{2}|t|}.$$

It is not hard to obtain estimates that holds in vertical strips. Suppose  $s$  is in the vertical strip  $a < \sigma < b$  and is distance  $\varepsilon$  away from the poles of  $\Gamma(s)$ . For  $|t| > 1$ , the estimates above are satisfied. As these estimates are zero when  $t = 0$  and  $\Gamma(s)$  is bounded on the compact region  $a \leq \sigma \leq b$  with  $|t| \leq 1$  provided  $s$  is distance  $\varepsilon$  away from the poles, the estimates

$$\Gamma(s) \ll_{\varepsilon} (|t| + 1)^{\sigma - \frac{1}{2}} e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}|t|} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{\Gamma(s)} \ll_{\varepsilon} (|t| + 1)^{\frac{1}{2} - \sigma} e^{\frac{\pi}{2}|t|}, \quad (6.7)$$

are valid in the vertical strip  $a < \sigma < b$  and distance  $\varepsilon$  away from the poles of  $\Gamma(s)$  in the first estimate. We immediately have the useful estimate

$$\frac{\Gamma(1-s)}{\Gamma(s)} \ll_{\varepsilon} (|t| + 1)^{1-2\sigma},$$

valid in the is in the vertical strip  $a < \sigma < b$  and distance  $\varepsilon$  away from the poles of  $\Gamma(1-s)$ . It easily follows from the definition of  $\gamma(s, f)$  that

$$\frac{\gamma(1-s, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} \ll_{\varepsilon} q_{\infty}(s, f)^{\frac{1-2\sigma}{2}} \quad \text{and} \quad q(f)^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{\gamma(1-s, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} \ll_{\varepsilon} q(s, f)^{\frac{1-2\sigma}{2}}, \quad (6.8)$$

are valid in the is in the vertical strip  $a < \sigma < b$  and is distance  $\varepsilon$  away from the poles of  $\gamma(1-s, f)$ . We can use this last estimate to show that  $L(s, f)$  has polynomial growth in the  $t$ -aspect in vertical strips:

**Proposition 6.4.1.** *For any  $L$ -function  $L(s, f)$  and  $a < b$ ,  $L(s, f)$  is of polynomial growth in the  $t$ -aspect in the vertical half-strip  $a \leq \sigma \leq b$  with  $|t| \geq 1$ .*

*Proof.* On the one hand, for  $\sigma > \max(1, b)$  we have  $L(s, f) \ll 1$  on the line  $\sigma = 1$  with  $t \geq 1$ . On the other hand, the functional equation and Equation (6.8) together imply

$$L(s, f) \ll q(s, f)^{\frac{1-2\sigma}{2}} L(1-s, f).$$

Clearly  $q(s, f)^{\frac{1-2\sigma}{2}}$  is of polynomial growth in the  $t$ -aspect provided  $\sigma$  is bounded. Thus for bounded  $\sigma < \min(0, a)$ , we see that  $L(s, f)$  is also of polynomial growth in the  $t$ -aspect for  $|t| \geq 1$ . Moreover, this estimate also implies  $L(s, f)$  is bounded on the line  $t = 1$  provided  $\sigma$  is bounded. As  $L(s, f)$  is holomorphic for  $|t| \geq 1$  and of order 1, we can apply the Phragmén-Lindelöf convexity principle in this region (see Appendix B.6) so that  $L(s, f)$  is of polynomial growth in the  $t$ -aspect in the vertical half-strip  $a \leq \sigma \leq b$  with  $|t| \geq 1$ .  $\square$

Proposition 6.4.1 is a very important property that  $L$ -functions possess. It is usually used to estimate Perron type formulas. We can also use it to deduce the **approximate function equation**:

**Theorem 6.4.1 (Approximate functional equation).** *Let  $L(s, f)$  be an  $L$ -function,  $\Phi(u)$  be an even holomorphic function bounded in the vertical strip  $|\operatorname{Re}(u)| < a + 1$  for any  $a > 1$  such that  $\Phi(0) = 1$ , and let  $X > 0$ . Then for  $s$  in the critical strip, we have*

$$L(s, f) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^s} V_s \left( \frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)}X} \right) + \varepsilon(s, f) \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\overline{a_f(n)}}{n^{1-s}} V_{1-s} \left( \frac{nX}{\sqrt{q(f)}} \right) + \frac{R}{q(f)^{\frac{s}{2}} \gamma(s, f)},$$

where  $V_s(y) : \mathbb{R}_{>0} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is the smooth function defined by

$$V_s(y) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \frac{\gamma(s+u, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} \Phi(u) y^{-u} \frac{du}{u},$$

and

$$\varepsilon(s, f) = \varepsilon(f) q(f)^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \frac{\gamma(1-s, f)}{\gamma(s, f)}.$$

Moreover, the remainder  $R$  is zero if  $\Lambda(s, f)$  is entire, and otherwise

$$R = \left( \operatorname{Res}_{u=1-s} + \operatorname{Res}_{u=-s} \right) \frac{\Lambda(s+u, f) \Phi(u) X^u}{u}.$$

*Proof.* Let

$$I(X, s, f) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \Lambda(s+u, f) \Phi(u) X^u \frac{du}{u}.$$

$L(s, f)$  has polynomial growth in the  $t$ -aspect by Proposition 6.4.1. From Equation (6.7) we see that  $\gamma(s+u, f)$  has exponential decay. Since  $\Phi(u)$  is bounded, it follows that the integrand has exponential decay in a vertical strip containing  $|\operatorname{Re}(u)| \leq a$ . Therefore the integral is absolutely bounded by Method 1.5.1.

Moreover, we may shift the line of integration to  $(-a)$ . In doing so, we pass by a simple pole at  $u = 0$  and possible poles at  $u = 1 - s$  and  $u = -s$ , giving

$$I(X, s, f) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(-a)} \Lambda(s+u, f) \Phi(u) X^u \frac{du}{u} + \Lambda(s, f) + R.$$

Applying the functional equation to  $\Lambda(s+u, f)$  and performing the change of variables  $u \rightarrow -u$ , we obtain

$$I(X, s, f) = -\varepsilon(f) I(X^{-1}, 1-s, \bar{f}) + \Lambda(s, f) - R,$$

since  $\Phi(u)$  is even. This equation is equivalent to

$$\Lambda(s, f) = I(X, s, f) + \varepsilon(f) I(X^{-1}, 1-s, \bar{f}) + R.$$

Since  $\operatorname{Re}(s+u) > 1$ , we can expand the  $L$ -function  $L(s, f)$  inside of  $I(X, s, f)$  as a Dirichlet series:

$$\begin{aligned} I(X, s, f) &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \Lambda(s+u, f) \Phi(u) X^u \frac{du}{u} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} q(f)^{\frac{s+u}{2}} \gamma(s+u, f) L(s+u, f) \Phi(u) X^u \frac{du}{u} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^{s+u}} q(f)^{\frac{s+u}{2}} \gamma(s+u, f) \Phi(u) X^u \frac{du}{u} \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^{s+u}} q(f)^{\frac{s+u}{2}} \gamma(s+u, f) \Phi(u) X^u \frac{du}{u} && \text{DCT} \\ &= q(f)^{\frac{s}{2}} \gamma(s, f) \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^s} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \frac{\gamma(s+u, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} \Phi(u) \left( \frac{\sqrt{q(f)} X}{n} \right)^u \frac{du}{u} \\ &= q(f)^{\frac{s}{2}} \gamma(s, f) \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^s} V_s \left( \frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)} X} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Performing the same computation for  $I(X^{-1}, 1-s, \bar{f})$  and substituting in the results, we arrive at

$$\Lambda(s, f) = q(f)^{\frac{s}{2}} \gamma(s, f) \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^s} V_s \left( \frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)} X} \right) + \varepsilon(f) q(f)^{\frac{1-s}{2}} \gamma(1-s, f) \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^{1-s}} V_{1-s} \left( \frac{nX}{\sqrt{q(f)}} \right) + R.$$

Diving by  $q(f)^{\frac{s}{2}} \gamma(s, f)$  completes the proof.  $\square$

The approximate functional equation was first developed by Hardy and Littlewood in the series [HL21, HL23, HL29]. The function  $V_s(y)$  has the effect of smoothing out the two sums on the right-hand side of the approximate functional equation. To see this, we need the following proposition:

**Proposition 6.4.2.** *Let  $L(s, f)$  be an  $L$ -function and  $\Phi(u)$  be an even holomorphic function bounded in the vertical strip  $|\operatorname{Re}(u)| < a + 1$  for any  $a > 1$  such that  $\Phi(0) = 1$ . Let  $V_s(y) : \mathbb{R}_{>0} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be the smooth function defined by*

$$V_s(y) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \frac{\gamma(s+u, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} \Phi(u) y^{-u} \frac{du}{u}.$$

For  $s$  in the critical strip,  $V_s(y)$  satisfies the estimate

$$V_s(y) \ll \left( 1 + \frac{y}{\sqrt{q_\infty(s, f)}} \right)^{-a}.$$

*Proof.* Let  $u = \tau + ir$  and suppose  $0 \leq \sigma \leq \frac{1}{2}$  so that  $\sigma - \frac{1}{2} \leq 0$ . Then from Equation (6.7) and the reverse triangle inequality (in the form  $|t + r| \geq ||r| - |t||$ ), we deduce that

$$\frac{\Gamma(s + u)}{\Gamma(s)} \ll \frac{(|t + r| + 1)^{\sigma + \tau - \frac{1}{2}}}{(|t| + 1)^{\sigma - \frac{1}{2}}} e^{\frac{\pi}{2}(|t| - |t + r|)} \ll (|t + r| + 1)^{\tau} e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}|r|}.$$

From the definition of the analytic conductor, the above estimate implies

$$\frac{\gamma(s + u, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} \ll q_{\infty}(s, f)^{\frac{\tau}{2}} e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}d|r|},$$

for  $s$  in the critical strip. The fact that  $\Phi(u)$  is bounded,  $u$  is bounded away from zero, and the estimate for the ratio of gamma factors gives the first estimate in the following chain:

$$\begin{aligned} V_s(y) &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \frac{\gamma(s + u, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} \Phi(u) y^{-u} \frac{du}{u} \\ &\ll \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} q_{\infty}(s, f)^{\frac{a}{2}} e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}d|r|} y^{-a} dr \\ &\ll \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} q_{\infty}(s, f)^{\frac{a}{2}} e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}d|r|} (1 + y)^{-a} dr \\ &\ll \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}d|r|} \left(1 + \frac{y}{\sqrt{q_{\infty}(s, f)}}\right)^{-a} dr \\ &\ll \left(1 + \frac{y}{\sqrt{q_{\infty}(s, f)}}\right)^{-a} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}d|r|} dr \\ &\ll \left(1 + \frac{y}{\sqrt{q_{\infty}(s, f)}}\right)^{-a}, \end{aligned}$$

where in the third and fourth lines we have used that  $cy \ll (1 + cy)$  for all  $y \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$  and any  $c$  and the last line holds by Method 1.5.1 since  $e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}d|r|}$  has exponential decay. This completes the proof.  $\square$

From Proposition 6.4.2 we see that  $V_s(f)$  is bounded for  $y \ll q_{\infty}(s, f)^{\frac{1}{2} + \varepsilon}$  and then starts to exhibit polynomial decay.

## 6.5 The Riemann Hypothesis & Nontrivial Zeros

The zeros of  $L$ -functions  $L(s, f)$  are closely tied to important arithmetic data of  $f$ . Let  $L(s, f)$  be a degree  $d$   $L$ -function so that

$$L(s, f) = \prod_p (1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})^{-1} (1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s})^{-1} \cdots (1 - \alpha_d(p)p^{-s})^{-1},$$

for  $\sigma > 1$ . This product vanishes if and only if one of its factors are zero. As  $\sigma > 1$ , this is impossible so that  $L(s, f)$  has no zeros in this region. The functional equation will allow us to understand more about the zeros of  $L(s, f)$ . Rewrite the functional equation for  $L(s, f)$  as

$$L(s, f) = \varepsilon(f) q(f)^{\frac{1}{2} - s} \frac{\gamma(1 - s, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} L(1 - s, \bar{f}). \quad (6.9)$$

If  $\sigma < 0$  then  $L(1-s, \bar{f})$  is nonzero by our previous comments. Moreover,  $\gamma(1-s, f)$  is holomorphic in this region because  $\operatorname{Re}(\kappa_i) \geq -1$  for all  $i$ . We conclude that poles of  $\gamma(s, f)$  are zeros of  $L(s, f)$  for  $\sigma < 0$ . Such zeros are called **trivial zeros**. From the definition of  $\gamma(s, f)$ , they are all simple and are of the form  $s = \kappa_i - 2n$  for some local root at infinity  $\kappa_i$  and some integer  $n \geq 0$ . Any other zero of  $L(s, f)$  is called a **nontrivial zeros** and it lies inside of the critical strip.

**Remark 6.5.1.** Recall that for any  $L$ -function  $L(s, f)$ , the completed  $L$ -function  $\Lambda(s, f)$  is required to be meromorphic on  $\mathbb{C}$  with at most poles at  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$ . We have shown that the trivial zeros of  $L(s, f)$  are poles of  $\gamma(s, f)$  for  $\sigma < 0$  and they are all simple. As  $L(s, f)$  is meromorphic on  $\mathbb{C}$  with at most a pole at  $s = 1$ , and  $\gamma(s, f)$  has at most poles at  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$  for  $\sigma \geq 0$ ,  $\Lambda(s, f)$  is meromorphic on  $\mathbb{C}$  with at most poles at  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$ .

Now let  $\rho$  be a nontrivial zero of  $L(s, f)$ . Note that  $\overline{L(s, f)} = L(\bar{s}, \bar{f})$  by the identity theorem and that this equality holds for  $\sigma > 1$  where  $L(s, f)$  is defined by a Dirichlet series. It follows that  $\bar{\rho}$  is a nontrivial zero of  $L(s, \bar{f})$ . In the interior of critical strip, the gamma factor is nonzero and holomorphic (again we have used  $\operatorname{Re}(\kappa_i) \geq 1$  for all  $i$ ). From the functional equation, it follows that  $1 - \bar{\rho}$  is also a nontrivial zero of  $L(s, f)$ . In short, the nontrivial zeros occur in pairs:

$$\rho \quad \text{and} \quad 1 - \bar{\rho}.$$

We can sometimes say more. If  $L(s, f)$  takes real values for  $s > 1$ , the Schwarz reflection principle implies  $L(\bar{s}, f) = \overline{L(s, f)}$  and that  $L(s, f)$  takes real values on the entire real axis save for the possible poles at  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$ . We find that  $\bar{\rho}$  and  $1 - \bar{\rho}$  are nontrivial zeros too and therefore the nontrivial zeros of  $L(s, f)$  come in sets of four:

$$\rho, \quad \bar{\rho}, \quad 1 - \rho, \quad \text{and} \quad 1 - \bar{\rho}.$$

The **(Selberg class) Riemann hypothesis** says that this symmetry should be as simple as possible:

**Conjecture 6.5.1 (Riemann hypothesis, Selberg class version).** All of the nontrivial zeros of any  $L$ -function  $L(s, f)$  belonging to the Selberg class lie on the line  $\sigma = \frac{1}{2}$ .

## 6.6 The Lindelöf Hypothesis & Convexity Arguments

Instead of asking about the zeros of an  $L$ -function  $L(s, f)$  on the critical line, we can ask about the growth of  $L(s, f)$  on the critical line. A **convexity argument** is one where estimates about the growth of an  $L$ -function on the critical line are deduced. Usually this is achieved by methods of complex analysis and Sirling's formula. The standard argument for any  $L$ -function is known **Lindelöf convexity argument**. It is essentially a refinement of the proof of Proposition 6.4.1. Suppose  $L(s, f)$  has a degree  $d$  Euler product. Also suppose  $L(s, f)$  has a pole of order  $r \geq 0$  at  $s = 1$  and let

$$p_r(s) = \left( \frac{s-1}{s+1} \right)^r.$$

Note that  $p_r(s) \sim 1$ . The first step is to guarantee the Phragmén-Lindelöf convexity principle for  $p_r(s)L(s, f)$  in a region containing the critical strip. As  $L(s, f)$  is of order 1, this is assured (see Appendix B.6). Therefore, we are reduced to estimating the growth of  $p_r(s)L(s, f)$  for  $\sigma$  to the left of 0 and to the right of 1. That is, just outside the edges of the critical strip. The right edge is easily estimated by setting  $\sigma = 1 + \varepsilon$  so that

$$p_r(1 + \varepsilon + it)L(1 + \varepsilon + it, f) \ll_\varepsilon 1.$$

The left edge is only slightly more difficult. The functional equation and Equation (6.8) together imply

$$p_r(s)L(s, f) \ll p_r(s)q(s, f)^{\frac{1-2\sigma}{2}}L(1-s, f),$$

for  $s$  in any vertical strip with distance  $\varepsilon$  away from the poles of  $\gamma(1-s, f)$ . Setting  $\sigma = -\varepsilon$ , we obtain

$$p_r(-\varepsilon + it)L(-\varepsilon + it, f) \ll_{\varepsilon} q(s, f)^{\frac{1}{2} + \varepsilon}.$$

As  $p_r(s)L(s, f)$  is holomorphic in a region containing the vertical strip  $-\varepsilon \leq \sigma \leq 1 + \varepsilon$ , the Phragmén-Lindelöf convexity principle gives

$$L(s, f) \ll_{\varepsilon} q(s, f)^{\frac{1-\sigma}{2} + \varepsilon},$$

in the vertical strip  $-\varepsilon \leq \sigma \leq 1 + \varepsilon$ . At the critical line, we have the **convexity bound**:

$$L\left(\frac{1}{2} + it, f\right) \ll_{\varepsilon} q\left(\frac{1}{2} + it, f\right)^{\frac{1}{4} + \varepsilon}. \quad (6.10)$$

The **(Selberg class) Lindelöf hypothesis** says that the exponent can be reduced to  $\varepsilon$ :

**Conjecture 6.6.1 (Lindelöf hypothesis, Selberg class version).** *For any  $L$ -function  $L(s, f)$  belonging to the Selberg class, we have*

$$L\left(\frac{1}{2} + it, f\right) \ll_{\varepsilon} q\left(\frac{1}{2} + it, f\right)^{\varepsilon}.$$

Any improvement upon the exponent in the convexity bound in any aspect of the analytic conductor is called a **subconvexity estimate** (or a **convexity breaking bound**). Any argument used to do so is called a **subconvexity argument**.

## 6.7 Estimating the Central Value

The Lindelöf hypothesis is concerned with the growth of the  $L$ -function  $L(s, f)$  along the critical line. Sometimes we are only concerned with the size of  $L(s, f)$  when  $s = \frac{1}{2}$ . The point  $s = \frac{1}{2}$  is called the **central value** of  $L(s, f)$  since it is exactly the midpoint on the critical line. Many important properties about  $L(s, f)$  can be connected to its size at the central value. Any argument used to estimate an  $L$ -function at the central value is called a **central value estimate**. We will state a result which gives a very useful upper bound for the size of an  $L$ -function at the central value in the  $q(f)$ -aspect. To state it, let  $\psi : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  be a bump function with compact support in  $[\frac{1}{2}, 2]$ . Explicitly,

$$\psi(y) = \begin{cases} e^{-\frac{1}{9-(4y-5)^2}} & \text{if } |4y-5| < 3, \\ 0 & \text{if } |4y-5| \geq 3. \end{cases}$$

The theorem is the following:

**Theorem 6.7.1.** *Let  $L(s, f)$  be an  $L$ -function and let  $\psi : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  be a bump function with compact support in  $[\frac{1}{2}, 2]$ . Then we have*

$$L\left(\frac{1}{2}, f\right) \ll_{\varepsilon} \max_{X \ll q(f)^{\frac{1}{2} + \varepsilon}} \frac{A_{\psi}(X)}{q(f)^{\frac{1}{4}}} + \frac{S}{q(f)^{\frac{1}{4}}},$$

where  $S$  is zero if  $\Lambda(s, f)$  is entire, and otherwise

$$S = \left( \operatorname{Res}_{u=\frac{1}{2}} + \operatorname{Res}_{u=-\frac{1}{2}} \right) \Lambda\left(\frac{1}{2} + u, f\right).$$



*Proof.* Taking  $s = \frac{1}{2}$  and  $X = 1$  in the approximate functional equation gives

$$L\left(\frac{1}{2}, f\right) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{\sqrt{n}} V_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)}}\right) + \varepsilon(f) \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\overline{a_f(n)}}{\sqrt{n}} V_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)}}\right) + \frac{R}{q(f)^{\frac{1}{4}} \gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}, f\right)}.$$

This implies the bound

$$L\left(\frac{1}{2}, f\right) \ll \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{\sqrt{n}} V_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)}}\right) + \frac{S}{q(f)^{\frac{1}{4}}}.$$

Now consider the set of functions  $\{\psi\left(\frac{y}{2^k}\right)\}_{k \in \mathbb{Z}}$ . Since  $\psi\left(\frac{y}{2^k}\right)$  has support in  $[2^{k-1}, 2^{k+1}]$ , the sum  $\sigma(y) = \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \psi\left(\frac{y}{2^k}\right)$ , defined for  $y \geq 0$ , is finite since at most finitely many terms are nonzero for every  $y$ . It is also bounded away from zero since for any  $x > 0$  there is some  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$  for which  $2^k \leq y \leq 3 \cdot 2^{k-1}$  so that  $\frac{y}{2^k}$  is at least distance  $\frac{1}{2}$  from the endpoints of  $[\frac{1}{2}, 2]$ . Defining  $\psi_k(y) = \psi\left(\frac{y}{2^k}\right) \sigma(y)^{-1}$ , it follows that  $\{\psi_k(y)\}_{k \in \mathbb{Z}}$  satisfies

$$\sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \psi_k(y) = 1,$$

for any  $y \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ . Then we can write

$$\begin{aligned} V_s(y) &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \frac{\gamma(s+u, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} \Phi(u) y^{-u} \frac{du}{u} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{\gamma(s+u, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} \Phi(u) y^{-u} \psi_k(y) \frac{du}{u} \\ &= \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \frac{\gamma(s+u, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} \Phi(u) y^{-u} \psi_k(y) \frac{du}{u} && \text{DCT} \\ &= \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} V_{s,k}(y), \end{aligned}$$

where we have set

$$V_{s,k}(y) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(a)} \frac{\gamma(s+u, f)}{\gamma(s, f)} \Phi(u) y^{-u} \psi_k(y) \frac{du}{u}.$$

Note that  $V_{s,k}(y)$  is compactly supported on  $[2^{k-1}, 2^k]$  because  $\psi_k(y)$  is compactly supported there. Moreover, Proposition 6.4.2 implies that  $V_{s,k}(y)$  also exhibits polynomial decay for  $y \gg q_\infty(s, f)^{\frac{1}{2}+\varepsilon}$ . It follows that

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{\sqrt{n}} V_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)}}\right) = \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \sum_{2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^{k+1}} \frac{a_f(n)}{\sqrt{n}} V_{\frac{1}{2},k}\left(\frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)}}\right).$$

Using the polynomial decay of  $V_{\frac{1}{2},k}(y)$  to crudely bound those terms for which  $n \gg q\left(\frac{1}{2}, f\right)^{\frac{1}{2}+\varepsilon} \gg q(f)^{\frac{1}{2}+\varepsilon}$  gives the estimate

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{\sqrt{n}} V_{\frac{1}{2}}\left(\frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)}}\right) \ll \sum_{k \ll q(f)^\varepsilon} \sum_{\substack{2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^{k+1} \\ n \ll q(f)^{\frac{1}{2}+\varepsilon}}} \frac{a_f(n)}{\sqrt{n}} V_{\frac{1}{2},k}\left(\frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)}}\right),$$

where in the first sum we have used that  $\log(y) \ll_\varepsilon y^\varepsilon$ . Now since  $\sigma(y)$  is bounded away from zero, and  $V_{\frac{1}{2},k}(y)$  and  $\psi(y)$  are compactly supported on the same interval (so their nonzero values differ by a bounded

amount), we have the weaker estimate

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{\sqrt{n}} V_{\frac{1}{2}} \left( \frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)}} \right) \ll_{\varepsilon} q(f)^{\varepsilon} \max_{X \ll q(f)^{\frac{1}{2} + \varepsilon}} \sum_{\frac{X}{2} \leq n \leq 2X} \frac{a_f(n)}{\sqrt{n}} \psi \left( \frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)}} \right).$$

We will estimate this latter sum. Abel's summation formula (see Appendix B.3) gives

$$\sum_{\frac{X}{2} \leq n \leq 2X} \frac{a_f(n)}{\sqrt{n}} \psi \left( \frac{n}{X} \right) = \frac{A_{\psi}(2X)}{\sqrt{2X}} - \frac{A_{\psi} \left( \frac{X}{2} \right)}{\sqrt{\frac{X}{2}}} + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\frac{X}{2}}^{2X} A_{\psi}(u) u^{-\frac{3}{2}} du.$$

But as

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_{\frac{X}{2}}^{2X} A_{\psi}(u) u^{-\frac{3}{2}} du \ll X \max_{\frac{X}{2} \leq u \leq 2X} A_{\psi}(u) u^{-\frac{3}{2}} \ll \max_{\frac{X}{2} \leq u \leq 2X} \frac{A_{\psi}(u)}{\sqrt{u}},$$

we obtain the bound

$$\max_{X \ll q(f)^{\frac{1}{2} + \varepsilon}} \sum_{\frac{X}{2} \leq n \leq 2X} \frac{a_f(n)}{\sqrt{n}} \psi \left( \frac{n}{X} \right) \ll \max_{X \ll q(f)^{\frac{1}{2} + \varepsilon}} \frac{A_{\psi}(X)}{\sqrt{X}}.$$

Putting everything together gives

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{\sqrt{n}} V_{\frac{1}{2}} \left( \frac{n}{\sqrt{q(f)}} \right) \ll_{\varepsilon} q(f)^{\frac{\varepsilon}{2}} \max_{X \ll q(f)^{\frac{1}{2} + \varepsilon}} \frac{A_{\psi}(X)}{\sqrt{X}} \ll_{\varepsilon} \max_{X \ll q(f)^{\frac{1}{2} + \varepsilon}} \frac{A_{\psi}(X)}{q(f)^{\frac{1}{4}}},$$

where in the last estimate we may replace  $X$  with  $q(f)^{\frac{1}{2} + \varepsilon}$  because  $X \geq 1$  so that  $X$  is bounded away from zero.  $\square$

# Chapter 7

## Types of $L$ -functions

We discuss a variety of  $L$ -functions: the Riemann zeta function,  $L$ -functions attached to Dirichlet characters, and Hecke  $L$ -functions. In the case of Hecke  $L$ -functions, we also describe a method of Rankin and Selberg for constructing new  $L$ -functions from old ones.

### 7.1 The Riemann Zeta Function

#### The Definition & Euler Product of $\zeta(s)$

The **Riemann zeta function** or simply the **zeta function**  $\zeta(s)$  is defined as an  $L$ -series:

$$\zeta(s) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{n^s}.$$

This is the prototypical example of a Dirichlet series as all the coefficients are 1. We will see that  $\zeta(s)$  is a Selberg class  $L$ -function. As the coefficients are trivially polynomially bounded,  $\zeta(s)$  is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1$ . Also note that  $\zeta(s)$  is necessarily nonzero in this region. Determining the Euler product is also an easy matter. As the coefficients are obviously completely multiplicative, we have the degree 1 Euler product

$$\zeta(s) = \prod_p (1 - p^{-s})^{-1},$$

in this region as well. The local factor at  $p$  is  $\zeta_p(s) = (1 - p^{-s})^{-1}$  with local root 1.

#### The Integral Representation of $\zeta(s)$ : Part I

Riemann's ingenious insight was to analytically continue  $\zeta(s)$ . By this, he sought to find a representation of  $\zeta(s)$  defined on a larger region than  $\sigma > 1$ . This is the approach we will take, and the argument follows the same line of reasoning as that of Riemann. We consider the gamma function  $\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right)$ :

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^{\frac{s}{2}-1} \frac{dx}{x}.$$

**Remark 7.1.1.** *We have chosen to express the gamma function in terms of the measure  $\frac{dx}{x}$  instead of  $dx$ . This is a tactical change for two reasons. The first is that  $\frac{dx}{x}$  is invariant under the change of variables  $x \rightarrow Cx$  for any constant  $C$ . The second is that under the change of variables  $x \rightarrow \frac{1}{x}$  we have  $\frac{dx}{x} \rightarrow -\frac{dx}{x}$  but the bounds of integration are also flipped. So we may leave the measure invariant provided we don't*

*flip the bounds of integration. These types of change of variables are essential in the study of  $L$ -functions which motivates the use of this measure.*

Performing the change of variables  $x \rightarrow \pi n^2 x$  for fixed  $n \geq 1$  yields

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) = \pi^{\frac{s}{2}} n^s \int_0^\infty e^{-\pi n^2 x} x^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x}. \quad (7.1)$$

Let  $\sigma > 1$ . Dividing by  $\pi^{\frac{s}{2}} n^s$  and summing over  $n \geq 1$ , we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \pi^{-\frac{s}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) \zeta(s) &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \int_0^\infty e^{-\pi n^2 x} x^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} \\ &= \int_0^\infty \sum_{n \geq 1} e^{-\pi n^2 x} x^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} && \text{DCT} \\ &= \int_0^\infty \omega(x) x^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x}, \end{aligned}$$

where we set

$$\omega(x) = \sum_{n \geq 1} e^{-\pi n^2 x}.$$

Therefore we have an integral representation

$$\zeta(s) = \frac{\pi^{\frac{s}{2}}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right)} \int_0^\infty \omega(x) x^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x}. \quad (7.2)$$

This was essentially Riemann's insight: rewrite the Riemann zeta function in terms of a Mellin transform. Unfortunately, we cannot proceed until we understand  $\omega(x)$ . So we will make a slight detour and come back to the integral representation after.

## Jacobi's Theta Function $\vartheta(s)$

**Jacobi's theta function**  $\vartheta(s)$  is defined for  $\sigma > 0$  by

$$\vartheta(s) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} e^{-\pi n^2 s} = 1 + 2 \sum_{n \geq 1} e^{-\pi n^2 s}.$$

It is locally absolutely uniformly convergent in this region by the ratio test. It's relation to  $\omega(s)$  is the identity

$$\omega(s) = \frac{\vartheta(s) - 1}{2}. \quad (7.3)$$

The essential fact about Jacobi's theta function we will need is the **functional equation for Jacobi's theta function** that was known to Riemann:

**Theorem 7.1.1 (Functional equation for Jacobi's theta function).** *For  $\sigma > 0$ ,*

$$\vartheta(s) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{s}} \vartheta\left(\frac{1}{s}\right).$$

*Proof.* By the identity theorem it suffices to prove this on a set containing a limit point. We will prove this on the right-half of the real line, so take  $s$  real with  $s > 0$ . Set  $f(x) = e^{-\pi x^2 s}$ . Then  $f(x)$  is a Schwarz function. We compute its Fourier transform:

$$\hat{f}(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{-2\pi i t x} dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\pi x^2 s} e^{-2\pi i t x} dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\pi(x^2 s + 2itx)} dx.$$

Making the change of variables  $x \rightarrow \frac{x}{\sqrt{s}}$ , the last integral above becomes

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{s}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\pi\left(x^2 + \frac{2itx}{\sqrt{s}}\right)} dx.$$

Complete the square in the exponent by noticing

$$-\pi\left(x^2 + \frac{2itx}{\sqrt{s}}\right) = -\pi\left(\left(x + \frac{it}{\sqrt{s}}\right)^2 + \frac{t^2}{s}\right).$$

Taking exponentials, this implies that the previous integral is equal to

$$\frac{e^{-\frac{\pi t^2}{s}}}{\sqrt{s}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\pi\left(x + \frac{it}{\sqrt{s}}\right)^2} dx.$$

The change of variables  $x \rightarrow \frac{x}{\sqrt{s}} - \frac{it}{\sqrt{s}}$  is permitted without affecting the line of integration by viewing the integral as a complex integral, noting that the integrand is entire as a complex function, and shifting the line of integration. This gives

$$\frac{e^{-\frac{\pi t^2}{s}}}{\sqrt{s}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\pi\left(x + \frac{it}{\sqrt{s}}\right)^2} dx = \frac{e^{-\frac{\pi t^2}{s}}}{\sqrt{s}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\pi x^2} dx = \frac{e^{-\frac{\pi t^2}{s}}}{\sqrt{s}},$$

where the last equality follows because the last integral above is 1 since it is the Gaussian integral (see Appendix D.1). The Poisson summation formula and the identity theorem together finish the proof.  $\square$

This completes our interest in Jacobi's theta function.

## The Integral Representation of $\zeta(s)$ : Part II

Returning to the Riemann zeta function, we split the integral in Equation (7.2) into two pieces

$$\int_0^{\infty} \omega(x) x^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} = \int_0^1 \omega(x) x^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} + \int_1^{\infty} \omega(x) x^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x}. \quad (7.4)$$

Since  $\omega(x)$  has exponential decay, the second piece is locally absolutely uniformly bounded for  $\sigma > 1$  by Method 1.5.1. Hence it is analytic there. The idea now is to rewrite the first piece in the same form and symmetrize the result as much as possible. We begin by performing a change of variables  $x \rightarrow \frac{1}{x}$  to the first piece to obtain

$$\int_1^{\infty} \omega\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) x^{-\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x}$$

Now the functional equation for Jacobi's theta function  $\vartheta(x)$  and Equation (7.3) together imply

$$\omega\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = \frac{\vartheta\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) - 1}{2} = \frac{\sqrt{x}\vartheta(x) - 1}{2} = \frac{\sqrt{x}(2\omega(x) + 1) - 1}{2} = \sqrt{x}\omega(x) + \frac{\sqrt{x}}{2} - \frac{1}{2}. \quad (7.5)$$

Equation (7.5) gives the first equality in the following chain:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_1^\infty \omega\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) x^{-\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} &= \int_1^\infty \left( \sqrt{x} \omega(x) + \frac{\sqrt{x}}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right) x^{-\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} \\
 &= \int_1^\infty \omega(x) x^{\frac{1-s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} + \int_1^\infty \frac{x^{\frac{1-s}{2}}}{2} \frac{dx}{x} - \int_1^\infty \frac{x^{-\frac{s}{2}}}{2} \frac{dx}{x} \\
 &= \int_1^\infty \omega(x) x^{\frac{1-s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} + \frac{1}{1-s} - \frac{1}{s} \\
 &= \int_1^\infty \omega(x) x^{\frac{1-s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} - \frac{1}{s(1-s)}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting this result back into Equation (7.4) with Equation (7.2) yields the integral representation

$$\zeta(s) = \frac{\pi^{\frac{s}{2}}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right)} \left[ -\frac{1}{s(1-s)} + \int_1^\infty \omega(x) x^{\frac{1-s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} + \int_1^\infty \omega(x) x^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} \right].$$

This integral representation will give analytic continuation. To see this, first observe that everything outside the brackets is entire. Moreover, the two integrals are locally absolutely uniformly bounded on  $\mathbb{C}$  by Method 1.5.1. The fractional term is holomorphic except for simple poles at  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$ . The meromorphic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  follows with possible simple poles at  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$ . There is no pole at  $s = 0$ . Indeed,  $\gamma(s, \zeta)$  has a simple pole coming from the gamma factor there and so its reciprocal has a simple zero. This cancels the corresponding simple pole of  $\frac{1}{s(1-s)}$  so that  $\zeta(s)$  has a removable singularity and thus is holomorphic at  $s = 0$ . At  $s = 1$ ,  $\gamma(s, \zeta)$  is nonzero, and so  $\zeta(s)$  has a simple pole. Therefore  $\zeta(s)$  has meromorphic continuation to all of  $\mathbb{C}$  with a simple pole at  $s = 1$ .

## The Functional Equation, Critical Strip & Residue of $\zeta(s)$

An immediate consequence of applying the symmetry  $s \rightarrow 1 - s$  to the integral representation is the following functional equation:

$$\frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right)}{\pi^{\frac{s}{2}}} \zeta(s) = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{1-s}{2}\right)}{\pi^{\frac{1-s}{2}}} \zeta(1-s).$$

We identify the gamma factor as

$$\gamma(s, \zeta) = \pi^{-\frac{s}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right),$$

with  $\kappa = 0$  the only local root at infinity. Clearly it satisfies the required bounds. The conductor is  $q(\zeta) = 1$  so no primes ramify. The completed zeta function is

$$\Lambda(s, \zeta) = \pi^{-\frac{s}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) \zeta(s),$$

with functional equation

$$\Lambda(s, \zeta) = \Lambda(1-s, \zeta).$$

This is the functional equation of  $\zeta(s)$  and in this case is just a reformulation of the previous functional equation. From it we find that the root number is  $\varepsilon(\zeta) = 1$  and that  $\zeta(s)$  is self-dual. We can now show that the order of  $\zeta(s)$  is 1. As there is only a simple pole at  $s = 1$ , multiply by  $(s - 1)$  to clear the polar divisor. As the integrals in the integral representation are absolutely bounded, computing the order

amounts to estimating the gamma factor. Since the reciprocal of the gamma function is of order 1, we have

$$\frac{1}{\gamma(s, \zeta)} \ll_{\varepsilon} e^{|s|^{1+\varepsilon}}.$$

Thus the reciprocal of the gamma factor is also of order 1. It follows that

$$(s-1)\zeta(s) \ll_{\varepsilon} e^{|s|^{1+\varepsilon}}.$$

This shows  $(s-1)\zeta(s)$  is of order 1, and thus  $\zeta(s)$  is as well after removing the polar divisor. We now compute the residue of  $\zeta(s)$  at  $s=1$ :

**Proposition 7.1.1.**

$$\operatorname{Res}_{s=1} \zeta(s) = 1.$$

*Proof.* The only term in the integral representation of  $\zeta(s)$  contributing to the pole is  $-\frac{\pi^{\frac{s}{2}}}{\Gamma(\frac{s}{2})} \frac{1}{s(1-s)}$ . Observe

$$\lim_{s \rightarrow 1} \frac{\pi^{\frac{s}{2}}}{\Gamma(\frac{s}{2})} = 1,$$

because  $\Gamma(\frac{1}{2}) = \sqrt{\pi}$ . Therefore

$$\operatorname{Res}_{s=1} \zeta(s) = \operatorname{Res}_{s=1} -\frac{\pi^{\frac{s}{2}}}{\Gamma(\frac{s}{2})} \frac{1}{s(1-s)} = \operatorname{Res}_{s=1} -\frac{1}{s(1-s)} = \lim_{s \rightarrow 1} -\frac{(s-1)}{s(1-s)} = 1. \quad \square$$

We summarize all of our work into the following theorem:

**Theorem 7.1.2.**  $\zeta(s)$  is a Selberg class  $L$ -function. For  $\sigma > 1$ , it has a locally absolutely uniformly convergent degree 1 Euler product given by

$$\zeta(s) = \prod_p (1 - p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

Moreover, it admits meromorphic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  via the integral representation

$$\zeta(s) = \frac{\pi^{\frac{s}{2}}}{\Gamma(\frac{s}{2})} \left[ -\frac{1}{s(1-s)} + \int_1^{\infty} \omega(x) x^{\frac{1-s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} + \int_1^{\infty} \omega(x) x^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} \right],$$

with functional equation

$$\pi^{-\frac{s}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) \zeta(s) = \Lambda(s, \zeta) = \Lambda(1-s, \zeta),$$

and there is a simple pole at  $s=1$  of residue 1.

Lastly, we note that by virtue of the functional equation we can also compute  $\zeta(0)$ . Indeed, since  $\operatorname{Res}_{s=1} \zeta(s) = 1$ , we have

$$\lim_{s \rightarrow 1} (s-1) \Lambda(s, \zeta) = \operatorname{Res}_{s=1} \zeta(s) \lim_{s \rightarrow 1} \pi^{-\frac{s}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) = 1.$$

In other words,  $\Lambda(s, \zeta)$  has a simple pole at  $s=1$  with residue 1 too. Since the completed zeta function is completely symmetric as  $s \rightarrow 1-s$ , it has a simple pole at  $s=0$  with residue 1. Hence

$$1 = \lim_{s \rightarrow 1} (s-1) \Lambda(1-s, \zeta) = \operatorname{Res}_{s=1} \Gamma\left(\frac{1-s}{2}\right) \lim_{s \rightarrow 1} \pi^{-\frac{1-s}{2}} \zeta(1-s) = -2\zeta(0),$$

because  $\operatorname{Res}_{s=0} \Gamma(s) = 1$ . Therefore  $\zeta(0) = -\frac{1}{2}$ .

## 7.2 Dirichlet $L$ -functions

### The Definition & Euler Product of $L(s, \chi)$

To every Dirichlet character  $\chi$  there is an associated  $L$ -function. Throughout we will let  $m$  denote the modulus and  $q$  the conductor of  $\chi$  respectively. The **Dirichlet  $L$ -function**  $L(s, \chi)$  attached to the Dirichlet character  $\chi$  is defined as an  $L$ -series:

$$L(s, \chi) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\chi(n)}{n^s}.$$

Since  $\chi(n) = 0$  if  $(n, m) > 1$ , the above sum can be restricted to all positive integers relatively prime to  $m$ . We will see that  $L(s, \chi)$  is a Selberg class  $L$ -function if  $\chi$  is primitive and of conductor  $q > 1$  (in the case  $q = 1$ ,  $L(s, \chi) = \zeta(s)$ ). From now we make this assumption about  $\chi$ . As  $|\chi(n)| \ll 1$ ,  $L(s, \chi)$  is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1$ . Because  $\chi$  is completely multiplicative we also have the degree 1 Euler product,

$$L(s, \chi) = \prod_p (1 - \chi(p)p^{-s})^{-1} = \prod_{p \nmid m} (1 - \chi(p)p^{-s})^{-1},$$

in this region as well. The last equality holds because if  $p \mid m$  we have  $\chi(p) = 0$ . So for  $p \mid m$ , the local factor at  $p$  is  $L_p(s, \chi) = 1$  with local root 0. For  $p \nmid m$  the local factor at  $p$  is  $L_p(s, \chi) = (1 - \chi(p)p^{-s})^{-1}$  with local root  $\chi(p)$ .

### The Integral Representation of $L(s, \chi)$ : Part I

The integral representation for  $L(s, \chi)$  is deduced in a similar way as for  $\zeta(s)$ . However, it will depend on if  $\chi$  is even or odd. To handle both cases simultaneously let  $\mathfrak{a} = 0, 1$  according to whether  $\chi$  is even or odd. In other words,

$$\mathfrak{a} = \frac{\chi(1) - \chi(-1)}{2}.$$

We also have  $\chi(-1) = (-1)^\mathfrak{a}$ . Note that  $\mathfrak{a}$  takes the same value for both  $\chi$  and  $\bar{\chi}$ . Making the substitution  $s \rightarrow s + \mathfrak{a}$  in Equation (7.1) and multiplying by  $\chi(n)$  yields

$$\chi(n)\Gamma\left(\frac{s + \mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) = \pi^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} n^s \int_0^\infty \chi(n)n^\mathfrak{a} e^{-\pi n^2 x} x^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \frac{dx}{x},$$

after moving the  $n^\mathfrak{a}$  on the inside of the integral. Let  $\sigma > 1$ . Dividing by  $\pi^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} n^s$  and summing over  $n \geq 1$ , we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \pi^{-\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s + \mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) L(s, \chi) &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \int_0^\infty \chi(n)n^\mathfrak{a} e^{-\pi n^2 x} x^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} \\ &= \int_0^\infty \sum_{n \geq 1} \chi(n)n^\mathfrak{a} e^{-\pi n^2 x} x^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} && \text{DCT} \\ &= \int_0^\infty \omega_\chi(x) x^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \frac{dx}{x}, \end{aligned}$$

where we set

$$\omega_\chi(x) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \chi(n)n^\mathfrak{a} e^{-\pi n^2 x}.$$



Therefore we have an integral representation

$$L(s, \chi) = \frac{\pi^{\frac{s+a}{2}}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+a}{2}\right)} \int_0^\infty \omega_\chi(x) x^{\frac{s+a}{2}} \frac{dx}{x}, \quad (7.6)$$

and just like  $\zeta(s)$  we need to find a functional equation for  $\omega_\chi(x)$  before we can proceed.

## Dirichlet's Theta Function $\vartheta_\chi(s)$

**Dirichlet's theta function**  $\vartheta_\chi(s)$  attached to the character  $\chi$ , is defined for  $\sigma > 0$  by

$$\vartheta_\chi(s) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \chi(n) n^a e^{-\pi n^2 s} = 2 \sum_{n \geq 1} \chi(n) n^a e^{-\pi n^2 s}.$$

It is locally absolutely uniformly convergent in this region by the ratio test. Notice that the term corresponding to  $n = 0$  vanishes because  $\chi(0) = 0$ , and  $\chi(n)n^a = \chi(-n)(-n)^a$  so that the  $n$  and  $-n$  terms agree. Therefore the relationship between the twisted theta function and  $\omega_\chi(s)$  is

$$\omega_\chi(s) = \frac{\vartheta_\chi(s)}{2}. \quad (7.7)$$

**Remark 7.2.1.** Equation (7.7) is a slightly less complex relationship than Equation (7.3). This is because assuming  $q > 1$  means  $\chi(0) = 0$ .

The essential fact we will need is the **functional equation for Dirichlet's theta function**:

**Theorem 7.2.1 (Functional equation for Dirichlet's theta function).** Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q > 1$ . For  $\sigma > 0$ ,

$$\vartheta_\chi(s) = \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^a (qs)^{\frac{1}{2}+a}} \vartheta_{\bar{\chi}}\left(\frac{1}{q^2 s}\right).$$

*Proof.* By the identity theorem it suffices to prove this on a set containing a limit point. We will prove this on the right-half of the real line, so take  $s$  real with  $s > 0$ . Since  $\chi$  is  $q$ -periodic, we can write

$$\vartheta_\chi(s) = \sum_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) \sum_{m \in \mathbb{Z}} (mq + a)^a e^{-\pi(mq+a)^2 s}.$$

Set  $f(x) = (xq + a)^a e^{-\pi(xq+a)^2 s}$ . Then  $f(x)$  is a Schwarz function. We compute its Fourier transform:

$$\hat{f}(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) e^{-2\pi i t x} dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (xq + a)^a e^{-\pi(xq+a)^2 s} e^{-2\pi i t x} dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (xq + a)^a e^{-\pi((xq+a)^2 s + 2itx)} dx.$$

By performing the change of variables  $x \rightarrow \frac{x}{q\sqrt{s}} - \frac{a}{q}$ , the last integral above becomes

$$\frac{e^{\frac{2\pi i a t}{q}}}{qs^{\frac{1+a}{2}}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^a e^{-\pi\left(x^2 + \frac{2itx}{q\sqrt{s}}\right)} dx.$$

Complete the square in the exponent by observing

$$-\pi\left(x^2 + \frac{2itx}{q\sqrt{s}}\right) = -\pi\left(\left(x + \frac{it}{q\sqrt{s}}\right)^2 + \frac{t^2}{q^2 s}\right).$$

Taking exponentials, this implies that the previous integral is equal to

$$\frac{e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q} - \frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}}}{qs^{\frac{1+\alpha}{2}}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^{\alpha} e^{-\pi \left(x + \frac{it}{q\sqrt{s}}\right)^2} dx.$$

The change of variables  $x \rightarrow x - \frac{it}{q\sqrt{s}}$  is permitted without affecting the line of integration by viewing the integral as a complex integral, noting that the integrand is entire as a complex function, and shifting the line of integration. This gives

$$\frac{e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q} - \frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}}}{qs^{\frac{1+\alpha}{2}}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left(x - \frac{it}{q\sqrt{s}}\right)^{\alpha} e^{-\pi x^2} dx = \frac{e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q} - \frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}}}{qs^{\frac{1+\alpha}{2}}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left(x + \frac{t}{iq\sqrt{s}}\right)^{\alpha} e^{-\pi x^2} dx.$$

If  $\alpha = 0$ , we obtain

$$\frac{e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q} - \frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}}}{qs^{\frac{1+\alpha}{2}}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\pi x^2} dx = \frac{e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q} - \frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}}}{qs^{\frac{1+\alpha}{2}}}, \quad (7.8)$$

where the equality holds because the integral is 1 since it is the Gaussian integral (see Appendix D.1). If  $\alpha = 1$ , then by direct computation

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x e^{-\pi x^2} dx = -\frac{1}{2\pi} e^{-\pi x^2} \Big|_{-\infty}^{\infty} = 0,$$

and thus

$$\frac{e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q} - \frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}}}{qs^{\frac{1+\alpha}{2}}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left(\frac{t}{iq\sqrt{s}}\right) e^{-\pi x^2} dx = \frac{e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q} - \frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}}}{qs^{\frac{1+\alpha}{2}}} \left(\frac{t}{iq\sqrt{s}}\right) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\pi x^2} dx = \frac{e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q} - \frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}}}{qs^{\frac{1+\alpha}{2}}} \left(\frac{t}{iq\sqrt{s}}\right), \quad (7.9)$$

where the last equality follows because the last integral is the Gaussian integral again. Since  $\left(\frac{t}{iq\sqrt{s}}\right)^{\alpha} = 1$  if  $\alpha = 0$ , we can compactly express the right-hand sides of Equations (7.8) and (7.9) in the form

$$\frac{e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q} - \frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}}}{qs^{\frac{1+\alpha}{2}}} \left(\frac{t}{iq\sqrt{s}}\right)^{\alpha}.$$

The Poisson summation formula then implies

$$\begin{aligned} \vartheta_{\chi}(s) &= \sum_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) \sum_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} \frac{e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q} - \frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}}}{qs^{\frac{1+\alpha}{2}}} \left(\frac{t}{iq\sqrt{s}}\right)^{\alpha} \\ &= \frac{1}{i^{\alpha} q^{1+\alpha} s^{\frac{1}{2}+\alpha}} \sum_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) \sum_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} t^{\alpha} e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q} - \frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}} \\ &= \frac{1}{i^{\alpha} q^{1+\alpha} s^{\frac{1}{2}+\alpha}} \sum_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} t^{\alpha} e^{-\frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}} \sum_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi iat}{q}} \\ &= \frac{1}{i^{\alpha} q^{1+\alpha} s^{\frac{1}{2}+\alpha}} \sum_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} t^{\alpha} e^{-\frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}} \tau(t, \chi) \end{aligned} \quad \text{definition of } \tau(t, \chi),$$

and this holds for all  $\sigma > 0$  by the identity theorem. Since  $\chi$  is primitive,  $\tau(t, \chi) = \bar{\chi}(t)\tau(\chi)$  for all  $t \in \mathbb{Z}$  by Corollary 1.4.1. Therefore we have

$$\frac{1}{i^a q^{1+a} s^{\frac{1}{2}+a}} \sum_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} t^a e^{-\frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}} \tau(t, \chi) = \frac{\tau(\chi)}{i^a q^{1+a} s^{\frac{1}{2}+a}} \sum_{t \in \mathbb{Z}} \bar{\chi}(t) t^a e^{-\frac{\pi t^2}{q^2 s}} = \frac{\tau(\chi)}{i^a q^{1+a} s^{\frac{1}{2}+a}} \vartheta_{\bar{\chi}} \left( \frac{1}{q^2 s} \right).$$

Recalling that  $\varepsilon_\chi = \frac{\tau(\chi)}{\sqrt{q}}$ , we conclude

$$\vartheta_\chi(s) = \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^a (qs)^{\frac{1}{2}+a}} \vartheta_{\bar{\chi}} \left( \frac{1}{q^2 s} \right).$$

□

The most striking property about this functional equation is that it relates  $\vartheta_\chi(s)$  and  $\vartheta_{\bar{\chi}}(s)$ . Regardless, we can now exploit it to analytically continue  $L(s, \chi)$ .

## The Integral Representation of $L(s, \chi)$ : Part II

Returning to  $L(s, \chi)$ , split the integral in Equation (7.6) into two pieces

$$\int_0^\infty \omega_\chi(x) x^{\frac{s+a}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} = \int_0^{\frac{1}{q}} \omega_\chi(x) x^{\frac{s+a}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} + \int_{\frac{1}{q}}^\infty \omega_\chi(x) x^{\frac{s+a}{2}} \frac{dx}{x}. \quad (7.10)$$

Since  $\omega_\chi(x)$  has exponential decay, the second piece is locally absolutely uniformly bounded for  $\sigma > 1$  by Method 1.5.1. Hence it is an analytic function. We now rewrite the first piece in the same form and symmetrize the result as much as possible. Start by performing a change of variables  $x \rightarrow \frac{1}{q^2 x}$  to the first piece to obtain

$$q^{-(s+a)} \int_{\frac{1}{q}}^\infty \omega_\chi \left( \frac{1}{q^2 x} \right) x^{-\frac{s+a}{2}} \frac{dx}{x}.$$

Now the functional equation for Dirichlet's theta function  $\vartheta_\chi(x)$  and Equation (7.7) together imply

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_\chi \left( \frac{1}{q^2 x} \right) &= \frac{\vartheta_\chi \left( \frac{1}{q^2 x} \right)}{2} \\ &= \frac{i^a (qx)^{\frac{1}{2}+a} \vartheta_{\bar{\chi}}(x)}{\varepsilon_{\bar{\chi}} 2} \\ &= \varepsilon_\chi (-i)^a (qx)^{\frac{1}{2}+a} \frac{\vartheta_{\bar{\chi}}(x)}{2} \quad \text{Proposition 1.4.3 and } \chi(-1) = (-1)^a \\ &= \frac{\varepsilon_\chi (qx)^{\frac{1}{2}+a} \vartheta_{\bar{\chi}}(x)}{i^a 2} \\ &= \frac{\varepsilon_\chi (qx)^{\frac{1}{2}+a}}{i^a} \omega_{\bar{\chi}}(x). \end{aligned} \quad (7.11)$$

Equation (7.11) gives the first equality in the following chain:

$$\begin{aligned} q^{-(s+a)} \int_{\frac{1}{q}}^\infty \omega_\chi \left( \frac{1}{q^2 x} \right) x^{-\frac{s+a}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} &= q^{-(s+a)} \int_{\frac{1}{q}}^\infty \left( \frac{\varepsilon_\chi (qx)^{\frac{1}{2}+a}}{i^a} \omega_{\bar{\chi}}(x) \right) x^{-\frac{s+a}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} \\ &= \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^a} q^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \int_{\frac{1}{q}}^\infty \omega_{\bar{\chi}}(x) x^{\frac{(1-s)+a}{2}} \frac{dx}{x}. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting this last expression back into Equation (7.10) with Equation (7.6) gives the integral representation

$$L(s, \chi) = \frac{\pi^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right)} \left[ \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} q^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \int_{\frac{1}{q}}^{\infty} \omega_{\overline{\chi}}(x) x^{\frac{(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} + \int_{\frac{1}{q}}^{\infty} \omega_\chi(x) x^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} \right].$$

This integral representation will give analytic continuation. Indeed, we know everything outside the brackets is entire. The two integrals are locally absolutely uniformly bounded on  $\mathbb{C}$  by Method 1.5.1. This gives analytic continuation to all of  $\mathbb{C}$ . In particular,  $L(s, \chi)$  has no poles.

## The Functional Equation & Critical Strip of $L(s, \chi)$

An immediate consequence of applying the symmetry  $s \rightarrow 1-s$  to the integral representation is the following functional equation:

$$q^{\frac{s}{2}} \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right)}{\pi^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}}} L(s, \chi) = \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} q^{\frac{1-s}{2}} \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right)}{\pi^{\frac{(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}}{2}}} L(1-s, \overline{\chi}).$$

We identify the gamma factor as

$$\gamma(s, \chi) = \pi^{-\frac{s}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right),$$

with  $\kappa = \mathfrak{a}$  the only local root at infinity. Clearly it satisfies the required bounds. The conductor is  $q(\chi) = q$  and if  $p$  is an unramified prime then the local root is  $\chi(p) \neq 0$ . The completed  $L$ -function is

$$\Lambda(s, \chi) = q^{\frac{s}{2}} \pi^{-\frac{s}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) L(s, \chi),$$

with functional equation

$$\Lambda(s, \chi) = \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} \Lambda(1-s, \overline{\chi}).$$

From it we see that the root number is  $\varepsilon(\chi) = \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}}$  and that  $L(s, \chi)$  has dual  $L(s, \overline{\chi})$ . We now show that  $L(s, \chi)$  is of order 1. Since  $L(s, \chi)$  has no poles, we do not need to clear any polar divisors. As the integrals in the integral representation are absolutely bounded, computing the order amounts to estimating the gamma factor. Since the reciprocal of the gamma function is of order 1, we have

$$\frac{1}{\gamma(s, \chi)} \ll_{\varepsilon} e^{|s|^{1+\varepsilon}}.$$

So the reciprocal of the gamma factor is also of order 1. It follows that

$$L(s, \chi) \ll_{\varepsilon} e^{|s|^{1+\varepsilon}}.$$

So  $L(s, \chi)$  is of order 1. We summarize all of our work into the following theorem:

**Theorem 7.2.2.** *For any primitive Dirichlet character  $\chi$  of conductor  $q > 1$ ,  $L(s, \chi)$  is a Selberg class  $L$ -function. For  $\sigma > 1$ , it has a locally absolutely uniformly convergent degree 1 Euler product given by*

$$L(s, \chi) = \prod_p (1 - \chi(p)p^{-s})^{-1} = \prod_{p \nmid q} (1 - \chi(p)p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

Moreover, it admits analytic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  via the integral representation

$$L(s, \chi) = \frac{\pi^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right)} \left[ \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} q^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \int_{\frac{1}{q}}^{\infty} \omega_{\bar{\chi}}(x) x^{\frac{(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} + \int_{\frac{1}{q}}^{\infty} \omega_\chi(x) x^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \frac{dx}{x} \right],$$

and possesses the functional equation

$$q^{\frac{s}{2}} \pi^{-\frac{s}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) L(s, \chi) = \Lambda(s, \chi) = \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} \Lambda(1-s, \bar{\chi}).$$

## Beyond Primitivity of $L(s, \chi)$

We can still obtain meromorphic continuation of  $L(s, \chi)$  if  $\chi$  is not primitive. Indeed, if  $\chi$  is induced by  $\tilde{\chi}$ , then  $\chi(p) = \tilde{\chi}(p)$  if  $p \nmid q$  and  $\chi(p) = 0$  if  $p \mid m$  so that

$$L(s, \chi) = \prod_{p \nmid m} (1 - \tilde{\chi}(p)p^{-s})^{-1} = \prod_p (1 - \tilde{\chi}(p)p^{-s})^{-1} \prod_{p \mid m} (1 - \tilde{\chi}(p)p^{-s}) = L(s, \tilde{\chi}) \prod_{p \mid m} (1 - \tilde{\chi}(p)p^{-s}). \quad (7.12)$$

From this relation, we can prove the following:

**Theorem 7.2.3.** *For any Dirichlet character  $\chi$  modulo  $m$  of conductor  $q > 1$ ,  $L(s, \chi)$  admits meromorphic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  and if  $\chi$  is principal there is a simple pole at  $s = 1$  of residue  $\prod_{p \mid m} (1 - \tilde{\chi}(p)p^{-1})$  where  $\tilde{\chi}$  is the primitive character inducing  $\chi$ .*

*Proof.* This follows from Theorems 7.1.2 and 7.2.2 and Equation (7.12).  $\square$

## 7.3 Hecke $L$ -functions

### The Definition & Euler Product of $L(s, f)$

We will investigate the  $L$ -functions of holomorphic cusp forms. Let  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$  and denote its Fourier series by

$$f(z) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) n^{\frac{k-1}{2}} e^{2\pi i n z}.$$

The **Hecke  $L$ -function**  $L(s, f)$  of  $f$  is defined as an  $L$ -series:

$$L(s, f) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^s}.$$

We will see that  $L(s, f)$  is a Selberg class  $L$ -function if  $f$  is a primitive Hecke eigenform. From now on, we make this assumption about  $f$ . By the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture,  $a_f(n) \ll_\varepsilon n^\varepsilon$ . So  $L(s, f)$  is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1 + \varepsilon$  and hence locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1$ . The  $L$ -function will also have an Euler product. Indeed, the Hecke relations imply that the coefficients  $a_f(n)$  are multiplicative and satisfy

$$a_f(p^n) = \begin{cases} a_f(p^{n-1})a_f(p) - \chi(p)a_f(p^{n-2}) & \text{if } p \nmid N, \\ (a_f(p))^n & \text{if } p \mid N, \end{cases} \quad (7.13)$$

for all primes  $p$  and  $n \geq 2$ . Because  $L(s, f)$  converges absolutely in the region  $\sigma > 1$ , multiplicativity of the Hecke eigenvalues implies

$$L(s, f) = \prod_p \left( \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{a_f(p^n)}{p^{ns}} \right),$$

in this region. We now simplify the factor inside the product using this Equation (7.13). On the one hand, if  $p \nmid N$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{a_f(p^n)}{p^{ns}} &= 1 + \frac{a_f(p)}{p^s} + \sum_{n \geq 2} \frac{a_f(p^n)}{p^{ns}} \\ &= 1 + \frac{a_f(p)}{p^s} + \sum_{n \geq 2} \frac{a_f(p^{n-1})a_f(p) - \chi(p)a_f(p^{n-2})}{p^{ns}} \\ &= 1 + \frac{a_f(p)}{p^s} + \frac{a_f(p)}{p^s} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(p^n)}{p^{ns}} - \frac{\chi(p)}{p^{2s}} \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{a_f(p^n)}{p^{ns}} \\ &= 1 + \left( \frac{a_f(p)}{p^s} - \frac{\chi(p)}{p^{2s}} \right) \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{a_f(p^n)}{p^{ns}}. \end{aligned}$$

By isolating the sum we find

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{a_f(p^n)}{p^{ns}} = \left( 1 - \frac{a_f(p)}{p^s} + \frac{\chi(p)}{p^{2s}} \right)^{-1}.$$

On the other hand, if  $p \mid N$  we have

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{a_f(p^n)}{p^{ns}} = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{(a_f(p))^n}{p^{ns}} = (1 - a_f(p)p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

Therefore

$$L(s, f) = \prod_{p \nmid N} (1 - a_f(p)p^{-s} + \chi(p)p^{-2s})^{-1} \prod_{p \mid N} (1 - a_f(p)p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

If  $p \nmid N$ , let  $\alpha_1(p)$  and  $\alpha_2(p)$  be the roots of  $1 - a_f(p)p^{-s} + \chi(p)p^{-2s}$ . That is,

$$(1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})(1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s}) = (1 - a_f(p)p^{-s} + \chi(p)p^{-2s}).$$

If  $p \mid N$ , let  $\alpha_1(p) = a_f(p)$  and  $\alpha_2(p) = 0$ . We can then express  $L(s, f)$  as a degree 2 Euler product:

$$L(s, f) = \prod_p (1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})^{-1} (1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

The local factor at  $p$  is  $L_p(s, f) = (1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})^{-1} (1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s})^{-1}$  with local roots  $\alpha_1(p)$  and  $\alpha_2(p)$ . Upon applying partial fraction decomposition to the local factor, we find

$$\frac{1}{1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s}} \frac{1}{1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s}} = \frac{\frac{\alpha_1(p)}{\alpha_1(p) - \alpha_2(p)}}{1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s}} + \frac{\frac{-\alpha_2(p)}{\alpha_1(p) - \alpha_2(p)}}{1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s}}.$$

Expanding both sides as series in  $p^{-s}$ , and comparing coefficients gives

$$a_f(p^n) = \frac{\alpha_1(p)^{n+1} - \alpha_2(p)^{n+1}}{\alpha_1(p) - \alpha_2(p)}. \quad (7.14)$$

## The Integral Representation of $L(s, f)$

We now want to find an integral representation for  $L(s, f)$ . Consider the following Mellin transform:

$$\int_0^\infty f(iy)y^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y}.$$

We don't yet know that this integral defines an analytic function for  $\sigma > 1$ . In any case, we compute

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^\infty f(iy)y^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} &= \int_0^\infty \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) n^{\frac{k-1}{2}} e^{-2\pi ny} y^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) n^{\frac{k-1}{2}} \int_0^\infty e^{-2\pi ny} y^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} && \text{DCT} \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{(2\pi)^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} n^s} \int_0^\infty e^{-y} y^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} && y \rightarrow \frac{y}{2\pi n} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma(s + \frac{k-1}{2})}{(2\pi)^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^s} \\ &= \frac{\Gamma(s + \frac{k-1}{2})}{(2\pi)^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}} L(s, f). \end{aligned}$$

As this last expression is analytic function for  $\sigma > 1$ , the integral is too. Rewriting, we have an integral representation

$$L(s, f) = \frac{(2\pi)^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}}{\Gamma(s + \frac{k-1}{2})} \int_0^\infty f(iy)y^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y}. \quad (7.15)$$

Now split the integral on the right-hand side into two pieces

$$\int_0^\infty f(iy)y^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} = \int_0^{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}} f(iy)y^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} + \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^\infty f(iy)y^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y}. \quad (7.16)$$

Since  $f(iy)$  has exponential decay, the second piece is locally absolutely uniformly bounded for  $\sigma > 1$  by Method 1.5.1. Hence it is an analytic there. Now we will rewrite the first piece in the same form and symmetrize the result as much as possible. Begin by performing the change of variables  $y \rightarrow \frac{1}{Ny}$  to the first piece to obtain

$$\int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^\infty f\left(\frac{i}{Ny}\right) (Ny)^{-s-\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y}.$$

Rewriting in terms of the Atkin–Lehner involution and recalling that  $\omega_N f = \omega_N(f) \bar{f}$  by Proposition 3.6.3, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^\infty f\left(\frac{i}{Ny}\right) (Ny)^{-s-\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} &= \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^\infty f\left(-\frac{1}{iNy}\right) (Ny)^{-s-\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} \\ &= \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^\infty \left(\sqrt{N}iy\right)^k (\omega_N f)(iy) (Ny)^{-s-\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} \\ &= \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^\infty \left(\sqrt{N}iy\right)^k \omega_N(f) \bar{f}(iy) (Ny)^{-s-\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} \\ &= \omega_N(f) i^k N^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^\infty \bar{f}(iy) y^{(1-s)-\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y}. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting this result back into Equation (7.16) with Equation (7.15) yields the integral representation

$$L(s, f) = \frac{(2\pi)^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}}{\Gamma\left(s+\frac{k-1}{2}\right)} \left[ \omega_N(f) i^k N^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} \bar{f}(iy) y^{(1-s)+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} + \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} f(iy) y^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} \right].$$

This integral representation will give analytic continuation. To see this, we know everything outside the brackets is entire. The two integrals are locally absolutely uniformly bounded on  $\mathbb{C}$  by Method 1.5.1. Hence we have analytic continuation to all of  $\mathbb{C}$ . In particular, we have shown that  $L(s, f)$  has no poles.

## The Functional Equation & Critical Strip of $L(s, f)$

An immediate consequence of applying the symmetry  $s \rightarrow 1-s$  to the integral representation is the following functional equation:

$$\frac{\Gamma\left(s+\frac{k-1}{2}\right)}{(2\pi)^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}} L(s, f) = \omega_N(f) i^k N^{-\frac{s}{2}} \frac{\Gamma\left((1-s)+\frac{k-1}{2}\right)}{(2\pi)^{(1-s)+\frac{k-1}{2}}} L(1-s, \bar{f}).$$

Using the Legendre duplication formula for the gamma function we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\Gamma\left(s+\frac{k-1}{2}\right)}{(2\pi)^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}} &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} 2^{1-(s+\frac{k-1}{2})} \sqrt{\pi}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k+1}{2}}{2}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi^{s+\frac{1}{2}}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k+1}{2}}{2}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi}} \pi^{-s} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k+1}{2}}{2}\right). \end{aligned}$$

The constant factor in front is independent of  $s$  and so can be canceled in the functional equation. Therefore we identify the gamma factor as

$$\gamma(s, f) = \pi^{-s} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k+1}{2}}{2}\right),$$

with  $\kappa_1 = k-1$  and  $\kappa_2 = k+1$  the local roots at infinity. The conductor is  $q(f) = N$ , so the primes dividing the level ramify, and by the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture,  $\alpha_i(p) \neq 0$  for  $i = 1, 2$  and all primes  $p \nmid N$ . The completed  $L$ -function is

$$\Lambda(s, f) = N^{-\frac{s}{2}} \pi^{-s} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k+1}{2}}{2}\right) L(s, f),$$

with functional equation

$$\Lambda(s, f) = \omega_N(f) i^k \Lambda(1-s, \bar{f}).$$

This is the functional equation of  $L(s, f)$ . From it, the root number is  $\varepsilon(f) = \omega_N(f) i^k$  and we see that  $L(s, f)$  has dual  $L(s, \bar{f})$ . We will now show that  $L(s, f)$  is of order 1. Since  $L(s, f)$  has no poles, we do not need to clear any polar divisors. As the integrals in the representation is absolutely bounded, computing the order amounts to estimating the gamma factor. Since the reciprocal of the gamma function is of order 1, we have

$$\frac{1}{\gamma(s, f)} \ll_{\varepsilon} e^{|s|^{1+\varepsilon}}.$$



So the reciprocal of the gamma factor is also of order 1. Then

$$L(s, f) \ll_{\varepsilon} e^{|s|^{1+\varepsilon}}.$$

So  $L(s, f)$  is of order 1. We summarize all of our work into the following theorem:

**Theorem 7.3.1.** *For any primitive Hecke eigenform  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(N, \chi)$ ,  $L(s, f)$  is a Selberg class  $L$ -function. For  $\sigma > 1$ , it has a locally absolutely uniformly convergent degree 2 Euler product given by*

$$L(s, f) = \prod_{p \nmid N} (1 - a_f(p)p^{-s} + \chi(p)p^{-2s})^{-1} \prod_{p|N} (1 - a_f(p)p^{-s})^{-1} = \prod_p (1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})^{-1} (1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

Moreover, it admits analytic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  via the integral representation

$$L(s, f) = \frac{(2\pi)^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}}{\Gamma(s+\frac{k-1}{2})} \left[ \omega_N(f) i^k N^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} \bar{f}(iy) y^{(1-s)+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} + \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} f(iy) y^{s+\frac{k-1}{2}} \frac{dy}{y} \right],$$

and possesses the functional equation

$$N^{-\frac{s}{2}} \pi^{-s} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k-1}{2}}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\frac{k+1}{2}}{2}\right) L(s, f) = \Lambda(s, f) = \omega_N(f) i^k \Lambda(1-s, \bar{f}).$$

## Beyond Primitivity of $L(s, f)$

We can still obtain analytic continuation of  $L(s, f)$  if  $f$  is not a primitive Hecke eigenform. Indeed, since the primitive Hecke eigenforms form a basis for the space of newforms, we can prove the following:

**Theorem 7.3.2.** *For any  $f \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(N))$ ,  $L(s, f)$  admits analytic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$ .*

*Proof.* If  $f$  is a newform, this follows from Theorems 3.6.1 and 7.3.1. Now suppose  $f$  is an oldform. Then there is a divisor  $d \mid N$  with  $d > 1$  such that

$$f(z) = g(z) + d^{k-1} h(dz) = g(z) + \prod_{p^r \parallel d} (V_p^r h)(z),$$

for some  $g, h \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(\frac{N}{d}))$ . Note that  $V_p h \in \mathcal{S}_k(\Gamma_1(\frac{Np}{d}))$  by Lemma 3.8.1. The claim now follows by induction on the level of  $f$  and that  $V_p$  clearly preserves primitive Hecke eigenforms.  $\square$

## 7.4 Hecke-Maass $L$ -functions

### The Definition & Euler Product of $L(s, f)$

We will investigate the  $L$ -functions of Maass cusp forms. Let  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$  be even or odd and denote its Fourier series by

$$f(z) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) \sqrt{y} K_{it}(2\pi ny) \text{SC}(2\pi nx).$$

The **Hecke-Maass  $L$ -function**  $L(s, f)$  of  $f$  is defined as an  $L$ -series:

$$L(s, f) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^s}.$$

We will see that  $L(s, f)$  is a Selberg class  $L$ -function if  $f$  is a primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform. From now on, we make this assumption about  $f$ . In this case, the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture is not known so  $L(s, f)$  has not been proven to be a Selberg class  $L$ -function. Although, it is conjectured to be, so throughout we will make this additional assumption. By the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture,  $a_f(n) \ll_\varepsilon n^\varepsilon$ . So  $L(s, f)$  is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1 + \varepsilon$  and hence locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1$ . The  $L$ -function will have an Euler product. Indeed, the Hecke relations imply that the coefficients  $a_f(n)$  are multiplicative and satisfy Equation (7.13). Mimicking the argument exactly as for Hecke  $L$ -functions,

$$L(s, f) = \prod_{p \nmid N} (1 - a_f(p)p^{-s} + \chi(p)p^{-2s})^{-1} \prod_{p \mid N} (1 - a_f(p)p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

If  $p \nmid N$ , let  $\alpha_1(p)$  and  $\alpha_2(p)$  be the roots of  $1 - a_f(p)p^{-s} + \chi(p)p^{-2s}$ . That is,

$$(1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})(1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s}) = (1 - a_f(p)p^{-s} + \chi(p)p^{-2s}).$$

If  $p \mid N$ , let  $\alpha_1(p) = a_f(p)$  and  $\alpha_2(p) = 0$ . We can then express  $L(s, f)$  as a degree 2 Euler product:

$$L(s, f) = \prod_p (1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})^{-1} (1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

The local factor at  $p$  is  $L_p(s, f) = (1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})^{-1} (1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s})^{-1}$  with local roots  $\alpha_1(p)$  and  $\alpha_2(p)$ . Moreover, just as in the case for Hecke  $L$ -functions, the formula Equation (7.14) also holds.

## The Integral Representation of $L(s, f)$

We want to find an integral representation for  $L(s, f)$ . Recall that  $f$  is an eigenfunction for  $T_{-1}$  with eigenvalue  $\pm 1$ . Equivalently,  $f$  is even if the eigenvalue is 1 and odd if the eigenvalue is  $-1$ . The integral representation will depend upon this parity. To handle both cases simultaneously, let  $\mathfrak{a} = 0, 1$  according to whether  $f$  is even or odd. In other words,

$$\mathfrak{a} = \frac{1 - a_f(-1)}{2}.$$

Now consider the following Mellin transform:

$$\int_0^\infty \left( \frac{\partial^\mathfrak{a}}{\partial x} f \right) (iy) y^{s-\frac{1}{2}+\mathfrak{a}} \frac{dy}{y}.$$

The derivative operator is present because if  $f$  is odd,  $\text{SC}(x) = \sin(x)$ . In any case, the smoothness of  $f$  implies that we may differentiate its Fourier series termwise to obtain

$$\left( \frac{\partial^\mathfrak{a}}{\partial x} f \right) (z) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) (2\pi n)^\mathfrak{a} \sqrt{y} K_{it}(2\pi ny) \cos(2\pi nx).$$

Therefore regardless if  $f$  is even or odd, the Fourier series of  $\left( \frac{\partial^\mathfrak{a}}{\partial x} f \right) (z)$  has  $\text{SC}(x) = \cos(x)$  and the integral does not vanish identically. Similar to Hecke  $L$ -functions, we don't yet know that this integral defines an

analytic function for  $\sigma > 1$ . Nevertheless, we compute

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_0^\infty \left( \frac{\partial^a}{\partial x} f \right) (iy) y^{s-\frac{1}{2}+a} \frac{dy}{y} &= \int_0^\infty \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) (2\pi n)^a K_{it}(2\pi n y) y^{s+a} \frac{dy}{y} \\
 &= \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) (2\pi n)^a \int_0^\infty K_{it}(2\pi n y) y^{s+a} \frac{dy}{y} && \text{DCT} \\
 &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{(2\pi)^s n^s} \int_0^\infty K_{it}(y) y^{s+a} \frac{dy}{y} && y \rightarrow \frac{y}{2\pi n} \\
 &= \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+a+it}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+a-it}{2}\right)}{2^{2-a}\pi^s} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n)}{n^s} && \text{Appendix D.1} \\
 &= \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+a+it}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+a-it}{2}\right)}{2^{2-a}\pi^s} L(s, f).
 \end{aligned}$$

This last expression is analytic function for  $\sigma > 1$  and so the integral is too. Rewriting, we have an integral representation

$$L(s, f) = \frac{2^{2-a}\pi^s}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+a+it}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+a-it}{2}\right)} \int_0^\infty \left( \frac{\partial^a}{\partial x} f \right) (iy) y^{s-\frac{1}{2}+a} \frac{dy}{y}. \quad (7.17)$$

Now split the integral on the right-hand side into two pieces

$$\int_0^\infty \left( \frac{\partial^a}{\partial x} f \right) (iy) y^{s-\frac{1}{2}+a} \frac{dy}{y} = \int_0^{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}} \left( \frac{\partial^a}{\partial x} f \right) (iy) y^{s-\frac{1}{2}+a} \frac{dy}{y} + \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^\infty \left( \frac{\partial^a}{\partial x} f \right) (iy) y^{s-\frac{1}{2}+a} \frac{dy}{y}. \quad (7.18)$$

Since  $\left( \frac{\partial^a}{\partial x} f \right) (iy)$  has moderate decay as  $y \rightarrow \infty$  because  $f(iy)$  does, the second piece is locally absolutely uniformly bounded for  $\sigma > 1$  by Method 1.5.1. Hence it is analytic there. Now we will rewrite the first piece in the same form and symmetrize the result as much as possible. Performing the change of variables  $y \rightarrow \frac{1}{Ny}$  to the first piece to obtain

$$\int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^\infty \left( \frac{\partial^a}{\partial x} f \right) \left( \frac{i}{Ny} \right) (Ny)^{-s+\frac{1}{2}-a} \frac{dy}{y}.$$

We will rewrite this in terms of the Atkin–Lehner involution. But first we require an identity that relates  $\frac{\partial^a}{\partial x}$  with the Atkin–Lehner involution  $\omega_N$ . By the identity theorem it suffices to verify this on a set containing a limit point. So let  $z \in \mathbb{H}$  be such that  $|z|$  is fixed. Observe that  $-\frac{1}{Nz} = \frac{-x}{N|z|^2} + \frac{iy}{N|z|^2}$ . Now differentiate termwise to see that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \left( \frac{\partial^a}{\partial x} \omega_N f \right) (z) &= \left( \frac{\partial^a}{\partial x} \right) f \left( -\frac{1}{Nz} \right) \\
 &= \left( \frac{\partial^a}{\partial x} \right) \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) \sqrt{\frac{y}{N|z|^2}} K_{it}(2\pi n y) \text{SC} \left( -2\pi n \frac{x}{N|z|^2} \right) \\
 &= (-N|z|^2)^{-a} \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) (2\pi n)^a \sqrt{\frac{y}{N|z|^2}} K_{it} \left( 2\pi n \frac{y}{N|z|^2} \right) \cos \left( -2\pi n \frac{x}{N|z|^2} \right) \\
 &= (-N|z|^2)^{-a} \left( \frac{\partial^a}{\partial x} f \right) \left( -\frac{1}{Nz} \right).
 \end{aligned}$$

So by the identity theorem,

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}^{\mathfrak{a}} f\right)\left(-\frac{1}{Nz}\right) = (-N|z|^2)^{\mathfrak{a}} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}^{\mathfrak{a}} \omega_N f\right)(z),$$

holds for all  $z \in \mathbb{H}$ . Rewriting in terms of the Atkin-Lehner involution and recalling that  $\omega_N f = \omega_N(f)\bar{f}$  by Proposition 4.7.3, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}^{\mathfrak{a}} f\right)\left(\frac{i}{Ny}\right) (Ny)^{-s+\frac{1}{2}-\mathfrak{a}} \frac{dy}{y} &= \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}^{\mathfrak{a}} f\right)\left(-\frac{1}{iNy}\right) (Ny)^{-s+\frac{1}{2}-\mathfrak{a}} \frac{dy}{y} \\ &= \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} (-Ny^2)^{\mathfrak{a}} \left(\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}^{\mathfrak{a}}\right) \omega_N f\right)(iy) (Ny)^{-s+\frac{1}{2}-\mathfrak{a}} \frac{dy}{y} \\ &= \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} (-Ny^2)^{\mathfrak{a}} \omega_N(f) \left(\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}^{\mathfrak{a}}\right) \bar{f}\right)(iy) (Ny)^{-s+\frac{1}{2}-\mathfrak{a}} \frac{dy}{y} \\ &= w_N(f) (-1)^{\mathfrak{a}} N^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} \left(\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}^{\mathfrak{a}}\right) \bar{f}\right)(iy) y^{(1-s)-\frac{1}{2}+\mathfrak{a}} \frac{dy}{y}. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting this result back into Equation (7.18) with Equation (7.17) gives the integral representation

$$\begin{aligned} L(s, f) &= \frac{2^{2-\mathfrak{a}} \pi^s}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}+it}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}-it}{2}\right)} \\ &\quad \cdot \left[ w_N(f) (-1)^{\mathfrak{a}} N^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} \left(\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}^{\mathfrak{a}}\right) \bar{f}\right)(iy) y^{(1-s)-\frac{1}{2}+\mathfrak{a}} \frac{dy}{y} + \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}^{\mathfrak{a}} f\right)(iy) y^{s-\frac{1}{2}+\mathfrak{a}} \frac{dy}{y} \right]. \end{aligned}$$

This integral representation will give analytic continuation. Indeed, everything outside the brackets is entire and the two integrals are locally absolutely uniformly bounded on  $\mathbb{C}$  by Method 1.5.1. Hence we have analytic continuation to all of  $\mathbb{C}$ . In particular,  $L(s, f)$  has no poles.

## The Functional Equation & Critical Strip of $L(s, f)$

An immediate consequence of applying the symmetry  $s \rightarrow 1-s$  to the integral representation is the following functional equation:

$$\frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}+it}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}-it}{2}\right)}{2^{2-\mathfrak{a}} \pi^s} L(s, f) = \omega_N(f) (-1)^{\mathfrak{a}} N^{-\frac{s}{2}} \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}+it}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}-it}{2}\right)}{2^{2-\mathfrak{a}} \pi^{1-s}} L(1-s, \bar{f}).$$

The constant factor in the denominator is independent of  $s$  and so can be canceled in the functional equation. Therefore we identify the gamma factor as

$$\gamma(s, f) = \pi^{-s} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}+it}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}-it}{2}\right),$$

with  $\kappa_1 = \mathfrak{a} + it$  and  $\kappa_2 = \mathfrak{a} - it$  the local roots at infinity. The conductor is  $q(f) = N$ , so the primes dividing the level ramify, and by the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture,  $\alpha_i(p) \neq 0$  for  $i = 1, 2$  and all primes  $p \nmid N$ . The completed  $L$ -function is

$$\Lambda(s, f) = N^{-\frac{s}{2}} \pi^{-s} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}+it}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}-it}{2}\right) L(s, f),$$

with functional equation

$$\Lambda(s, f) = \omega_N(f)(-1)^a \Lambda(1-s, \bar{f}).$$

This is the functional equation of  $L(s, f)$ . From it, the root number is  $\varepsilon(f) = \omega_N(f)(-1)^a$  and we see that  $L(s, f)$  has dual  $L(s, \bar{f})$ . We will now show that  $L(s, f)$  is of order 1. Since  $L(s, f)$  has no poles, we do not need to clear any polar divisors. As the integrals in the representation is absolutely bounded, computing the order amounts to estimating the gamma factor. Since the reciprocal of the gamma function is of order 1, we have

$$\frac{1}{\gamma(s, f)} \ll_\varepsilon e^{|s|^{1+\varepsilon}}.$$

So the reciprocal of the gamma factor is also of order 1. Then

$$L(s, f) \ll_\varepsilon e^{|s|^{1+\varepsilon}}.$$

So  $L(s, f)$  is of order 1. We summarize all of our work into the following theorem:

**Theorem 7.4.1.** *For any even or odd primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(N, \chi)$ ,  $L(s, f)$  is a Selberg class  $L$ -function provided the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture holds. For  $\sigma > 1$ , it has a locally absolutely uniformly convergent degree 2 Euler product given by*

$$L(s, f) = \prod_{p \nmid N} (1 - a_f(p)p^{-s} + \chi(p)p^{-2s})^{-1} \prod_{p|N} (1 - a_f(p)p^{-s})^{-1} = \prod_p (1 - \alpha_1(p)p^{-s})^{-1} (1 - \alpha_2(p)p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

Moreover, it admits analytic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  via the integral representation

$$L(s, f) = \frac{2^{2-a}\pi^s}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+a+it}{2}\right)\Gamma\left(\frac{s+a-it}{2}\right)} \cdot \left[ w_N(f)(-1)^a N^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} \left( \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \right)^a \bar{f} \right) (iy) y^{(1-s)-\frac{1}{2}+a} \frac{dy}{y} + \int_{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}}^{\infty} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \right)^a f (iy) y^{s-\frac{1}{2}+a} \frac{dy}{y} \right].$$

and possesses the functional equation

$$N^{-\frac{s}{2}} \pi^{-s} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+a+it}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+a-it}{2}\right) L(s, f) = \Lambda(s, f) = \omega_N(f)(-1)^a \Lambda(1-s, \bar{f}).$$

## Beyond Primitivity of $L(s, f)$

We can still obtain analytic continuation of  $L(s, f)$  if  $f$  is not a primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform. Similarly to the Hecke  $L$ -function case, this holds because the primitive Hecke-Maass eigenforms form a basis for the space of newforms:

**Theorem 7.4.2.** *For any even or odd  $f \in \mathcal{C}_t(\Gamma_1(N))$ ,  $L(s, f)$  admits analytic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$ .*

*Proof.* Mimic the proof of Theorem 7.3.2. □

## 7.5 The Rankin-Selberg Method

### The Definition & Euler Product of $L(s, f \otimes g)$

The Rankin-Selberg method is a process by which we can construct new  $L$ -functions from old ones. Instead of giving the general definition outright, we first provide a full discussion of the method only in the simplest case. Many technical difficulties arise in the fully general setting. Let  $f, g \in \mathcal{S}_k(1)$  be primitive Hecke eigenforms with Fourier series

$$f(z) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) n^{\frac{k-1}{2}} e^{2\pi i n z} \quad \text{and} \quad g(z) = \sum_{n \geq 1} a_g(n) n^{\frac{k-1}{2}} e^{2\pi i n z}.$$

The  $L$ -function  $L(s, f \times g)$  of  $f$  and  $g$  is given by the  $L$ -series

$$L(s, f \times g) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_{f \times g}(n)}{n^s} = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n) \overline{a_g(n)}}{n^s} = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n) \overline{a_g(n)}}{n^s},$$

The **Rankin-Selberg convolution**  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  of  $f$  and  $g$  is defined as an  $L$ -series:

$$L(s, f \otimes g) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_{f \otimes g}(n)}{n^s} = \zeta(2s) L(s, f \times g),$$

where  $a_{f \otimes g}(n) = \sum_{n=ml^2} a_f(m) \overline{a_g(l)}$ . Since  $a_f(n) \ll_\varepsilon n^\varepsilon$  and  $a_g(n) \ll_\varepsilon n^\varepsilon$  by the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture,  $a_{f \times g}(n) \ll_\varepsilon n^\varepsilon$  as well. Hence  $L(s, f \times g)$  is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1 + \varepsilon$  and hence locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1$ . Since  $\zeta(2s)$  is also locally absolutely uniformly convergent in this region, the same follows for  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  too. The  $L$ -function  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  will also have an Euler product. To see this, let  $\alpha_i(p)$  and  $\beta_j(p)$  for  $1 \leq i, j \leq 2$  be the local roots at  $p$  of  $L(s, f)$  and  $L(s, g)$  respectively. Since  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  converges absolutely in the region  $\sigma > 1$ , multiplicativity of the Hecke eigenvalues implies

$$L(s, f \otimes g) = \zeta(2s) L(s, f \times g) = \prod_{p \nmid NM} (1 - p^{-2s})^{-1} \prod_p \left( \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{a_f(p^n) \overline{a_g(p^n)}}{p^{ns}} \right),$$

in this region. We now simplify the factor inside the latter product using Equation (7.14):

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{a_f(p^n) \overline{a_g(p^n)}}{p^{ns}} &= \sum_{n \geq 0} \left( \frac{\alpha_1(p)^{n+1} - \alpha_2(p)^{n+1}}{\alpha_1(p) - \alpha_2(p)} \right) \left( \frac{(\overline{\beta_1(p)})^{n+1} - (\overline{\beta_2(p)})^{n+1}}{\overline{\beta_1(p)} - \overline{\beta_2(p)}} \right) p^{-ns} \\ &= (\alpha_1(p) - \alpha_2(p))^{-1} \left( \overline{\beta_1(p)} - \overline{\beta_2(p)} \right)^{-1} \\ &\quad \cdot \left[ \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\alpha_1(p)^n (\overline{\beta_1(p)})^n}{p^{(n-1)s}} + \frac{\alpha_2(p)^n (\overline{\beta_2(p)})^n}{p^{(n-1)s}} - \frac{\alpha_1(p)^n (\overline{\beta_2(p)})^n}{p^{(n-1)s}} - \frac{\alpha_2(p)^n (\overline{\beta_1(p)})^n}{p^{(n-1)s}} \right] \\ &= (\alpha_1(p) - \alpha_2(p))^{-1} \left( \overline{\beta_1(p)} - \overline{\beta_2(p)} \right)^{-1} \left[ \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} \left( 1 - \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} \left( 1 - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1} - \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} \left( 1 - \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1} \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} \left( 1 - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1} \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= (\alpha_1(p) - \alpha_2(p))^{-1} \left( \overline{\beta_1(p)} - \overline{\beta_2(p)} \right)^{-1} \left( 1 - \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1} \\
&\cdot \left( 1 - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1} \left( 1 - \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1} \left( 1 - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1} \\
&\cdot \left[ \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} \left( 1 - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} p^{-s} \right) \left( 1 - \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} p^{-s} \right) \left( 1 - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} p^{-s} \right) \right. \\
&+ \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} \left( 1 - \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} p^{-s} \right) \left( 1 - \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} p^{-s} \right) \left( 1 - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} p^{-s} \right) \\
&- \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} \left( 1 - \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} p^{-s} \right) \left( 1 - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} p^{-s} \right) \left( 1 - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} p^{-s} \right) \\
&\left. - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} \left( 1 - \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} p^{-s} \right) \left( 1 - \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} p^{-s} \right) \left( 1 - \alpha_1(p) \overline{\beta_2(p)} p^{-s} \right) \right].
\end{aligned}$$

The term in the brackets simplifies to

$$\left( 1 - \alpha_1(p) \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} \overline{\beta_2(p)} p^{-2s} \right) (\alpha_1(p) - \alpha_2(p)) \left( \overline{\beta_1(p)} - \overline{\beta_2(p)} \right),$$

because all of the other terms are killed by symmetry in  $\alpha_1(p)$ ,  $\alpha_2(p)$ ,  $\overline{\beta_1(p)}$ , and  $\overline{\beta_2(p)}$ . The Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture implies  $\alpha_1(p) \alpha_2(p) \overline{\beta_1(p)} \overline{\beta_2(p)} = 1$ . Therefore the corresponding factor above is  $(1 - p^{-2s})$ . This factor cancels the local factor at  $p$  in the Euler product of  $\zeta(2s)$ , so that

$$\sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{a_f(p^n) \overline{a_g(p^n)}}{p^{ns}} = \prod_{1 \leq i, j \leq 2} \left( 1 - \alpha_i(p) \overline{\beta_j(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1}.$$

So in total we have a degree 4 Euler product,

$$L(s, f \otimes g) = \prod_p \prod_{1 \leq i, j \leq 2} \left( 1 - \alpha_i(p) \overline{\beta_j(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1}.$$

The local factor at  $p$  is  $L_p(s, f \otimes g) = \prod_{1 \leq i, j \leq 2} \left( 1 - \alpha_i(p) \overline{\beta_j(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1}$ .

## The Integral Representation of $L(s, f \otimes g)$ : Part I

We now look for an integral representation for  $L(s, f \otimes g)$ . Consider the following integral:

$$\int_{\Gamma_\infty \backslash \mathbb{H}} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^{s+k} d\mu.$$

This will turn out to be a Mellin transform as we will soon see. The region of convergence of this integral is not immediately clear because we cannot appeal to Method 1.5.1 directly. Indeed,

$$\Gamma_\infty \backslash \mathbb{H} = \{z \in \mathbb{H} : 0 \leq \operatorname{Re}(z) \leq 1\},$$

intersects infinitely many fundamental domains for  $\Gamma$ . In any case, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_{\Gamma_\infty \backslash \mathbb{H}} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^{s+k} d\mu &= \int_0^\infty \int_0^1 f(x+iy) \overline{g(x+iy)} y^{s+k} \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \\
 &= \int_0^\infty \int_0^1 \sum_{n,m \geq 1} a_f(n) \overline{a_g(m)} (nm)^{\frac{k-1}{2}} e^{2\pi i(n-m)x} e^{-2\pi(n+m)y} y^{s+k} \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \\
 &= \int_0^\infty \sum_{n,m \geq 1} \int_0^1 a_f(n) \overline{a_g(m)} (nm)^{\frac{k-1}{2}} e^{2\pi i(n-m)x} e^{-2\pi(n+m)y} y^{s+k} \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \quad \text{DCT} \\
 &= \int_0^\infty \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) \overline{a_g(n)} n^{k-1} e^{-4\pi n y} y^{s+k} \frac{dy}{y^2},
 \end{aligned}$$

where the last line follows by Equation (3.1). Notice that the last integral is a Mellin transform. The rest is a computation:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_0^\infty \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) \overline{a_g(n)} n^{k-1} e^{-4\pi n y} y^{s+k} \frac{dy}{y^2} &= \sum_{n \geq 1} a_f(n) \overline{a_g(n)} n^{k-1} \int_0^\infty e^{-4\pi n y} y^{s+k} \frac{dy}{y^2} \quad \text{DCT} \\
 &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n) \overline{a_g(n)}}{(4\pi)^{s+k-1} n^s} \int_0^\infty e^{-y} y^{s+k-1} \frac{dy}{y} \quad y \rightarrow \frac{y}{4\pi n} \\
 &= \frac{\Gamma(s+k-1)}{(4\pi)^{s+k-1}} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n) \overline{a_g(n)}}{n^s} \\
 &= \frac{\Gamma(s+k-1)}{(4\pi)^{s+k-1}} L(s, f \times g).
 \end{aligned}$$

This last expression is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1$  because the  $L$ -function is and the gamma factor is holomorphic in this region. Therefore the original integral is locally absolutely uniformly bounded. At this point we have an integral representation

$$L(s, f \times g) = \frac{(4\pi)^{s+k-1}}{\Gamma(s+k-1)} \int_{\Gamma_\infty \backslash \mathbb{H}} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^{s+k} d\mu.$$

We rewrite the integral as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_{\Gamma_\infty \backslash \mathbb{H}} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^{s+k} d\mu &= \int_{\mathcal{F}} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma} f(\gamma z) \overline{g(\gamma z)} \operatorname{Im}(\gamma z)^{s+k} d\mu \quad \text{folding} \\
 &= \int_{\mathcal{F}} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma} j(\gamma, z)^k \overline{j(\gamma, z)^k} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(\gamma z)^{s+k} d\mu \quad \text{modularity} \\
 &= \int_{\mathcal{F}} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma} |j(\gamma, z)|^{2k} \operatorname{Im}(\gamma z)^{s+k} d\mu \\
 &= \int_{\mathcal{F}} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k \sum_{\gamma \in \Gamma_\infty \backslash \Gamma} \operatorname{Im}(\gamma z)^s d\mu \\
 &= \int_{\mathcal{F}} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k E_\infty(z, s) d\mu.
 \end{aligned}$$



Note that  $E_\infty(z, s)$  is the Eisenstein series on  $\Gamma_0(1) \backslash \mathbb{H}$  at the  $\infty$  cusp. Altogether, this gives the integral representation

$$L(s, f \times g) = \frac{(4\pi)^{s+k-1}}{\Gamma(s+k-1)} \int_{\mathcal{F}} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k E_\infty(z, s) d\mu, \quad (7.19)$$

which is valid for  $\sigma > 1$ . We cannot investigate the integral any further until we understand the Fourier series of  $E_\infty(z, s)$  and have a functional equation as  $s \rightarrow 1 - s$ . Therefore we will take a necessary detour and return to the integral after.

## The Fourier Series and Functional Equation of $E_\infty(z, s)$

Let

$$E_\infty(z, s) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} a(n, y, s) e^{2\pi i n x}.$$

be the Fourier series of  $E_\infty(z, s)$ . Our first goal is to compute these coefficients. To do this we will need the following technical lemma:

**Lemma 7.5.1.** *Let  $M \geq 1$  be square-free. Then for  $\sigma > 1$  and  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,*

$$\sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{r(b; m)}{m^{2s}} = \begin{cases} \frac{\zeta(2s-1)}{\zeta(2s)} & \text{if } b = 0, \\ \frac{\sigma_{1-2s}(|b|)}{\zeta(2s)} & \text{if } b \neq 0, \end{cases}$$

where  $\sigma_s(b)$  is the generalized sum of divisors function.

*Proof.* If  $\sigma > 1$  then the desired evaluation of the sum is locally absolutely uniformly convergent because the Riemann zeta function is in that region. Hence the sum will be too provided we prove the identity. Suppose  $b = 0$ . Then  $r(0; m) = \varphi(m)$ . Since  $\varphi(m)$  is multiplicative we have

$$\sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{\varphi(m)}{m^{2s}} = \prod_p \left( \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{\varphi(p^k)}{p^{k(2s)}} \right). \quad (7.20)$$

Recalling that  $\varphi(p^k) = p^k - p^{k-1}$  for  $k \geq 1$ , make the following computation:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{\varphi(p^k)}{p^{k(2s)}} &= 1 + \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{p^k - p^{k-1}}{p^{k(2s)}} \\ &= \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{1}{p^{k(2s-1)}} - \frac{1}{p} \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{1}{p^{k(2s-1)}} \\ &= \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{1}{p^{k(2s-1)}} - p^{-2s} \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{1}{p^{k(2s-1)}} \\ &= (1 - p^{-2s}) \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{1}{p^{k(2s-1)}} \\ &= \frac{1 - p^{-2s}}{1 - p^{-(2s-1)}}. \end{aligned} \quad (7.21)$$

Combining Equations (7.20) and (7.21) gives

$$\sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{\varphi(m)}{m^{2s}} = \frac{\zeta(2s-1)}{\zeta(2s)}.$$

Now suppose  $b \neq 0$ , Proposition 1.4.1 gives the first equality in the following chain:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{r(b; m)}{m^{2s}} &= \sum_{m \geq 1} m^{-2s} \sum_{\ell | (b, m)} \ell \mu\left(\frac{m}{\ell}\right) \\
&= \sum_{\ell | b} \ell \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{\mu(m)}{(m\ell)^{2s}} \\
&= \left( \sum_{\ell | b} \ell^{1-2s} \right) \left( \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{\mu(m)}{m^{2s}} \right) \\
&= \sigma_{1-2s}(b) \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{\mu(m)}{m^{2s}} \\
&= \sigma_{1-2s}(|b|) \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{\mu(m)}{m^{2s}} \\
&= \frac{\sigma_{1-2s}(|b|)}{\zeta(2s)}
\end{aligned}$$

Proposition A.2.2.  $\square$

We can now compute the Fourier coefficients  $a(n, y, s)$ :

**Proposition 7.5.1.** *The Fourier coefficients  $a(n, y, s)$  are given by*

$$a(n, y, s) = \begin{cases} y^s + y^{1-s} \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(s - \frac{1}{2}) \zeta(2s-1)}{\Gamma(s) \zeta(2s)} & \text{if } n = 0, \\ 2\pi^s \frac{|n|^{s-\frac{1}{2}} \sigma_{1-2s}(|n|)}{\Gamma(s) \zeta(2s)} \sqrt{y} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y) & \text{if } n \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

*Proof.* By Remark 2.2.3, we have

$$E_\infty(z, s) = y^s + \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1, d \in \mathbb{Z} \\ (c, d) = 1}} \frac{y^s}{|cx + icy + d|^{2s}}.$$

The definition of the Fourier coefficients gives

$$a(n, y, s) = \int_0^1 E(x + iy, s) e^{-2\pi i n x} dx = y^s \delta_{n,0} + \int_0^1 \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1, d \in \mathbb{Z} \\ (c, d) = 1}} \frac{y^s}{|cx + icy + d|^{2s}} e^{-2\pi i n x} dx, \quad (7.22)$$

where we have used Equation (3.1). We are now reduced to computing

$$I(z, s) = \int_0^1 \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1, d \in \mathbb{Z} \\ (c, d) = 1}} \frac{y^s}{|cx + icy + d|^{2s}} e^{-2\pi i n x} dx.$$

Make the following observation: summing over all pairs  $(c, d)$  with  $c \geq 1$ ,  $d \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $c \equiv 0 \pmod{NM}$ , and  $(c, d) = 1$  is the same as summing over all triples  $(c, \ell, r)$  with  $c \geq 1$ ,  $\ell \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $r \pmod{c}$ , with

$c \equiv 0 \pmod{NM}$  and  $(r, c) = 1$ . This is seen by writing  $d = c\ell + r$ . Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
 I(z, s) &= \int_0^1 \sum_{\substack{c \geq 1, d \in \mathbb{Z} \\ (c, d) = 1}} \frac{y^s}{|cx + icy + d|^{2s}} e^{-2\pi i n x} dx \\
 &= \int_0^1 \sum_{(c, \ell, r)} \frac{y^s}{|c(x + \ell) + r + icy|^{2s}} e^{-2\pi i n x} dx \\
 &= \sum_{(c, \ell, r)} \int_0^1 \frac{y^s}{|c(x + \ell) + r + icy|^{2s}} e^{-2\pi i n x} dx && \text{DCT} \\
 &= \sum_{(c, \ell, r)} \frac{1}{c^{2s}} \int_0^1 \frac{y^s}{|x + \ell + \frac{r}{c} + iy|^{2s}} e^{-2\pi i n x} dx \\
 &= \sum_{(c, \ell, r)} \frac{1}{c^{2s}} \int_\ell^{\ell+1} \frac{y^s}{|x + \frac{r}{c} + iy|^{2s}} e^{-2\pi i n x} dx && x \rightarrow x - \ell \\
 &= \sum'_{\substack{c \geq 1 \\ r \pmod{c}}} \frac{1}{c^{2s}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{y^s}{|x + \frac{r}{c} + iy|^{2s}} e^{-2\pi i n x} dx && \text{DCT} \\
 &= \sum_{c \geq 1} \frac{1}{c^{2s}} \sum'_{r \pmod{c}} e^{\frac{2\pi i n r}{c}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{y^s}{(x^2 + y^2)^s} e^{-2\pi i n x} dx && x \rightarrow x - \frac{r}{c} \\
 &= \sum_{c \geq 1} \frac{r(n; c)}{c^{2s}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{y^s}{(x^2 + y^2)^s} e^{-2\pi i n x} dx \\
 &= \sum_{c \geq 1} \frac{r(n; c)}{c^{2s}} y^{1-s} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(x^2 + 1)^s} e^{-2\pi i n x y} dx && x \rightarrow xy,
 \end{aligned}$$

where on the right-hand side it is understood we are summing over all triples  $(c, \ell, r)$  with the prescribed properties. Using Lemma 7.5.1 yields

$$I(z, s) = \begin{cases} \frac{\zeta(2s-1)}{\zeta(2s)} y^{1-s} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(x^2+1)^s} dx & \text{if } n = 0, \\ \frac{\sigma_{1-2s}(|n|)}{\zeta(2s)} y^{1-s} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(x^2+1)^s} e^{-2\pi i n x y} dx & \text{if } n \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

Appealing to Appendix D.1 for this last integral and substituting the result back into Equation (7.22) finishes the proof.  $\square$

Having computed the Fourier coefficients, we would like to obtain a functional equation for  $E_\infty(z, s)$  as  $s \rightarrow 1 - s$  (this follows from Theorem 4.4.3 but we will demonstrate a full proof for the single Eisenstein series on  $\Gamma_0(1) \backslash \mathbb{H}$ ). To this end, we define the **completed real-analytic Eisenstein series**  $E^*(z, s)$  by

$$E^*(z, s) = \Lambda(2s, \zeta) E_\infty(z, s) = \pi^{-s} \Gamma(s) \zeta(2s) E_\infty(z, s).$$

From Proposition 7.5.1, the Fourier coefficients  $a^*(n, y, s)$  of  $E^*(z, s)$  are given by

$$a^*(n, y, s) = \begin{cases} y^s \pi^{-s} \Gamma(s) \zeta(2s) + y^{1-s} \pi^{-(s-\frac{1}{2})} \Gamma(s - \frac{1}{2}) \zeta(2s - 1) & \text{if } n = 0, \\ 2|n|^{s-\frac{1}{2}} \sigma_{1-2s}(|n|) \sqrt{y} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y) & \text{if } n \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

We can derive a functional equation for  $E^*(z, s)$ . Using the definition and functional equation for  $\Lambda(2s - 1, \zeta)$ , we can rewrite the second term in the constant coefficient to get

$$a^*(n, y, s) = \begin{cases} y^s \Lambda(2s, \zeta) + y^{1-s} \Lambda(2(1-s), \zeta) & \text{if } n = 0, \\ 2|n|^{s-\frac{1}{2}} \sigma_{1-2s}(|n|) \sqrt{y} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y) & \text{if } n \neq 0. \end{cases} \quad (7.23)$$

Now observe that the constant coefficient is invariant under  $s \rightarrow 1-s$ . Each  $n \neq 0$  coefficient is also invariant under  $s \rightarrow 1-s$ . To see this we will use two facts. First, from Appendix B.7,  $K_s(y)$  is invariant under  $s \rightarrow -s$  and so  $K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y)$  is invariant as  $s \rightarrow 1-s$ . Second, for  $n \geq 1$  we have

$$n^{s-\frac{1}{2}} \sigma_{1-2s}(n) = n^{\frac{1}{2}-s} n^{2s-1} \sigma_{1-2s}(n) = n^{\frac{1}{2}-s} n^{2s-1} \sum_{d|n} d^{1-2s} = n^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \sum_{d|n} \left(\frac{n}{d}\right)^{2s-1} = n^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \sigma_{2s-1}(n),$$

where the second to last equality follows by writing  $n^{2s-1} = \left(\frac{n}{d}\right)^{2s-1} d^{2s-1}$  for each  $d | n$ . These two facts together give the invariance of the  $n \neq 0$  coefficients under  $s \rightarrow 1-s$ . Altogether, we have shown the following functional equation for  $E^*(z, s)$ :

$$E^*(z, s) = E^*(z, 1-s).$$

We already knew  $E_\infty(z, s)$  possessed a functional equation as  $s \rightarrow 1-s$  from Theorem 4.4.3 but we needed an explicit version in order to understand  $L(s, f \otimes g)$ . We can now obtain meromorphic continuation of  $E^*(z, s)$  in  $s$  to all of  $\mathbb{C}$ . By the functional equation,  $E^*(z, s)$  admits analytic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  outside of the critical strip. Therefore we may assume  $|\sigma - \frac{1}{2}| \leq \frac{1}{2}$ . We first write  $E^*(z, s)$  as a Fourier series using Equation (7.23):

$$E^*(z, s) = y^s \Lambda(2s, \zeta) + y^{1-s} \Lambda(2(1-s), \zeta) + \sum_{n \neq 0} 2|n|^{s-\frac{1}{2}} \sigma_{1-2s}(|n|) \sqrt{y} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x}.$$

Since  $\Lambda(2s, \zeta)$  is meromorphic on the critical strip, the constant term of  $E^*(z, s)$  is as well. To finish the meromorphic continuation of  $E^*(z, s)$  it now suffices to show

$$\sum_{n \neq 0} 2|n|^{s-\frac{1}{2}} \sigma_{1-2s}(|n|) \sqrt{y} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x},$$

is meromorphic on the critical strip. We will actually prove it is locally absolutely uniformly convergent on this region. To achieve this we need two bounds, one for  $\sigma_{1-2s}(|n|)$  and one for  $K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y)$ . For the first bound, we use the estimate  $\sigma_0(n) \ll_\epsilon n^\epsilon$ . Therefore we have the crude bound

$$\sigma_{1-2s}(|n|) = \sum_{d|n} d^{1-2s} < \sigma_0(|n|) |n|^{1-2s} \ll_\epsilon |n|^{1-2s+\epsilon}.$$

For the second estimate, Lemma B.7.2 and the fact that  $\sigma$  is bounded together give

$$K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y) \ll e^{-2\pi|n|y}.$$

Using these two estimates, we have

$$\sum_{n \neq 0} 2|n|^{s-\frac{1}{2}} \sigma_{1-2s}(|n|) \sqrt{y} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x} \ll_\epsilon \sum_{n \geq 1} 4n^{\frac{1}{2}-s+\epsilon} \sqrt{y} e^{-2\pi n y}. \quad (7.24)$$

This latter series is locally absolutely uniformly convergent by the ratio test. The meromorphic continuation of  $E^*(z, s)$  to  $\mathbb{C}$  in  $s$  follows. It remains to investigate the poles and residues. We will accomplish this from direct inspection of the Fourier coefficients:

**Proposition 7.5.2.**  $E^*(z, s)$  has simple poles at  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$ , and

$$\operatorname{Res}_{s=0} E^*(z, s) = -\frac{1}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \operatorname{Res}_{s=1} E^*(z, s) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

*Proof.* Since the constant term in the Fourier series of  $E^*(z, s)$  is the only non-holomorphic term, poles of  $E^*(z, s)$  can only come from that term. So we are reduced to understanding the poles of

$$y^s \Lambda(2s, \zeta) + y^{1-s} \Lambda(2(1-s), \zeta). \quad (7.25)$$

Notice  $\Lambda(2s, \zeta)$  has simple poles at  $s = 0$ ,  $s = \frac{1}{2}$  (one from the Riemann zeta function and one from the gamma factor) and no others. It follows that  $E^*(z, s)$  has a simple pole at  $s = 0$  coming from the  $y^s$  term in Equation (7.25), and by the functional equation there is also a pole at  $s = 1$  coming from the  $y^{1-s}$  term. At  $s = \frac{1}{2}$ , both terms in Equation (7.25) have simple poles and we will show that the singularity there is removable. Recall  $\Gamma(\frac{1}{2}) = \sqrt{\pi}$ . Also, by Proposition 7.1.1,  $\operatorname{Res}_{s=\frac{1}{2}} \zeta(2s) = \frac{1}{2}$  and  $\operatorname{Res}_{s=\frac{1}{2}} \zeta(2(1-s)) = -\frac{1}{2}$ . So altogether

$$\operatorname{Res}_{s=\frac{1}{2}} E^*(z, s) = \operatorname{Res}_{s=\frac{1}{2}} [y^s \Lambda(2s, \zeta) + y^{1-s} \Lambda(2(1-s), \zeta)] = \frac{1}{2} y^{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{1}{2} y^{\frac{1}{2}} = 0.$$

Hence the singularity at  $s = \frac{1}{2}$  is removable. As for the residues at  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$ , the functional equation implies that they are negatives of each other. So it suffices to compute the residue at  $s = 0$ . Recall  $\zeta(0) = -\frac{1}{2}$  and  $\operatorname{Res}_{s=0} \Gamma(s) = 1$ . Then together we find

$$\operatorname{Res}_{s=0} E^*(z, s) = \operatorname{Res}_{s=0} y^s \Lambda(2s, \zeta) = -\frac{1}{2}. \quad \square$$

This completes our study of the real-analytic Eisenstein series  $E_\infty(z, s)$ .

## The Integral Representation of $L(s, f \otimes g)$ : Part II

We can now continue with the Rankin-Selberg convolution  $L(s, f \otimes g)$ . Writing Equation (7.19) in terms of  $E^*(z, s)$  and  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  results in the integral representation

$$L(s, f \otimes g) = \frac{(4\pi)^{s+k-1} \pi^s}{\Gamma(s+k-1)\Gamma(s)} \int_{\mathcal{F}} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k E^*(z, s) d\mu.$$

This integral representation will give analytic continuation. To see this, note that the gamma factors are analytic for  $\sigma < 0$ . By the functional equation for  $E^*(z, s)$ , the integral is invariant as  $s \rightarrow 1-s$ . These two facts together give analytic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  outside of the critical strip. The continuation inside of the critical strip will be meromorphic because of the poles of  $E^*(z, s)$ . To see this, taking the integral representation and substituting the Fourier series for  $E^*(z, s)$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} L(s, f \otimes g) &= \frac{(4\pi)^{s+k-1} \pi^s}{\Gamma(s+k-1)\Gamma(s)} \left[ \int_{\mathcal{F}} f(x+iy) \overline{g(x+iy)} y^k (y^s \Lambda(2s, \zeta) + y^{1-s} \Lambda(2(1-s), \zeta)) \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \int_{\mathcal{F}} f(x+iy) \overline{g(x+iy)} y^k \sum_{n \neq 0} 2|n|^{s-\frac{1}{2}} \sigma_{1-2s}(|n|) \sqrt{y} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi|n|y) e^{2\pi i n x} \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \right], \end{aligned} \quad (7.26)$$

and we are reduced to showing that both integrals are locally absolutely uniformly bounded in the critical strip and away from the poles of  $E^*(z, s)$ . Indeed, the first integral is locally absolutely uniformly bounded in this region by Method 1.5.1. As for the second integral, Equation (7.24) implies that it is

$$O_\varepsilon \left( \int_{\mathcal{F}} f(x+iy) \overline{g(x+iy)} y^k \sum_{n \geq 1} 4n^{\frac{1}{2}-s+\varepsilon} \sqrt{y} e^{-2\pi n y} \frac{dx dy}{y^2} \right).$$

As the sum in the integrand is holomorphic, we can now appeal to Method 1.5.1. The meromorphic continuation to the critical strip and hence to all of  $\mathbb{C}$  follows. In particular,  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  has at most simple poles at  $s = 0$  and  $s = 1$ . Actually, there is no pole at  $s = 0$ . Indeed,  $\gamma(s, f \otimes g)$  has a simple pole at  $s = 0$  coming from the gamma factors and therefore its reciprocal has a simple zero. This cancels the simple pole at  $s = 0$  coming from  $E^*(z, s)$  and therefore  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  has a removable singularity at  $s = 0$ . So there is at worst a simple pole at  $s = 1$ .

## The Functional Equation, Critical Strip & Residues of $L(s, f \otimes g)$

An immediate consequence of the symmetry of integral representation is the functional equation:

$$\frac{\Gamma(s+k-1)\Gamma(s)}{(4\pi)^{s+k-1}\pi^s} L(s, f \otimes g) = \frac{\Gamma((1-s)+k-1)\Gamma(1-s)}{(4\pi)^{(1-s)+k-1}\pi^{1-s}} L(1-s, f \otimes g).$$

Applying the Legendre duplication formula for the gamma function twice we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\Gamma(s+k-1)\Gamma(s)}{(4\pi)^{s+k-1}\pi^s} &= \frac{2^{2s+k-3}}{(4\pi)^{s+k-1}\pi^{s+1}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+k-1}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+k}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+1}{2}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2^{k+1}\pi^k} \pi^{-2s} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+k-1}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+k}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+1}{2}\right). \end{aligned} \quad (7.27)$$

The factor in front is independent of  $s$  and can therefore be canceled in the functional equation. We identify the gamma factor as:

$$\gamma(s, f \otimes g) = \pi^{-2s} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+k-1}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+k}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+1}{2}\right),$$

with  $\mu_{1,1} = k-1$ ,  $\mu_{2,2} = k$ ,  $\mu_{1,2} = 0$ , and  $\mu_{2,1} = 1$  the local roots at infinity. The completed  $L$ -function is

$$\Lambda(s, f \otimes g) = \pi^{-2s} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+k-1}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+k}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+1}{2}\right) L(s, f \otimes g),$$

so the conductor is  $q(f \otimes g) = 1$  and no primes ramify. Clearly  $q(f \otimes g) \mid q(f)^2 q(g)^2$  and conductor dropping does not occur. Then

$$\Lambda(s, f \otimes g) = \Lambda(1-s, f \otimes g),$$

is the functional equation of  $L(s, f \otimes g)$ . In particular, the root number  $\varepsilon(f \otimes g) = 1$ , and  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  is self-dual. We can now show that  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  is of order 1. Since the possible pole at  $s = 1$  is simple, multiplying by  $(s-1)$  clears the possible polar divisor. As the integrals in the integral representation are absolutely bounded, computing the order amounts to estimating the gamma factor. Since the reciprocal of the gamma function is of order 1, we have

$$\frac{1}{\gamma(s, f \otimes g)} \ll_{\varepsilon} e^{|s|^{1+\varepsilon}}.$$

So the reciprocal of the gamma factor is also of order 1. Then we find that

$$(s-1)L(s, f \otimes g) \ll_{\varepsilon} e^{|s|^{1+\varepsilon}}.$$

Thus  $(s-1)L(s, f \otimes g)$  is of order 1, and so  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  is as well after removing the polar divisor. At last, we compute the residue of  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  at  $s = 1$ :

**Proposition 7.5.3.** *Let  $f, g \in \mathcal{S}_k(1)$  be primitive Hecke eigenforms. Then*

$$\operatorname{Res}_{s=1} L(s, f \otimes g) = \frac{4^k \pi^{k+1} V}{2\Gamma(k)} \langle f, g \rangle,$$

where  $\langle f, g \rangle$  is the Petersson inner product.

*Proof.* As  $V = \frac{\pi}{3}$ , Proposition 7.5.2 implies

$$\operatorname{Res}_{s=1} L(s, f \otimes g) = \frac{4^k \pi^{k+1}}{\Gamma(k)} \operatorname{Res}_{s=1} \int_{\mathcal{F}} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k E^*(z, s) d\mu = \frac{4^k \pi^{k+1} V}{2\Gamma(k)} \langle f, g \rangle. \quad \square$$

Notice that if  $f = g$ , then  $\langle f, f \rangle \neq 0$  and therefore the residue at  $s = 1$  is not zero and hence not a removable singularity. Actually, this is the only instance in which there is a pole since Theorem 3.6.1 implies that the primitive Hecke eigenforms are orthogonal so that  $\langle f, g \rangle = 0$  unless  $f = g$ . We summarize all of our work into the following theorem:

**Theorem 7.5.1.** *For any two primitive Hecke eigenforms  $f, g \in \mathcal{S}_k(1)$ ,  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  is a Selberg class  $L$ -function. For  $\sigma > 1$ , it has locally absolutely uniformly convergent degree 4 Euler product given by*

$$L(s, f \otimes g) = \prod_p \prod_{1 \leq i, j \leq 2} \left( 1 - \alpha_i(p) \overline{\beta_j(p)} p^{-s} \right)^{-1}.$$

Moreover, it admits meromorphic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  via the integral representation

$$L(s, f \otimes g) = \frac{(4\pi)^{s+k-1} \pi^s}{\Gamma(s+k-1)\Gamma(s)} \int_{\mathcal{F}} f(z) \overline{g(z)} \operatorname{Im}(z)^k E^*(z, s) d\mu,$$

possesses the functional equation

$$\pi^{-2s} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+k-1}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+k}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s+1}{2}\right) L(s, f \otimes g) = \Lambda(s, f \otimes g) = \Lambda(1-s, f \otimes g),$$

and if  $f = g$  there is simple pole at  $s = 1$  of residue  $\frac{4^k \pi^{k+1} V}{2\Gamma(k)} \langle f, g \rangle$ .

## The Rankin-Selberg Method

The Rankin-Selberg method is much more complicated in general, but the argument is essentially the same. Let  $f$  and  $g$  both be primitive Hecke or Heck-Maass eigenforms with Fourier coefficients  $a_f(n)$  and  $a_g(n)$  respectively. We suppose  $f$  has weight  $k$ /eigenvalue  $\lambda$ , level  $N$ , and character  $\chi$ , and  $g$  has weight  $\ell$ /eigenvalue  $\nu$ , level  $M$ , and character  $\psi$ . The  $L$ -function  $L(s, f \times g)$  of  $f$  and  $g$  is given by the  $L$ -series

$$L(s, f \times g) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_{f \times g}(n)}{n^s} = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_f(n) \overline{a_g(n)}}{n^s}.$$

The **Rankin-Selberg convolution**  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  of  $f$  and  $g$  is defined as an  $L$ -series:

$$L(s, f \otimes g) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a_{f \otimes g}(n)}{n^s} = L(2s, \chi \overline{\psi}) L(s, f \times g),$$

where  $a_{f \otimes g}(n) = \sum_{m \mid n} (\chi \overline{\psi})(\ell^2) a_f(m) \overline{a_g(m)}$ . The following argument is the **Rankin-Selberg method**:

**Method 7.5.1 (Rankin-Selberg method).** Let  $f$  and  $b$  both be primitive Hecke or Hecke-Maass eigenforms. Also suppose the following:

- (i)  $f$  has weight  $k$ /eigenvalue  $\lambda$ , level  $N$ , and character  $\chi$ .
- (ii)  $g$  has weight  $\ell$ /eigenvalue  $\nu$ , level  $M$ , and character  $\psi$ .
- (iii) The Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture holds if  $f$  and  $g$  are Hecke-Maass eigenforms.

Then the Rankin-Selberg convolution  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  is a Selberg class  $L$ -function.

We make a few remarks about the Rankin-Selberg method. Local absolute uniform convergence for  $\sigma > 1$  (we must assume the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture in the Maass form case) are proved in the exactly the same way as we have described. The argument for the Euler product is also similar. However, if either  $N > 1$  or  $M > 1$ , the computation becomes more difficult to compute since the local  $p$  factors for  $p \mid NM$  change. Moreover, the situation is increasingly complicated if  $(N, M) > 1$  since conductor dropping can occur. The integral representation has a similar argument, but if the weights/eigenvalues are distinct the resulting Eisenstein series becomes more complicated. In particular, it is on  $\Gamma_0(NM) \backslash \mathbb{H}$  and if  $NM > 1$ , then there is more than just the cusp at  $\infty$ . Therefore the functional equation of the Eisenstein series at the  $\infty$  cusp then reflects into a linear combination of Eisenstein series at the other cusps. This results in the requirement to compute the Fourier coefficients of all of these Eisenstein series. Moreover, this procedure can be generalized to remove the primitive Hecke and/or primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform conditions by taking linear combinations, but we won't attempt discussing this further.

## 7.6 Applications of the Rankin-Selberg Method

### The Ramanujan-Petersson Conjecture on Average

Let  $f$  be a Hecke or Hecke-Maass eigenform. Using Rankin-Selberg convolutions, it is possible to show the weaker result that  $a_f(n) \ll_\varepsilon n^\varepsilon$  holds on average without assuming the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture:

**Proposition 7.6.1.** *Let  $f$  be a primitive Hecke or Hecke-Maass eigenform. Then for any  $X > 0$ , we have*

$$\sum_{n \leq X} |a_f(n)| \ll_\varepsilon X^{1+\varepsilon},$$

*Proof.* By the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality,

$$\left( \sum_{n \leq X} |a_f(n)| \right)^2 \leq X \sum_{n \leq X} |a_f(n)|^2, \quad (7.28)$$

The Rankin-Selberg square  $L(s, f \otimes f)$  is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > \frac{3}{2}$ . Therefore it still admits meromorphic continuation to  $\mathbb{C}$  with a simple pole at  $s = 1$ . By Landau's theorem, the abscissa of absolute convergence of  $L(s, f \otimes f)$ , and hence  $L(s, f \times f)$  too, is 1 so by Proposition 6.1.3 we have

$$\sum_{n \leq X} |a_f(n)|^2 \ll_\varepsilon X^{1+\varepsilon},$$



for any  $\varepsilon > 0$ . Substituting this bound into Equation (7.28), we obtain

$$\left( \sum_{n \leq X} |a_f(n)| \right)^2 \ll_{\varepsilon} X^{2+\varepsilon},$$

and taking the square root yields

$$\sum_{n \leq X} |a_f(n)| \ll_{\varepsilon} X^{1+\varepsilon}.$$

□

The bound in Proposition 7.6.1 should be compared with the implication  $a_f(n) \ll_{\varepsilon} n^{\varepsilon}$  that follows from the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture. While Proposition 7.6.1 is not useful in the holomorphic form case, it is in the Maass form case. Indeed, recall that if  $f$  is a primitive Hecke-Maass eigenform we needed to assume the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture to ensure  $a_f(n) \ll_{\varepsilon} n^{\varepsilon}$  so that  $L(s, f)$  was locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1$ . However, Propositions 6.1.4 and 7.6.1 together imply that  $L(s, f)$  is locally absolutely uniformly convergent for  $\sigma > 1 + \varepsilon$  and hence for  $\sigma > 1$ . This method avoids assuming the Ramanujan-Petersson conjecture. Therefore we may remove this assumption in Theorem 7.4.1.

## Strong Multiplicity One

Let  $f$  be a primitive Hecke or Hecke-Maass eigenform. Then  $f$  is determined by Hecke eigenvalues at primes for fixed weight/eigenvalue and level. Using Rankin-Selberg convolutions, we can prove **strong multiplicity one** for holomorphic or Maass forms which says that  $f$  is determined by Hecke eigenvalues at all but finitely many primes for fixed weight/eigenvalue, level, and character:

**Theorem 7.6.1 (Strong multiplicity one, holomorphic and Maass versions).** *Let  $f$  and  $g$  both be primitive Hecke or Hecke-Maass eigenforms of the same weight/eigenvalue, level, and character. Denote the Hecke eigenvalues by  $\lambda_f(n)$  and  $\lambda_g(n)$  respectively. If  $a_f(p) = a_g(p)$  for all but finitely many primes  $p$ , then  $f = g$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $S$  be the set the primes for which  $\lambda_f(p) \neq \lambda_g(p)$  including the primes that ramify for  $L(s, f)$  and  $L(s, g)$ . By assumption,  $S$  is finite. As the local factors of  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  are holomorphic and nonzero at  $s = 1$ , the order of the pole of  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  is the same as the order of the pole of

$$L(s, f \otimes g) \prod_{p \in S} L_p(s, f \otimes g)^{-1} = \prod_{p \notin S} L_p(s, f \otimes g).$$

But as  $f$  and  $g$  have the same the weight/eigenvalue, level, and character, and  $\lambda_f(p) = \lambda_g(p)$  for all  $p \notin S$ , we have

$$\prod_{p \notin S} L_p(s, f \otimes g) = \prod_{p \notin S} L_p(s, f \otimes f).$$

Since  $L(s, f \otimes f)$  has a simple pole at  $s = 1$ , it follows that  $L(s, f \otimes g)$  does too. But then  $f = g$ . □

## Part IV

### Analytic Results for $L$ -functions

# Chapter 8

## Non-vanishing Results for $L$ -functions

We will see how  $L$ -functions can be used to prove interesting arithmetic results. Namely, we prove a crowning gem of analytic number theory: Dirichlet's theorem on primes in arithmetic progressions. This result is a consequence of a non-vanishing result for Dirichlet  $L$ -functions at  $s = 1$ . This gives sufficient motivation for the study of non-vanishing results, so after proving Dirichlet's theorem, we prove two stronger non-vanishing theorems: one for the Riemann zeta function and the other for Dirichlet  $L$ -functions.

### 8.1 Dirichlet's Theorem on Primes in Arithmetic Progressions

One of the more well-known arithmetic results proved using  $L$ -functions is **Dirichlet's theorem on primes in arithmetic progressions**:

**Theorem 8.1.1 (Dirichlet's theorem on primes in arithmetic progressions).** *Let  $a$  and  $m$  be positive integers such that  $(a, m) = 1$ . Then the arithmetic progression  $\{a + km \mid k \in \mathbb{N}\}$  contain infinitely many primes.*

We will delay the proof for the moment, for it is well-worth understanding some of the motivation behind why this theorem is interesting and how exactly Dirichlet used the analytic techniques of  $L$ -functions to attack this purely arithmetic statement. We begin by recalling Euclid's famous theorem on the infinitude of the primes. Euclid's proof is completely elementary and arithmetic in nature. He argues that if there were finitely many primes  $p_1, p_2, \dots, p_k$  then a short consideration of  $(p_1 p_2 \cdots p_k) + 1$  shows that this number must either be divisible by a prime not in our list or must be prime itself. As primes are the multiplicative building blocks of arithmetic, Euclid assures us that we have an ample amount of primes to work with. Now there is a slightly stronger result due to Euler (see [Eul44]) requiring analytic techniques:

**Theorem 8.1.2.** *The series*

$$\sum_p \frac{1}{p},$$

*diverges.*

*Proof.* For  $\sigma > 1$ ,  $\zeta(s)$  is holomorphic and admits the degree 1 Euler product

$$\zeta(s) = \prod_p (1 - p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

Taking the logarithm, we get

$$\log \zeta(s) = - \sum_p \log(1 - p^{-s}).$$

The Taylor series of the logarithm gives

$$\log(1 - p^{-s}) = \sum_{k \geq 1} (-1)^{k-1} \frac{(-p^{-s})^k}{k} = \sum_{k \geq 1} (-1)^{2k-1} \frac{1}{kp^{ks}},$$

so that

$$\log \zeta(s) = \sum_p \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{1}{kp^{ks}}. \quad (8.1)$$

The double sum restricted to  $k \geq 2$  is uniformly bounded for  $\sigma > 1$ . To see this, first observe

$$\left| \sum_{k \geq 2} \frac{1}{kp^{ks}} \right| \leq \sum_{k \geq 2} \left| \frac{1}{kp^{ks}} \right| \leq \sum_{k \geq 2} \left| \frac{1}{p^{ks}} \right| \leq \sum_{k \geq 2} \frac{1}{p^k} = \frac{1}{p^2} \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{1}{p^k} = \frac{1}{p^2} (1 - p^{-1})^{-1} \leq \frac{2}{p^2},$$

where the last inequality follows because  $p \geq 2$ . Then

$$\left| \sum_p \sum_{k \geq 2} \frac{1}{kp^{ks}} \right| \leq 2 \sum_p \frac{1}{p^2} < 2 \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{n^2} = 2\zeta(2). \quad (8.2)$$

So by equation Equations (8.1) and (8.2),

$$\left| \log \zeta(s) - \sum_p \frac{1}{p^s} \right| = \left| \sum_p \sum_{k \geq 2} \frac{1}{kp^{ks}} \right|,$$

remains bounded as  $s \rightarrow 1$ . The claim now follows since  $\zeta(s)$  has a simple pole at  $s = 1$ .  $\square$

Theorem 8.1.2 tells us that there are infinitely many primes, but also that the primes are not too “sparse” in the integers for otherwise the series would converge. The idea Dirichlet used to prove his result on primes in arithmetic progressions was in a very similar spirit. He sought out to prove the divergence of the series

$$\sum_{p \equiv a \pmod{m}} \frac{1}{p},$$

for positive integers  $a$  and  $m$  with  $(a, m) = 1$  as the divergence immediately implies there are infinitely many primes  $p$  of the form  $p \equiv a \pmod{m}$ . In the case  $a = 1$  and  $m = 2$  we recover Theorem 8.1.2 exactly since every prime is odd. Dirichlet’s proof proceeds in a similar way to that of Theorem 8.1.2 and this is where Dirichlet used what are now known as Dirichlet characters and Dirichlet  $L$ -functions. The proof can be broken into three steps. The first is to proceed as Euler did, but with the Dirichlet  $L$ -function  $L(s, \chi)$  where  $\chi$  has modulus  $m$ . That is, write  $L(s, \chi)$  as a sum over primes and a bounded term as  $s \rightarrow 1$ . The next step is to use the orthogonality relations of the characters to sieve out the correct sum. The last step is to show the non-vanishing result  $L(1, \chi) \neq 0$  for all non-principal characters  $\chi$ . This is the essential part of the proof as it is what assures us that the sum diverges. We will prove this non-vanishing result first and then prove Dirichlet’s theorem on primes in arithmetic progressions.

**Theorem 8.1.3.** *For any non-principal Dirichlet character  $\chi$ ,  $L(1, \chi) \neq 0$ .*

*Proof.* Choose a positive integer  $m > 1$ . It will be enough to prove this for all Dirichlet characters  $\chi$  modulo  $m$ . We establish a preliminary result first. We claim there exist positive integers  $f_p$  and  $g_p$  with  $f_p g_p = \varphi(m)$  such that

$$\prod_{\chi} L(s, \chi) = \prod_{p \nmid m} (1 - p^{-f_p s})^{-g_p}.$$

To see this, the map  $\chi \rightarrow \chi(p)$  is a homomorphism from the group of Dirichlet characters modulo  $m$  into  $\mu_m$  the group of  $m$ -th roots of unity. Since  $\mu_m$  is cyclic, the image of this map is a cyclic group of order say  $f_p$ . In other words, the image is exactly  $\mu_{f_p}$ . Letting  $g_p$  be the order of the kernel,  $f_p g_p = \varphi(m)$  because  $X_m \cong (\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z})^*$ . In other words, for every  $\omega \in \mu_{f_p}$  there are  $g_p$  characters  $\chi$  such that  $\chi(p) = \omega$ . So for fixed  $p \nmid m$ , we compute

$$\prod_{\chi} (1 - \chi(p)p^{-s}) = \prod_{\omega \in \mu_{f_p}} (1 - \omega p^{-s})^{g_p} = (1 - p^{-f_p s})^{g_p}, \quad (8.3)$$

where the last equality follows since the product is over all  $f_p$ -th roots of unity. Then Equation (8.3) and the Euler product for  $L(s, \chi)$  together imply

$$\prod_{\chi} L(s, \chi) = \prod_{\chi} \prod_{p \nmid m} (1 - \chi(p)p^{-s})^{-1} = \prod_{p \nmid m} \prod_{\chi} (1 - \chi(p)p^{-s})^{-1} = \prod_{p \nmid m} (1 - p^{-f_p s})^{-g_p}. \quad (8.4)$$

This establishes the preliminary result. Upon expanding the last product in Equation (8.4), we see that  $\prod_{\chi} L(s, \chi)$  defines a Dirichlet series with positive coefficients and constant term 1. Therefore it takes positive values larger than 1 along the part of the real line in the region  $\sigma > 1$ . We will now show  $L(1, \chi) \neq 0$  for non-principal  $\chi$ , and we will separate the cases  $\chi$  is real or complex. Suppose  $\chi$  is complex. If  $L(1, \chi) = 0$  then the functional equation for  $L(s, \tilde{\chi})$ , where  $\tilde{\chi}$  is the primitive character inducing  $\chi$ , implies  $L(1, \bar{\chi}) = 0$ . Now on the other hand,  $L(s, \chi_{m,0})$  has a simple pole at  $s = 1$  (coming from the  $\zeta(s)$  factor) so altogether  $\prod_{\chi} L(s, \chi)$  is zero at  $s = 1$ . This contradicts that it takes positive values larger than 1 along the part of the real line in the region  $\sigma > 1$  and so  $L(1, \chi) \neq 0$ . Now suppose  $\chi$  is real and consider

$$\frac{L(s, \chi_{m,0})L(s, \chi)}{L(2s, \chi_{m,0})} = \prod_{p \nmid m} \frac{(1 - p^{-s})^{-1}(1 - \chi(p)p^{-s})^{-1}}{(1 - p^{-2s})^{-1}}.$$

If  $\chi(p) = -1$  then the corresponding factor on the right-hand side is 1. If  $\chi(p) = 1$ , then

$$\frac{(1 - p^{-s})^{-1}(1 - \chi(p)p^{-s})^{-1}}{(1 - p^{-2s})^{-1}} = \frac{(1 - p^{-s})^{-2}}{(1 - p^{-2s})^{-1}} = \frac{(1 + p^{-s})}{(1 - p^{-s})} = 1 + 2 \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{1}{p^{ks}}.$$

These facts together imply that  $\frac{L(s, \chi_{m,0})L(s, \chi)}{L(2s, \chi_{m,0})}$  defines a Dirichlet series with positive coefficients and constant term 1. Therefore it takes positive values larger than 1 along the part of the real line in the region  $\sigma > 1$ . If  $L(1, \chi) = 0$  then  $\frac{L(s, \chi_{m,0})L(s, \chi)}{L(2s, \chi_{m,0})}$  is zero at  $s = 1$  because the zero of  $L(s, \chi)$  cancels the simple pole of  $L(s, \chi_{m,0})$  at  $s = 1$  and  $L(2, \chi_{m,0}) \neq 0$  because  $L(s, \chi_{m,0})$  is defined by a Dirichlet series with positive coefficients in the region  $\sigma > 1$ . As in the complex case, this gives a contradiction. So we have shown  $L(1, \chi) \neq 0$  for all non-principal  $\chi$  which completes the proof.  $\square$

We now have enough machinery to prove Dirichlet's theorem on primes in arithmetic progressions:

*Proof of Dirichlet's theorem on primes in arithmetic progressions.* Let  $\chi$  be a Dirichlet character modulo  $m$ . Then for  $\sigma > 1$ ,  $L(s, \chi)$  is holomorphic and admits the degree 1 Euler product

$$L(s, \chi) = \prod_p (1 - \chi(p)p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

Taking the logarithm gives

$$\log L(s, \chi) = - \sum_p \log(1 - \chi(p)p^{-s}).$$

The Taylor series of the logarithm implies

$$\log(1 - \chi(p)p^{-s}) = \sum_{k \geq 1} (-1)^{k-1} \frac{(-\chi(p)p^{-s})^k}{k} = \sum_{k \geq 1} (-1)^{2k-1} \frac{\chi(p^k)}{kp^{ks}},$$

so that

$$\log L(s, \chi) = \sum_p \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{\chi(p^k)}{kp^{ks}}. \quad (8.5)$$

The double sum restricted to  $k \geq 2$  is uniformly bounded for  $\sigma > 1$ . Indeed, first observe

$$\left| \sum_{k \geq 2} \frac{\chi(p^k)}{kp^{ks}} \right| \leq \sum_{k \geq 2} \left| \frac{\chi(p^k)}{kp^{ks}} \right| \leq \sum_{k \geq 2} \left| \frac{1}{p^{ks}} \right| \leq \sum_{k \geq 2} \frac{1}{p^k} = \frac{1}{p^2} \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{1}{p^k} = \frac{1}{p^2} (1 - p^{-1})^{-1} \leq \frac{2}{p^2},$$

where the last inequality follows because  $p > 2$ . Then

$$\left| \sum_p \sum_{k \geq 2} \frac{\chi(p^k)}{kp^{ks}} \right| \leq 2 \sum_p \frac{1}{p^2} < 2 \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{n^2} = 2\zeta(2),$$

as desired. Now using Equation (8.5), we have

$$\sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \overline{\chi(a)} \log L(s, \chi) = \sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \sum_p \frac{\overline{\chi(a)} \chi(p)}{p^s} + \sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \overline{\chi(a)} \sum_p \sum_{k \geq 2} \frac{\chi(p^k)}{kp^{ks}}. \quad (8.6)$$

By the orthogonality relations (Proposition 1.3.1 (ii)), we find that

$$\sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \sum_p \frac{\overline{\chi(a)} \chi(p)}{p^s} = \sum_p \frac{1}{p^s} \sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \overline{\chi(a)} \chi(p) = \varphi(m) \sum_{p \equiv a \pmod{m}} \frac{1}{p^s}, \quad (8.7)$$

and so combining Equations (8.6) and (8.7) gives

$$\sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \overline{\chi(a)} \log L(s, \chi) - \sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \overline{\chi(a)} \sum_p \sum_{k \geq 2} \frac{\chi(p^k)}{kp^{ks}} = \varphi(m) \sum_{p \equiv a \pmod{m}} \frac{1}{p^s}.$$

The latter sum on the left-hand side is uniformly bounded for  $\sigma > 1$  because the inner double sum is and there are finitely many Dirichlet characters modulo  $m$ . Therefore it suffices to show that the first sum on the left-hand side diverges as  $s \rightarrow 1$ . For  $\chi = \chi_{m,0}$ ,

$$L(s, \chi_{m,0}) = \zeta(s) \prod_{p|m} (1 - p^{-s}).$$

So the corresponding term in the sum is

$$\overline{\chi_{m,0}}(a) \log L(s, \chi_{m,0}) = \log L(s, \chi_{m,0}) = \log \left( \zeta(s) \prod_{p|m} (1 - p^{-s}) \right) = \log \zeta(s) + \sum_{p|m} \log(1 - p^{-s}),$$

which diverges as  $s \rightarrow 1$  because  $\zeta(s)$  has a simple pole at  $s = 1$ . We will be done if  $\log L(s, \chi)$  remains bounded as  $s \rightarrow 1$  for all  $\chi \neq \chi_{m,0}$ . So assume  $\chi$  is not principal. Then if  $\tilde{\chi}$  is the character inducing  $\chi$ , we have

$$L(s, \chi) = L(s, \tilde{\chi}) \prod_{p|m} (1 - \tilde{\chi}(p)p^{-s}),$$

where  $L(s, \tilde{\chi})$  is holomorphic. Therefore  $L(s, \chi)$  is holomorphic too so it further suffices to show  $L(1, \chi) \neq 0$ . This follows from Theorem 8.1.3 and thus the proof is complete.  $\square$

We know from Theorem 8.1.3 that  $L(1, \chi) \neq 0$ . It is interesting to know whether or not this value is computable in general. Indeed it is. The computation is fairly straightforward and only requires some basic properties of Gauss sums that we have already developed. The idea is to rewrite the character values  $\chi(n)$  so that we can collapse the infinite series into a Taylor series. Our result is the following:

**Theorem 8.1.4.** *Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character with conductor  $q > 1$ . Then*

$$L(1, \chi) = -\frac{\chi(-1)\tau(\chi)}{q} \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) \log \left( \sin \left( \frac{\pi a}{q} \right) \right) \quad \text{or} \quad L(1, \chi) = -\frac{\chi(-1)\tau(\chi)\pi i}{q^2} \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a)a,$$

according to whether  $\chi$  is even or odd.

*Proof.* Make the following computation:

$$\begin{aligned} \chi(n) &= \frac{1}{\overline{\tau(\chi)}} \overline{\tau(n, \chi)} && \text{Corollary 1.4.1} \\ &= \frac{1}{\tau(\overline{\chi})} \tau(n, \chi) && \text{Proposition 1.4.2 (i)} \\ &= \frac{\tau(\chi)}{\tau(\chi)\tau(\overline{\chi})} \tau(n, \chi) \\ &= \frac{\chi(-1)\tau(\chi)}{q} \tau(n, \chi) && \text{Theorem 1.4.1 and Proposition 1.4.3} \\ &= \frac{\chi(-1)\tau(\chi)}{q} \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i a n}{q}}. \end{aligned}$$

Substituting this result into the definition of  $L(1, \chi)$ , we find that

$$\begin{aligned} L(1, \chi) &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{n} \left( \frac{\chi(-1)\tau(\chi)}{q} \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i a n}{q}} \right) \\ &= \frac{\chi(-1)\tau(\chi)}{q} \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{e^{\frac{2\pi i a n}{q}}}{n} \\ &= \frac{\chi(-1)\tau(\chi)}{q} \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) \log \left( \left( 1 - e^{\frac{2\pi i a}{q}} \right)^{-1} \right), \end{aligned} \tag{8.8}$$

where in the last line we have used the Taylor series of the logarithm (notice  $a \neq q$  so that  $e^{\frac{2\pi i a}{q}} \neq 1$  and hence the logarithm is defined). We have now expressed  $L(1, \chi)$  as a finite sum. In order to simplify the last expression in Equation (8.8), we deal with the logarithm. Since  $\sin(\theta) = \frac{e^{i\theta} - e^{-i\theta}}{2i}$ , we have

$$1 - e^{\frac{2\pi i a}{q}} = -2ie^{\frac{\pi i a}{q}} \left( \frac{e^{\frac{\pi i a}{q}} - e^{-\frac{\pi i a}{q}}}{2i} \right) = -2ie^{\frac{\pi i a}{q}} \sin \left( \frac{\pi a}{q} \right).$$

Therefore the last expression in Equation (8.8) becomes

$$\frac{\chi(-1)\tau(\chi)}{q} \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) \log \left( \left( -2ie^{\frac{\pi i a}{q}} \sin \left( \frac{\pi a}{q} \right) \right)^{-1} \right).$$

As  $0 < a < q$ , we have  $0 < \frac{\pi a}{q} < \pi$  so that  $\sin\left(\frac{\pi a}{q}\right)$  is never negative. Therefore we can split up the logarithm term and obtain

$$-\frac{\chi(-1)\tau(\chi)}{q} \left( \log(-2i) \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) + \frac{\pi i}{q} \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a)a + \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) \log \left( \sin \left( \frac{\pi a}{q} \right) \right) \right).$$

By the orthogonality relations (Corollary 1.3.1 (i)), the first sum above vanishes. Therefore

$$L(1, \chi) = -\frac{\chi(-1)\tau(\chi)}{q} \left( \frac{\pi i}{q} \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a)a + \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) \log \left( \sin \left( \frac{\pi a}{q} \right) \right) \right). \quad (8.9)$$

Equation (8.9) simplifies in that one of the two sums vanish depending on if  $\chi$  is even or odd. For the first sum in Equation (8.9), observe that

$$\frac{\pi i}{q} \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a)a = -\frac{\chi(-1)\pi i}{q} \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(-a)(-a),$$

which vanishes if  $\chi$  is even. For the second sum in Equation (8.9), we have an analogous relation of the form

$$\sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(a) \log \left( \sin \left( \frac{\pi a}{q} \right) \right) = \chi(-1) \sum'_{a \pmod{q}} \chi(-a) \log \left( \sin \left( \frac{\pi a}{q} \right) \right),$$

which vanishes if  $\chi$  is odd. This finishes the proof.  $\square$

Theorem 8.1.4 encodes some interesting identities. For example, if  $\chi$  is the non-principal Dirichlet character modulo 4, then  $\chi$  is uniquely defined by  $\chi(1) = 1$  and  $\chi(3) = \chi(-1) = -1$ . In particular,  $\chi$  is odd and its conductor is 4. Now

$$\tau(\chi) = \sum'_{a \pmod{4}} \chi(a) e^{\frac{2\pi i a}{4}} = e^{\frac{2\pi i}{4}} - e^{\frac{6\pi i}{4}} = i - (-i) = 2i,$$

so by Theorem 8.1.4 we get

$$L(1, \chi) = -\frac{\chi(-1)\tau(\chi)\pi i}{16}(1-3) = \frac{\pi}{4}.$$

Expanding out  $L(1, \chi)$  gives

$$1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \cdots = \frac{\pi}{4},$$

which is the famous **Madhava–Leibniz formula** for  $\pi$ .

## 8.2 Non-vanishing on $\sigma = 1$

Here we provide proofs that the Riemann zeta function and Dirichlet  $L$ -functions do not vanish on the line  $\sigma = 1$ . The second of these two results can be regarded as a stronger version of Theorem 8.1.3. While both will play a role in understanding the zeros of these  $L$ -functions, the non-vanishing result for the Riemann zeta function is the key ingredient in the proof of the prime number theorem. We will proof the non-vanishing result for  $\zeta(s)$  first, but we need a lemma that will be immensely useful in other investigations:



**Lemma 8.2.1.** For  $\sigma > 1$  and nonzero  $t$ ,

$$\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{\eta'}{\eta}(\sigma) \right) = \operatorname{Re} \left( 3 \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(\sigma) + 4 \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(\sigma + it) + \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(\sigma + 2it) \right) \leq 0,$$

where

$$\eta(s) = \zeta(s)^3 \zeta(s + it)^4 \zeta(s + 2it).$$

*Proof.* In the region  $\sigma > 1$ ,  $\zeta(s)$  is holomorphic and admits the degree 1 Euler product

$$\zeta(s) = \prod_p (1 - p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

Taking the logarithmic derivative of  $\zeta(s)$  gives

$$\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) = - \sum_p \frac{\log(p) p^{-s}}{1 - p^{-s}} = - \sum_p \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{\log(p)}{p^{ks}} = - \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^s}. \quad (8.10)$$

Then observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^s} &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma n^{it}} \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} e^{-it \log(n)} \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} \left( \cos(t \log(n)) - i \sin(t \log(n)) \right). \end{aligned}$$

We conclude

$$\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) \right) = - \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} \cos(t \log(n)). \quad (8.11)$$

Since  $\cos(2\theta) = 2\cos(\theta) - 1$  for any  $\theta$ , we have

$$3 + 4\cos(\theta) + \cos(2\theta) = 2(1 + \cos(\theta))^2 \geq 0, \quad (8.12)$$

provided  $\theta$  is real. As  $\frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} \geq 0$  for all  $n \geq 1$ , Equation (8.12) implies

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} \left( 3 + 4\cos(t \log(n)) + \cos(2t \log(n)) \right) \geq 0. \quad (8.13)$$

Taking the real part of the logarithmic derivative of  $\eta(\sigma)$ , Equations (8.11) and (8.13) together imply

$$\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{\eta'}{\eta}(\sigma) \right) = \operatorname{Re} \left( 3 \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(\sigma) + 4 \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(\sigma + it) + \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(\sigma + 2it) \right) \leq 0. \quad \square$$

The non-vanishing result follows very easily from Lemma 8.2.1:

**Theorem 8.2.1.**  $\zeta(s) \neq 0$  on the line  $\sigma = 1$ .

*Proof.* We will now show  $\zeta(s) \neq 0$  on the line  $\sigma = 1$ . We may assume  $s \neq 1$  because we know  $\zeta(s)$  has a simple pole there. So fix a nonzero  $t$  and consider

$$\eta(s) = \zeta(s)^3 \zeta(s + it)^4 \zeta(s + 2it).$$

Suppose  $\zeta(1 + it) = 0$ . Then  $\eta(s)$  would have a zero at  $s = 1$ , either simple or of order 2, depending on if  $\zeta(s + 2it)$  was zero or not since  $\zeta(s)^3(s + it)^4$  has a simple zero at  $s = 1$ . Therefore it suffices to show  $\eta(s)$  is nonzero at  $s = 1$ . Let  $d$  be the order of the zero of  $\eta(s)$  at  $s = 1$ . Note that  $d \geq 1$ . Then  $\eta(s) = (s - 1)^d \eta_1(s)$  with  $\eta_1(s)$  holomorphic and nonzero at  $s = 1$ . Upon taking the logarithmic derivative, we obtain

$$\frac{\eta'}{\eta}(s) = \frac{d}{s - 1} + \frac{\eta'_1}{\eta_1}(s).$$

Then for  $\sigma > 1$ , it follows that

$$\lim_{\sigma \rightarrow 1} (\sigma - 1) \frac{\eta'}{\eta}(\sigma) = d.$$

But from Lemma 8.2.1,  $(\sigma - 1) \frac{\eta'}{\eta}(\sigma)$  has nonpositive real part and so the limit cannot be  $d$ . This is a contradiction. Therefore  $\eta(s)$  is nonzero at  $s = 1$  and thus  $\zeta(1 + it) \neq 0$ .  $\square$

With Theorem 8.2.1, we can make a slight improvement about the nontrivial zeros of  $\zeta(s)$ . Indeed,  $\zeta(s)$  has no zeros for  $\sigma > 1$  since it is an Euler product there and Theorem 8.2.1 improves that region to  $\sigma \geq 1$ . We can say a little more. Rewrite the functional equation for  $\zeta(s)$  as

$$\zeta(s) = \pi^{s - \frac{1}{2}} \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{1-s}{2}\right)}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right)} \zeta(1 - s).$$

Then Theorem 8.2.1 implies that there are no zeros on the line  $\sigma = 0$  either. As for other  $L$ -functions, there is also a completely analogous lemma and argument for Dirichlet  $L$ -functions:

**Lemma 8.2.2.** *For any non-principal Dirichlet character  $\chi$  of conductor  $q > 1$ ,  $\sigma > 1$ , and nonzero  $t$ ,*

$$\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{\eta'}{\eta}(\sigma, \chi) \right) = \operatorname{Re} \left( 3 \frac{L'}{L}(\sigma, \chi_{q,0}) + 4 \frac{L'}{L}(\sigma + it, \chi) + \frac{L'}{L}(\sigma + 2it, \chi^2) \right) \leq 0,$$

where

$$\eta(s, \chi) = L(s, \chi_{q,0})^3 L(s + it, \chi)^4 L(s + 2it, \chi^2).$$

*Proof.* In the region  $\sigma > 1$ ,  $L(s, \chi)$  is holomorphic and admits the degree 1 Euler product

$$L(s, \chi) = \prod_p (1 - \chi(p)p^{-s})^{-1}.$$

Taking the logarithmic derivative of  $L(s, \chi)$  yields

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) = - \sum_p \frac{\chi(p) \log(p) p^{-s}}{1 - \chi(p)p^{-s}} = - \sum_p \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{\chi(p^k) \log(p)}{p^{ks}} = - \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\chi(n) \Lambda(n)}{n^s}. \quad (8.14)$$

Writing  $\chi(n) = e^{i\theta}$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\chi(n)\Lambda(n)}{n^s} &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\chi(n)\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma n^{it}} \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} e^{i(\theta - t \log(n))} \\ &= \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} \left( \cos(\theta - t \log(n)) + i \sin(\theta - t \log(n)) \right). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) \right) = - \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} \cos(\theta - t \log(n)). \quad (8.15)$$

Because  $\chi^2(n) = e^{2i\theta}$  and  $\chi_{q,0}(n) = 1$ , we obtain analogous equations to Equation (8.15):

$$\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi^2) \right) = - \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} \cos(2\theta - t \log(n)), \quad (8.16)$$

and

$$\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi_{q,0}) \right) = - \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} \cos(t \log(n)). \quad (8.17)$$

Since  $\frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} \geq 0$  for all  $n \geq 1$ , Equation (8.12) implies

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} \left( 3 + 4 \cos(\theta - t \log(n)) + 4 \cos(2\theta - 2t \log(n)) \right) \geq 0. \quad (8.18)$$

Upon taking the real part of the logarithmic derivative of  $\eta(\sigma, \chi)$ , Equations (8.15) to (8.18) together imply

$$\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{\eta'}{\eta}(\sigma, \chi) \right) = \operatorname{Re} \left( 3 \frac{L'}{L}(\sigma, \chi_{q,0}) + 4 \frac{L'}{L}(\sigma + it, \chi) + \frac{L'}{L}(\sigma + 2it, \chi^2) \right) \leq 0. \quad \square$$

The non-vanishing result for  $L(s, \chi)$  is proven in a manner similar to  $\zeta(s)$  using Lemma 8.2.2:

**Theorem 8.2.2.** *For any non-principal Dirichlet character  $\chi$ ,  $L(s, \chi) \neq 0$  on the line  $\sigma = 1$ .*

*Proof.* Fix a nonzero  $t$  and consider

$$\eta(s, \chi) = L(s, \chi_{q,0})^3 L(s + it, \chi)^4 L(s + 2it, \chi^2),$$

Recall that  $L(s, \chi_{q,0})$  has a simple pole at  $s = 1$ . Now suppose  $L(1 + it, \chi) = 0$ . Then at  $s = 1$ ,  $\eta(s, \chi)$  would have a zero, either simple or of order 2, depending on if  $L(s + 2it, \chi)$  was zero or not since  $L(s, \chi_{q,0})^3 L(s + it, \chi)^4$  has a simple zero at  $s = 1$ . Therefore we need to show  $\eta(s, \chi)$  is nonzero at  $s = 1$ . Let  $d$  be the order of the zero of  $\eta(s, \chi)$  at  $s = 1$ . Then  $d \geq 1$  and we can write  $\eta(s, \chi) = (s - 1)^d \eta_1(s, \chi)$  with  $\eta_1(s, \chi)$  holomorphic and nonzero at  $s = 1$ . Taking the logarithmic derivative, we find

$$\frac{\eta'}{\eta}(s, \chi) = \frac{d}{s - 1} + \frac{\eta'_1}{\eta_1}(s, \chi).$$

Then for  $\sigma > 1$ , we have

$$\lim_{\sigma \rightarrow 1} (\sigma - 1) \frac{\eta'}{\eta}(\sigma, \chi) = d.$$

But from Lemma 8.2.2,  $(\sigma - 1) \frac{\eta'}{\eta}(\sigma, \chi)$  has nonpositive real part and so the limit cannot be  $d$ . This gives a contradiction. Hence  $\eta(s, \chi)$  is nonzero at  $s = 1$  and so  $L(1 + it, \chi) \neq 0$ .  $\square$

Just as for the Riemann zeta function, Theorem 8.2.2 gives the improvement that  $L(s, \chi)$  has no zeros in region  $\sigma \geq 1$  from the region  $\sigma > 1$ . Moreover, if we rewrite the functional equation for  $L(s, \chi)$  as

$$L(s, \chi) = \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} q^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \pi^{s-\frac{1}{2}} \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right)}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right)} L(1-s, \overline{\chi}),$$

then Theorem 8.2.1 implies that there are no zeros on the line  $\sigma = 0$ .

# Chapter 9

## Zero-free Regions & Zero Counting of $L$ -functions

We expand our discussion about the zeros of  $L$ -functions. We prove the classical zero-free regions for the Riemann zeta function and Dirichlet  $L$ -functions. In the latter case, we introduce the infamous Siegel zeros. After the zero-free regions, we discuss zero counting up the critical strip. The main result we prove is the Riemann–von Mangoldt formula for the Riemann zeta function and Dirichlet  $L$ -functions.

### 9.1 The Explicit Formula for Logarithmic Derivatives

Information about the distribution of primes is ultimately contained in the information about the zeros of the  $L$ -functions  $\zeta(s)$  and  $L(s, \chi)$ . In order to extract this information we will require more flexible tools than the  $L$ -functions alone. These tools are explicit formulas for logarithmic derivatives of  $L$ -functions. Essentially, explicit formulas are partial fraction decomposition analogs to analytic functions.

#### The Explicit Formula for the Logarithmic Derivative of $\zeta(s)$

Define the **Riemann xi function**  $\xi(s)$  by

$$\xi(s) = \frac{1}{2}s(s-1)\pi^{-\frac{s}{2}}\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right)\zeta(s).$$

Note that  $\xi(s)$  is holomorphic on  $\mathbb{C}$  since at  $s = 1$  the pole of  $\zeta(s)$  is canceled by the zero from the  $s(s-1)$  term and the poles coming from the gamma function are canceled by the trivial zeros of  $\zeta(s)$  or by  $s$  in the case  $s = 0$ . By the functional equation for  $\zeta(s)$ ,

$$\xi(s) = \xi(1-s),$$

which is the functional equation for  $\xi(s)$ . Moreover,  $\xi(s)$  is of order 1. To see this, by the functional equation for  $\xi(s)$  it suffices to show  $\xi(s)$  is of order 1 for  $\sigma \geq \frac{1}{2}$ . This follows since  $\zeta(s)$  is of order 1, being an  $L$ -function, and  $\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right)$  is of order 1 for  $\sigma > 0$ . By the Hadamard factorization theorem (see Appendix B.5),

$$\xi(s) = e^{A+Bs} \prod_{\rho} \left(1 - \frac{s}{\rho}\right) e^{\frac{s}{\rho}}, \quad (9.1)$$

where  $A$  and  $B$  are constants and  $\rho$  runs over the nontrivial zeros of  $\zeta(s)$  counted with multiplicity and ordered with respect to the size of the ordinate. That is, if  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$ , the product is ordered by  $|\gamma|$ .

Equation (9.1) is an infinite product expression for  $\xi(s)$  and we will use it to obtain the explicit formula for logarithmic derivative of  $\zeta(s)$ . To do this we take the logarithmic derivative of  $\xi(s)$  in two ways. First, observe that we can write  $\xi(s) = (s-1)\pi^{-\frac{s}{2}}\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}+1\right)\zeta(s)$ . The logarithm derivative of this expression gives

$$\frac{\xi'}{\xi}(s) = \frac{1}{s-1} + \frac{1}{2}\log(\pi) + \frac{1}{2}\frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s}{2}+1\right) + \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s). \quad (9.2)$$

On the other hand, we can take the logarithmic derivative Equation (9.1) to obtain

$$\frac{\xi'}{\xi}(s) = B + \sum_{\rho} \left( \frac{1}{s-\rho} + \frac{1}{\rho} \right). \quad (9.3)$$

Upon combining Equations (9.2) and (9.3) yields the **explicit formula** for  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$ :

$$\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) = B - \frac{1}{s-1} - \frac{1}{2}\log(\pi) - \frac{1}{2}\frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s}{2}+1\right) + \sum_{\rho} \left( \frac{1}{s-\rho} + \frac{1}{\rho} \right).$$

The explicit formula for  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$  is quite important for analytic investigations. Notice that the second term contains information about the pole of  $\zeta(s)$  while the last term contains all the information about the nontrivial zeros. The digamma function term contains the information about the trivial zeros as can be seen from Corollary 1.6.1. The constants  $A$  and  $B$  in Equation (9.1) can be computed. To compute  $A$ , Equation (9.1) implies  $A = \log(\xi(0))$ . Now  $\zeta(s)$  has residue 1 at  $s=1$  so that  $\lim_{s \rightarrow 1} (s-1)\zeta(s) = 1$ . This fact along with  $\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\pi}$  together imply  $\xi(1) = \frac{1}{2}$ . By the functional equation for  $\xi(s)$ , we find that

$$A = \log\left(\frac{1}{2}\right).$$

The constant  $B$  requires slightly more work. We first claim that  $\sum_{\rho} \frac{1}{\rho}$  converges provided we group the terms  $\rho$  and  $\bar{\rho}$  together. This is in accordance with the order of  $\rho$  in the Hadamard factorization for  $\xi(s)$ . Letting  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$ , we have

$$\sum_{\rho} \frac{1}{\rho} = \sum_{\rho}^* \left( \frac{1}{\rho} + \frac{1}{\bar{\rho}} \right) = \sum_{\rho}^* \frac{2\beta}{\beta^2 + \gamma^2}, \quad (9.4)$$

where the  $*$  indicates that we are summing over  $\rho$  and not  $\bar{\rho}$ . The last sum in Equation (9.4) is at most  $2 \sum_{\rho} \frac{1}{|\rho|^2}$  and this sum converges by the Hadamard factorization of  $\xi(s)$  since the rank is 1. Now Equation (9.3) and the functional equation for  $\xi(s)$  together give

$$B + \sum_{\rho} \left( \frac{1}{s-\rho} + \frac{1}{\rho} \right) = -B - \sum_{\rho} \left( \frac{1}{1-s-\rho} + \frac{1}{\rho} \right). \quad (9.5)$$

The terms corresponding to  $s-\rho$  and  $1-s-\rho$  cancel because if  $\rho$  is a nontrivial zero so is  $1-\rho$ . Indeed, add  $\sum_{\rho} \frac{1}{1-s-\rho}$  to both sides of Equation (9.5) and notice that  $\frac{1}{1-s-\rho} = -\frac{1}{s-(1-\rho)}$ . Using Equation (9.4) we can rewrite the result as

$$B = -\sum_{\rho} \frac{1}{\rho} = -\sum_{\rho}^* \frac{2\beta}{\beta^2 + \gamma^2}.$$

## The Explicit Formula for the Logarithmic Derivative of $L(s, \chi)$

Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character with conductor  $q > 1$ . We will derive an analogous explicit formula for the logarithmic derivative of  $L(s, \chi)$ . To do this, define the **Dirichlet xi function**  $\xi(s, \chi)$  by

$$\xi(s, \chi) = \left(\frac{q}{\pi}\right)^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) L(s, \chi).$$

We claim  $\xi(s, \chi)$  is holomorphic on  $\mathbb{C}$ . Indeed,  $L(s, \chi)$  is holomorphic on  $\mathbb{C}$  and the poles coming from the gamma factor are canceled by the trivial zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$ . Moreover, the functional equation for  $L(s, \chi)$  implies

$$\xi(s, \chi) = \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} \xi(1-s, \bar{\chi}),$$

which is the functional equation for  $\xi(s, \chi)$ . It is also not hard to show that  $\xi(s, \chi)$  is of order 1. Indeed, by the functional equation for  $\xi(s, \chi)$  it suffices to show  $\xi(s, \chi)$  is of order 1 for  $\sigma \geq \frac{1}{2}$ . This holds since  $L(s, \chi)$  is of order 1, being an  $L$ -function, and  $\Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right)$  is of order 1 for  $\sigma > 0$ . By the Hadamard factorization theorem (see Appendix B.5),

$$\xi(s, \chi) = e^{A(\chi)+B(\chi)s} \prod_{\rho} \left(1 - \frac{s}{\rho}\right) e^{\frac{s}{\rho}}, \quad (9.6)$$

where  $A(\chi)$  and  $B(\chi)$  are constants and  $\rho$  runs over the nontrivial zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$  counted with multiplicity and ordered with respect to the size of the ordinate. In other words, if  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$ , the product is ordered by  $|\gamma|$ . Just like for  $\zeta(s)$ , we can use Equation (9.6) to prove the explicit formula for  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  by taking the logarithmic derivative of  $\xi(s, \chi)$  in two ways. First, taking the logarithmic derivative of  $\xi(s, \chi)$  directly gives

$$\frac{\xi'}{\xi}(s, \chi) = \frac{1}{2} \log\left(\frac{q}{\pi}\right) + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) + \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi). \quad (9.7)$$

On the other hand, we can take the logarithmic derivative using Equation (9.6) to obtain

$$\frac{\xi'}{\xi}(s, \chi) = B(\chi) + \sum_{\rho} \left(\frac{1}{s-\rho} + \frac{1}{\rho}\right). \quad (9.8)$$

Combining Equations (9.7) and (9.8) we obtain the **explicit formula** for  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$ :

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) = B(\chi) - \frac{1}{2} \log\left(\frac{q}{\pi}\right) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) + \sum_{\rho} \left(\frac{1}{s-\rho} + \frac{1}{\rho}\right).$$

The constants  $A(\chi)$  can be computed. Indeed, Equation (9.6) implies  $A(\chi) = \log(\xi(0, \chi))$ . Now  $\xi(1, \bar{\chi}) = \left(\frac{q}{\pi}\right)^{\frac{1+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{1+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) L(1, \bar{\chi})$  so the functional equation for  $\xi(s, \chi)$  implies

$$A(\chi) = \log\left(\frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} \left(\frac{q}{\pi}\right)^{\frac{1+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{1+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) L(1, \bar{\chi})\right).$$

The constant  $B(\chi)$  is significantly more difficult to compute and there are currently no good estimates in terms of the conductor  $q$  alone. However, we do have a useful expression for the real part of  $B(\chi)$  in terms of the real parts of the nontrivial zeros. To obtain this expression, note that Equation (9.4) holds for the nontrivial zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$  and the sum converges because  $\xi(1, \chi)$  has rank 1. Taking Equation (9.8)

at  $s = 0$  gives  $B(\chi) = \frac{\xi'}{\xi}(0, \chi)$ . The functional equation for  $\xi(s, \chi)$  implies  $\frac{\xi'}{\xi}(0, \chi) = -\frac{\xi'}{\xi}(1, \bar{\chi})$  so using Equation (9.8) at  $s = 1$ , we have

$$B(\chi) = -B(\bar{\chi}) - \sum_{\bar{\rho}} \left( \frac{1}{1 - \bar{\rho}} + \frac{1}{\bar{\rho}} \right). \quad (9.9)$$

We claim  $B(\bar{\chi}) = \overline{B(\chi)}$ . To see this, since  $\overline{L(s, \chi)} = L(\bar{s}, \bar{\chi})$  we have  $\overline{\xi(s, \chi)} = \xi(\bar{s}, \bar{\chi})$ . But then

$$\overline{B(\chi)} = \overline{\frac{\xi'}{\xi}(0, \chi)} = \frac{\xi'}{\xi}(0, \bar{\chi}) = B(\bar{\chi}).$$

Then the fact that  $B(\bar{\chi}) = \overline{B(\chi)}$  and Equation (9.9) together imply

$$\operatorname{Re}(B(\chi)) = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\rho} \operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{1}{1 - \bar{\rho}} + \frac{1}{\bar{\rho}} \right). \quad (9.10)$$

Now if  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$ , we have  $\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{1}{1 - \bar{\rho}} \right) = \frac{1 - \beta}{(1 - \beta)^2 + \gamma^2} > 0$  and  $\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{1}{\bar{\rho}} \right) = \frac{\beta}{\beta^2 + \gamma^2} > 0$ . Recalling that  $1 - \bar{\rho}$  is a nontrivial zero if  $\rho$  is, we may replace  $1 - \bar{\rho}$  with  $\rho$  in Equation (9.10) since the terms correspond to these zeros are positive as we have just shown. We can rewrite the result as follows:

$$B(\chi) = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{\rho} \operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{1}{\rho} + \frac{1}{\bar{\rho}} \right) = -\sum_{\rho} \operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{1}{\rho} \right). \quad (9.11)$$

## 9.2 Zero-free Regions, Siegel Zeros & Siegel's Theorem

While the Riemann hypothesis, and its generalization, are currently out of reach, some progress has still be made regarding the location of the zeros of  $L$ -functions. In particular, we want to establish regions inside the critical strip where  $L$ -functions do not vanish. These regions are commonly known as **zero-free regions**.

### The Classical Zero-free Region for $\zeta(s)$

The **classical zero-free region** for  $\zeta(s)$  describes a region slightly to the left of the line  $\sigma = 1$  inside of the critical strip where  $\zeta(s)$  cannot exhibit a zero:

**Theorem 9.2.1 (Zero-free region for  $\zeta(s)$ , classical version).** *There exists a positive constant  $c$  such that  $\zeta(s)$  contains no zeros in the region*

$$\left\{ s = \sigma + it \in \mathbb{C} : \sigma \geq 1 - \frac{c}{\log(|t| + 2)} \right\}.$$

*Proof.* Suppose  $1 < \sigma \leq 2$  and  $|t| > 2$ . We will derive a bound for real part of a nontrivial zero of  $\zeta(s)$ . This bound will be obtained by finding upper bounds for all of the individual zeta terms in Lemma 8.2.1. For the first term, since  $\zeta(s)$  has a simple pole at  $s = 1$ ,  $-\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$  has a simple pole there too. In particular,

$$-\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(\sigma) < A + \frac{1}{\sigma - 1}, \quad (9.12)$$



for some positive constant  $A$ . For the last term, since  $|t| > 2$ ,  $s$  is bounded away from zero. In particular,  $\frac{1}{s-1}$  is bounded. Moreover, from Proposition 1.6.3 we also deduce  $\frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s}{2} + 1\right) = O(\log |t|)$  because  $\sigma$  is bounded. These two estimates along with the explicit formula for  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$  imply

$$-\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)\right) < A \log |t| - \sum_{\rho} \operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{s-\rho} + \frac{1}{\rho}\right), \quad (9.13)$$

where we take  $A$  larger (to satisfy the  $O$ -estimate), if necessary. Letting  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$ , observe that  $\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{s-\rho}\right) = \frac{\sigma-\beta}{(\sigma-\beta)^2 + (t-\gamma)^2} \geq 0$  and  $\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{\rho}\right) = \frac{\beta}{\beta^2 + \gamma^2} > 0$ . Therefore the sum in Equation (9.13) is a sum of nonnegative terms so that we may discard it. Discarding the sum and replacing  $s$  with  $\sigma + 2it$ , we obtain

$$-\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(\sigma + 2it)\right) < A \log |t|, \quad (9.14)$$

for a possibly larger constant  $A$ . For the middle term, we finally assume that  $t = \gamma$  is the ordinate of the zero  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  and retain only the term  $\frac{1}{s-\rho}$  corresponding to  $\rho$  so that Equation (9.13) gives the bound

$$-\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(\sigma + it)\right) < A \log |t| - \frac{1}{\sigma - \beta}. \quad (9.15)$$

Upon combining Equation (9.12), Equation (9.14), and Equation (9.15) with Lemma 8.2.1, we obtain

$$0 < 3A + \frac{3}{\sigma - 1} + 5A \log |t| - \frac{4}{\sigma - \beta}.$$

which, taking  $A$  to be larger if necessary, implies the estimate

$$0 < \frac{3}{\sigma - 1} + 5A \log |t| - \frac{4}{\sigma - \beta}. \quad (9.16)$$

Letting  $\delta$  be the positive constant such that  $\sigma = 1 + \frac{\delta}{\log |t|}$ , we can write Equation (9.16) as

$$0 < \left(5A + \frac{3}{\delta}\right) \log |t| - \frac{4}{(1 - \beta) + \frac{\delta}{\log |t|}},$$

and solving for  $\beta$  yields

$$\beta < 1 + \frac{\delta}{\log |t|} - \frac{1}{(5A + \frac{3}{\delta}) \log |t|}.$$

Choosing  $\delta$  such that  $5A\delta + 3\delta^2 < 1$  ( $\delta$  is free to choose because  $\sigma$  is), we find that

$$\beta < 1 - \frac{c}{\log |t|},$$

for some positive constant  $c$ . It follows that there cannot be a zero in the region

$$\sigma \geq 1 - \frac{c}{\log |t|},$$

for all  $\sigma$  and  $|t| > 2$ . By Theorem 8.2.1,  $\zeta(s)$  cannot have a zero arbitrarily near  $s = 1 + it$  with  $|t| \leq 2$ . As  $\log(|t| + 2) > \log |t|$ , enlarging our choice of  $c$  if necessary, there cannot be a zero in the region

$$\sigma \geq 1 - \frac{c}{\log(|t| + 2)},$$

for all  $\sigma$  and  $t$ . □


 Figure 9.1: The classical zero-free region for  $\zeta(s)$  (symmetrized).

A couple of comments are in order. The classical zero-free region describes a zero-free region for the Riemann zeta function in the right-half of the critical strip. As the zeros are symmetric about the critical line and the real axis, we immediately obtain a symmetric zero-free region (see Figure 9.1). This region has been improved many times. In 1922, the breadth of the zero-free region was enlarged to

$$\frac{c \log \log(|t| + 2)}{\log(|t| + 2)},$$

by Littlewood, and in 1958 Vinogradov and Korobov independently enlarged the zero-free region to

$$\frac{c}{(\log(|t| + 2))^\alpha},$$

for any  $\alpha > \frac{2}{3}$  and where  $c$  depends upon  $\alpha$  (see [Dav80] for a more detailed historical account). These improvements depend on upper bounds for  $\zeta(s)$  in a region just to the left of  $\sigma = 1$  and these upper bounds are deduced from delicate estimates of exponential sums. It is important to mention that the constant  $c$  is in general different for all the zero-free regions. This means  $c$  depends implicitly upon the shape of the zero-free region. Many current problems revolve around making improvements upon zero-free region results. Also, the constant  $c$  is effective and there are constant efforts to compute it to high degrees of precision. It is also an interesting question to know the height of the first zero (with nonnegative imaginary part) of the Riemann zeta function. It is not difficult to show that this height must necessarily be positive. In other words,  $\zeta(s) \neq 0$  for  $0 < s < 1$  (we know  $\zeta(0) = -\frac{1}{2}$  and that there is a pole at  $s = 1$ ). One way to see this is to consider the **Dirichlet eta function**  $\eta(s)$  defined by

$$\eta(s) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{n^s}.$$

Note that  $\eta(s)$  converges for  $\sigma > 0$  by Proposition 6.1.1. Now for  $0 < s < 1$  and even  $n$ ,  $\frac{1}{n^s} - \frac{1}{(n+1)^s} > 0$  so that  $\eta(s) > 0$ . But for  $\sigma > 0$ , we have

$$(1 - 2^{1-s})\zeta(s) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{n^s} - 2 \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{(2n)^s} = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{n^s} = \eta(s).$$

Therefore  $\zeta(s)$  cannot admit a zero for  $0 < s < 1$  because then  $\eta(s)$  would be zero too. Actually, since  $1 - 2^{1-s} < 0$  in this segment we also know  $\zeta(s) < 0$  in this segment as well. As for the height of the first zero, it occurs on the critical line (as predicted by the Riemann hypothesis) at height  $t \approx 14.134$ . In particular, this gives a slight improvement to the classical zero-free region in Figure 9.1. Actually, the first 15 zeros were computed by Gram in 1903 (see [Gra03]). Since then, billions of zeros have been computed and have all been verified to lie on the critical line.

## The Classical Zero-free Region for $L(s, \chi)$ & Siegel Zeros

For a fixed primitive Dirichlet character  $\chi$  of conductor  $q > 1$ , it is not difficult to obtain a zero-free region result for  $L(s, \chi)$  analogous to the classical zero-free region for  $\zeta(s)$ . However, it is more useful to have zero-free regions in terms of  $q$  alone so that the character  $\chi$  can vary. Unfortunately, an additional obstruction arises in the case that the character is quadratic. This is due to the possible existence of an additional real zero. Throughout, we will only be interested in non-principal characters. For convenience we use the standard notation

$$\mathcal{L} = \log(q(|t| + 2)),$$

because this quantity appears all too often. The **classical zero-free region** for  $L(s, \chi)$  is the following statement:

**Theorem 9.2.2 (Zero-free region for  $L(s, \chi)$ , classical version).** *There exists a positive constant  $c$  such that for any non-principal Dirichlet character  $\chi$  of conductor  $q > 1$ ,  $L(s, \chi)$  contains no zeros in the region*

$$\left\{ s = \sigma + it \in \mathbb{C} : \sigma \geq 1 - \frac{c}{\mathcal{L}} \right\},$$

*unless  $\chi$  is quadratic in which case  $L(s, \chi)$  has at most one, necessarily real, zero in this region.*

*Proof of the classical zero-free region for  $L(s, \chi)$ .* We will eventually break the argument depending on whether  $\chi$  is quadratic or complex, but for the moment we only assume  $\chi$  is primitive. Suppose  $1 < \sigma \leq 2$ . We will derive bounds for each of the terms in Lemma 8.2.2. For the first term, since  $L(s, \chi_{q,0})$  has a simple pole at  $s = 1$ ,  $-\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi_{q,0})$  has a simple pole there too. Therefore

$$-\frac{L'}{L}(\sigma, \chi_{q,0}) < A + \frac{1}{\sigma - 1}, \quad (9.17)$$

for some positive constant  $A$ . For the middle term, Proposition 1.6.3 implies  $\frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s+a}{2}\right) = O(\log(|t| + 2))$  because  $\sigma$  is bounded. This estimate and explicit formula for  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  together give

$$-\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)\right) < A\mathcal{L} - \operatorname{Re}(B(\chi)) - \sum_{\rho} \operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{s - \rho} + \frac{1}{\rho}\right), \quad (9.18)$$

where we take  $A$  larger (to satisfy the  $O$ -estimate) if necessary. Upon substituting Equation (9.11) into Equation (9.18) we obtain the simpler expression

$$-\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)\right) < A\mathcal{L} - \sum_{\rho} \operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{s - \rho}\right). \quad (9.19)$$

If  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$ ,  $\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{s - \rho}\right) = \frac{\sigma - \beta}{(\sigma - \beta)^2 + (t + \gamma)^2} \geq 0$  which implies the sum in Equation (9.19) is a sum of nonnegative terms and hence any part of it may be discarded. Now suppose  $\chi$  is primitive and complex. We claim

that Equation (9.19) holds for  $L(s, \chi^2)$  too for a possibly larger constant  $A$ . This is certainly true if  $\chi^2$  is primitive, but when  $\chi^2$  is not primitive we have a minor complication. To get around this complication, let  $\tilde{\chi}$  be the primitive character inducing  $\chi^2$ . Taking the logarithmic derivative of Equation (7.12) with  $\chi^2$  in place of  $\chi$ , we find that

$$\left| \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi^2) - \frac{L'}{L}(s, \tilde{\chi}) \right| = \left| \sum_{p|q} \frac{\tilde{\chi}(p) \log(p) p^{-s}}{1 - \tilde{\chi}(p) p^{-s}} \right| \leq \sum_{p|q} \frac{\log(p) p^{-\sigma}}{1 - p^{-\sigma}} \leq \sum_{p|q} \log(p) \leq \log(q). \quad (9.20)$$

Now Equation (9.20) implies the weaker inequality

$$-\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi^2) \right) \leq \log(q) - \operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s, \tilde{\chi}) \right), \quad (9.21)$$

and combining Equations (9.19) and (9.21) with  $\tilde{\chi}$  in place of  $\chi$  yields

$$-\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi^2) \right) < A\mathcal{L} - \sum_{\rho} \operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{1}{s - \rho} \right), \quad (9.22)$$

for a possibly larger constant  $A$ . We can now obtain the bound on the last term. Replacing  $s$  with  $\sigma + 2it$  and discarding the entire sum, Equation (9.22) gives

$$-\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s + 2it, \chi) \right) < A\mathcal{L}, \quad (9.23)$$

for a possibly larger constant  $A$ . For the middle term, assuming  $t = \gamma$  is the ordinate of the zero  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  and retaining only the term in the sum corresponding to  $\rho$ , Equation (9.19) implies

$$-\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(\sigma + it, \chi^2) \right) < A\mathcal{L} - \frac{1}{\sigma - \beta}. \quad (9.24)$$

Upon combining Equations (9.17), (9.23) and (9.24) with Lemma 8.2.2 we obtain

$$0 < 3A + \frac{3}{\sigma - 1} + 5A\mathcal{L} - \frac{4}{\sigma - \beta},$$

which, taking  $A$  to be larger if necessary, gives

$$0 < \frac{3}{\sigma - 1} + 5A\mathcal{L} - \frac{4}{\sigma - \beta}. \quad (9.25)$$

Letting  $\delta$  be such that  $\sigma = 1 + \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}$ , Equation (9.25) becomes

$$0 < \left( 5A + \frac{3}{\delta} \right) \mathcal{L} - \frac{4}{(1 - \beta) + \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}}.$$

Arguing exactly as in the proof of the classical zero-free region for  $\zeta(s)$ , we obtain a bound of the form

$$\beta < 1 - \frac{c}{\mathcal{L}}. \quad (9.26)$$

It follows that there can be no zero in the region

$$\sigma \geq 1 - \frac{c}{\mathcal{L}}, \quad (9.27)$$

for all  $\sigma$  and  $t$ . This finishes the proof in the case that  $\chi$  is primitive and complex. Actually, the assumption that  $\chi$  is primitive can be dropped since if  $\tilde{\chi}$  is the primitive character inducing  $\chi$ , Equation (7.12) implies that there zeros can only differ on the line  $\sigma = 0$  which is not in the region we are considering. Therefore our zero-free region holds for all complex  $\chi$ . We now suppose  $\chi$  is primitive quadratic. The only part of the argument that needs adjustment is upper bound for the last term. Equations (9.20) and (9.21) still hold but since  $\chi^2 = \chi_{q,0}$ , the primitive character inducing  $\chi^2$  is the trivial character so  $L(s, \tilde{\chi}) = \zeta(s)$  and hence Equation (9.19) with  $\tilde{\chi}$  in place of  $\chi$  no longer applies. Instead, we use the explicit formula for  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$ . Proposition 1.6.3 implies  $\frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s}{2} + 1\right) = O(\log(|t| + 2))$  because  $\sigma$  is bounded. This estimate, the explicit formula for  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$ , and discarding the sum over nontrivial zeros (because this is a sum of nonpositive terms), together give

$$-\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)\right) < \operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{s-1}\right) + A \log(|t| + 2), \quad (9.28)$$

for some possibly larger constant  $A$ . Observe that the term corresponding to  $\frac{1}{s-1}$  in the explicit formula for  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$  is present in Equation (9.28) because  $t$  may very well be small and so this term is not necessarily bounded from above. Replaying  $s$  with  $\sigma + 2it$ , and combining Equations (9.21) and (9.28) (recall  $L(s, \tilde{\chi}) = \zeta(s)$ ) yields

$$-\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{L'}{L}(\sigma + 2it, \chi^2)\right) < \operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{\sigma - 1 + 2it}\right) + A\mathcal{L}, \quad (9.29)$$

for some possibly larger constant  $A$ . Combining Equations (9.17), (9.23) and (9.29) with Lemma 8.2.2 gives

$$0 < 3A + \frac{3}{\sigma - 1} + 5A\mathcal{L} + \operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{\sigma - 1 + 2it}\right) - \frac{4}{\sigma - \beta},$$

and taking  $A$  to be larger if necessary, we have

$$0 < \frac{3}{\sigma - 1} + 5A\mathcal{L} + \operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{\sigma - 1 + 2it}\right) - \frac{4}{\sigma - \beta}. \quad (9.30)$$

Now set  $\sigma = 1 + \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}$  for some  $\delta > 0$ . If we also assume  $|t| \geq \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}$ , then  $\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{\sigma - 1 + 2it}\right) = \frac{\sigma - 1}{(\sigma - 1)^2 + 4t^2} \leq \frac{1}{5\delta}\mathcal{L}$  and Equation (9.30) becomes

$$0 < \left(5A + \frac{3}{\delta} + \frac{1}{5\delta}\right)\mathcal{L} - \frac{4}{(1 - \beta) + \frac{\delta}{\log|t|}}.$$

The additional estimate  $|t| \geq \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}$  is essential, because if  $t$  is close to 0 and  $\sigma$  is close to 1, then  $\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{\sigma - 1 + 2it}\right)$  is not bounded from above. Arguing again as in the proof of the classical zero-free region for  $\zeta(s)$ , we arrive at the bound Equation (9.26) for some possibly larger constant  $c$ . Therefore Equation (9.27) holds for primitive quadratic  $\chi$ . Just as for complex characters, we can remove the primitive assumption by appealing Equation (7.12). So altogether, we have the desired zero-free region for all complex characters for all  $t$  and all quadratic characters with  $|t| \geq \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}$  for some  $\delta$ . It remains to show that in the quadratic case, that there is at most one zero with  $|t| < \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}$  and that this zero is real. Actually it suffices to prove that there is at most one zero because if  $\rho$  is a zero then so is  $\bar{\rho}$  since  $\chi$  is quadratic. But both  $\rho$  and  $\bar{\rho}$  have the same imaginary part in absolute value (so they both belong to this region). Again, we may assume  $\chi$  is primitive. Now suppose there were two complex conjugate zeros  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  and  $\bar{\rho} = \beta - i\gamma$  belonging to the region  $|t| < \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}$ . Taking  $s = \sigma > 1$  in Equation (9.19) and retaining only the terms in the sum corresponding to these zeros, we have

$$-\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{L'}{L}(\sigma, \chi)\right) < A\mathcal{L} - \frac{2(\sigma - \beta)}{(\sigma - \beta)^2 + \gamma^2}, \quad (9.31)$$

where we have used  $\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{s-\rho}\right) = \frac{\sigma-\beta}{(\sigma-\beta)^2+\gamma^2}$ . Appealing to Equations (8.10), (8.14) and (9.12) we have the following crude lower bound:

$$-\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{L'}{L}(\sigma, \chi)\right) \geq \operatorname{Re}\left(\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\chi(n)\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma}\right) \geq \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^\sigma} = \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(\sigma) > -\frac{1}{\sigma-1} - A, \quad (9.32)$$

for a possibly larger constant  $A$ . Taking  $A$  larger, if necessary, Equations (9.31) and (9.32) together yield

$$-\frac{1}{\sigma-1} < A\mathcal{L} - \frac{2(\sigma-\beta)}{(\sigma-\beta)^2+\gamma^2}. \quad (9.33)$$

Now set  $\sigma = 1 + \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}$  for some  $\delta > 0$  (possibly a different  $\delta$  than before). Since  $|\gamma| < \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}$  by assumption, we have

$$|\gamma| < \frac{\sigma-1}{2} < \frac{\sigma-\beta}{2}.$$

The estimate above implies  $\gamma^2 < \frac{(\sigma-\beta)^2}{4}$  and inserting this into Equation (9.33) gives

$$-\frac{1}{\sigma-1} < A\mathcal{L} - \frac{5}{8(\sigma-\beta)}.$$

Upon solving for  $\beta$  and substituting  $\sigma = 1 + \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}$ , we find that

$$\beta < 1 + \frac{2\delta - \frac{5}{8}\left(\frac{1}{2\delta} + A\right)}{\mathcal{L}}.$$

Choosing  $\delta$  such that  $2\delta - \frac{5}{8}\left(\frac{1}{2\delta} + A\right) < -1$  ( $\delta$  is free to choose because  $\sigma$  is) results in the bound

$$\beta < 1 - \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}},$$

which contradicts the zero-free region just establish because  $|\gamma| < \frac{\delta}{\mathcal{L}}$ . Hence there cannot be two complex conjugate zeros. In the case of two real zeros  $\rho = \beta$  and  $\rho' = \beta'$ , without loss of generality we may assume  $\rho$  is such that  $\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{s-\rho}\right) \leq \operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{s-\rho'}\right)$ . Then taking  $s = \sigma > 1$  in Equation (9.19) and only retaining the terms in the sum correspond to these zeros, but bounding both of them by the term corresponding to  $\rho$ , gives Equation (9.31) and we may repeat the argument. In the case of a real zero  $\rho = \beta$  with multiplicity at least two, we perform the same procedure but only retain two terms in the sum corresponding to  $\rho$  (because we at least have a double zero) and obtain Equation (9.31) with  $\gamma = 0$ . The same argument now works but it is even simpler because we do not need to estimate  $\gamma$ . All of this shows that if there is a zero it must be a single real zero.  $\square$

The classical zero-free region for Dirichlet  $L$ -functions is almost an exact analog to the classical zero-free region for the Riemann zeta function. In particular, the constant  $c$  is effective. The strength of this zero-free region result rests in the fact that it only depends upon the conductor  $q$  of the character. Unfortunately, the drawback is that when  $\chi$  is quadratic there may very well be a single real zero  $\beta_1$  necessarily satisfying

$$\beta_1 \geq 1 - \frac{c}{\mathcal{L}}.$$

Of course, the Riemann hypothesis for the Selberg class implies that such zeros do not exist. These hypothetical zeros are referred to as **Siegel zeros** or **exceptional zeros**. Note that if  $\beta_1$  is a Siegel zero

of  $L(s, \chi)$ , then  $1 - \beta_1$  is also a zero of  $L(s, \chi)$  since the nontrivial zeros occur in pairs (or sets of four in some cases we have discussed). This immediately implies that  $\beta_1 > \frac{1}{2}$  for we cannot have  $\beta_1 = \frac{1}{2}$  since the zero is simple and either  $\beta_1$  or  $1 - \beta_1$  must be at least  $\frac{1}{2}$ . So far, no Siegel zero has been shown to exist or not exist. But some progress has been made to showing that they are rare. We first need a lemma similar to Lemmas 8.2.1 and 8.2.2:

**Lemma 9.2.1.** *Let  $\chi_1$  and  $\chi_2$  be two quadratic Dirichlet characters and set*

$$F(\sigma) = \zeta(\sigma)L(\sigma, \chi_1)L(\sigma, \chi_2)L(\sigma, \chi_1\chi_2).$$

*Then for  $\sigma > 1$ ,*

$$\frac{F'}{F}(\sigma) = \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(\sigma) + \frac{L'}{L}(\sigma, \chi_1) + \frac{L'}{L}(\sigma, \chi_2) + \frac{L'}{L}(\sigma, \chi_1\chi_2) \leq 0.$$

*Proof.* Since  $\chi_1$  and  $\chi_2$  are quadratic, it is clear that all of the logarithmic derivatives take real values when  $\sigma > 1$ . Combining Equations (8.10) and (8.14), we see that

$$\frac{F'}{F}(\sigma) = - \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1 + \chi_1(n) + \chi_2(n) + \chi_1\chi_2(n)}{n^\sigma} = - \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{(1 + \chi_1(n))(1 + \chi_2(n))}{n^\sigma} \leq 0,$$

where the inequality follows since  $|\chi_1(n)| \leq 1$  and  $|\chi_2(n)| \leq 1$ . □

We can now prove our first result about the rarity of Siegel zeros:

**Proposition 9.2.1.** *Let  $\chi_1$  and  $\chi_2$  be two distinct quadratic Dirichlet characters of conductor  $q_1$  and  $q_2$ . If  $L(s, \chi_1)$  and  $L(s, \chi_2)$  have real zeros  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  respectively and  $\chi_1\chi_2$  is not principal, then there exists a positive constant  $c$  such that*

$$\min(\beta_1, \beta_2) < 1 - \frac{c}{\log(q_1q_2)}.$$

*Proof.* We may assume  $\chi_1$  and  $\chi_2$  are primitive since if  $\tilde{\chi}_i$  is the primitive character inducing  $\chi_i$ , for  $i = 1, 2$ , the only difference in zeros between  $L(s, \chi_i)$  and  $L(s, \tilde{\chi}_i)$  occur on the line  $\sigma = 0$ . Now let  $\tilde{\chi}$  be the primitive character of conductor  $q$  inducing  $\chi_1\chi_2$ . Taking the logarithmic derivative of Equation (7.12) with  $\chi_1\chi_2$  in place of  $\chi$ , we have

$$\left| \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi_1\chi_2) - \frac{L'}{L}(s, \tilde{\chi}) \right| = \left| \sum_{p|q_1q_2} \frac{\tilde{\chi}(p) \log(p) p^{-s}}{1 - \tilde{\chi}(p) p^{-s}} \right| \leq \sum_{p|q_1q_2} \frac{\log(p) p^{-\sigma}}{1 - p^{-\sigma}} \leq \sum_{p|q_1q_2} \log(p) \leq \log(q_1q_2). \quad (9.34)$$

Letting  $s = \sigma$  with  $\sigma > 1$ , Equation (9.34) implies

$$-\frac{L'}{L}(\sigma, \chi_1\chi_2) < c \log(q_1q_2), \quad (9.35)$$

for some positive constant  $c$ . Appealing to Equation (9.19) for when  $s = \sigma$  in the cases  $\chi = \chi_1$  and  $\chi = \chi_2$  and only retaining the positive term in the sum corresponding to  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$  respectively, we have

$$-\frac{L'}{L}(\sigma, \chi_i) < A \log(q_i) - \frac{1}{\sigma - \beta_i}, \quad (9.36)$$

for  $i = 1, 2$  and some positive constant  $A$ . Combining Equations (9.12) and (9.34) to (9.36) with Lemma 9.2.1 gives the estimate

$$0 < A + \frac{1}{\sigma - 1} + A \log(q_1) - \frac{1}{\sigma - \beta_1} + A \log(q_2) - \frac{1}{\sigma - \beta_2} + c \log(q_1q_2).$$

Taking  $c$  larger, we arrive at the simplified estimate

$$0 < \frac{1}{\sigma - 1} - \frac{1}{\sigma - \beta_1} - \frac{1}{\sigma - \beta_2} + c \log(q_1 q_2),$$

which we rewrite as

$$\frac{1}{\sigma - \beta_1} + \frac{1}{\sigma - \beta_2} < \frac{1}{\sigma - 1} + c \log(q_1 q_2),$$

Now let  $\sigma = 1 + \frac{\delta}{\log(q_1 q_2)}$  for some  $\delta > 0$ . Upon substituting, we have

$$\frac{1}{\sigma - \beta_1} + \frac{1}{\sigma - \beta_2} < \left(c + \frac{1}{\delta}\right) \log(q_1 q_2).$$

If both  $\min(\beta_1, \beta_2) \geq 1 - \frac{c}{\log(q_1 q_2)}$ , then we arrive at

$$2(\delta + c) < c + \frac{1}{\delta},$$

which is a contradiction if we take  $\delta$  small enough so that  $2\delta^2 + c\delta < 1$ . □

From Proposition 9.2.1 we immediately see that for every modulus  $m > 1$  there is at most one primitive quadratic Dirichlet character that can admit a Siegel zero:

**Proposition 9.2.2.** *For every integer  $m > 1$ , there is at most one Dirichlet character  $\chi$  modulo  $m$  such that  $L(s, \chi)$  has a Siegel zero. If this Siegel zero exists,  $\chi$  is necessarily quadratic.*

*Proof.* By the definition of Siegel zeros,  $\chi$  must be quadratic and not principal. Now suppose two such characters  $\chi_1$  and  $\chi_2$ , of conductors  $q_1$  and  $q_2$ , admitted Siegel zeros  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$ . Then  $\beta_1 \geq 1 - \frac{c_1}{\log(q_1)}$  and  $\beta_2 \geq 1 - \frac{c_2}{\log(q_2)}$  for some positive constants  $c_1$  and  $c_2$ . Taking a larger constant  $c$  if necessary, we have  $\min(\beta_1, \beta_2) \geq 1 - \frac{c}{\log(q_1 q_2)}$  which contradicts Proposition 9.2.1. □

## Siegel's Theorem

Siegel zeros present an unfortunate obstruction to zero-free region results for Dirichlet  $L$ -functions when the character  $\chi$  is quadratic. However, if we no longer require the constant  $c$  in the zero-free region to be effective, we can obtain a much better result for how close the Siegel zero can be to 1. Ultimately, this improved bound results from a lower bound for  $L(1, \chi)$  (recall that this is nonzero from our discussion of non-vanishing on  $\sigma = 1$ ). **Siegel's theorem** refers to either this lower bound or to the improved zero-free region. In the lower bound version, Siegel's theorem is the following:

**Theorem 9.2.3 (Siegel's theorem, lower bound version).** *Let  $\chi$  be a primitive quadratic Dirichlet character modulo  $q > 1$ . Then there exists a positive constant  $c_1(\varepsilon)$  such that*

$$L(1, \chi) \geq \frac{c_1(\varepsilon)}{q^\varepsilon}.$$

In the zero-free region version, Siegel's theorem takes the following form:

**Theorem 9.2.4 (Siegel's theorem, zero-free region version).** *Let  $\chi$  be a primitive quadratic Dirichlet character modulo  $q > 1$ . Then there exists a positive constant  $c_2(\varepsilon)$  such that  $L(s, \chi)$  has no real zero  $\beta$  with*

$$\beta \geq 1 - \frac{c_2(\varepsilon)}{q^\varepsilon}.$$



The largest defect of Siegel's theorem, in either version, is that the implicit constants  $c_1(\varepsilon)$  and  $c_2(\varepsilon)$  are ineffective (and not necessarily equal). Actually, the lower bound result is slightly stronger as it implies the zero-free region result. We will first prove the zero-free region given the lower bound, and then we will prove the lower bound. Before we begin, we need two small lemmas about the size of  $L'(\sigma, \chi)$  and  $L(\sigma, \chi)$  for  $\sigma$  close to 1:

**Lemma 9.2.2.** *Let  $\chi$  be a non-principal Dirichlet character modulo  $m > 1$ . Then  $L'(\sigma, \chi) = O(\log^2(m))$  for any  $\sigma$  such that  $0 \leq 1 - \sigma \leq \frac{1}{\log(m)}$ .*

*Proof.* Setting  $A(X) = \sum_{n \leq X} \chi(n)$  we have  $A(X) \ll 1$  by Corollary 1.3.1 (i) and that  $\chi$  is periodic. Therefore  $\sigma_c \leq 0$  by Proposition 6.1.1. Hence for  $\sigma$  in the prescribed region,  $L(\sigma, \chi)$  is holomorphic and its derivative is given by

$$L'(\sigma, \chi) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\chi(n) \log(n)}{n^\sigma} = \sum_{n < m} \frac{\chi(n) \log(n)}{n^\sigma} + \sum_{n \geq m} \frac{\chi(n) \log(n)}{n^\sigma}.$$

We will show that the last two sums are both  $O(\log^2(m))$ . For the first sum, if  $n < m$ , we have

$$\left| \frac{\chi(n) \log(n)}{n^\sigma} \right| \leq \frac{1}{n^\sigma} \log(n) = \frac{n^{1-\sigma}}{n} \log(n) < \frac{m^{1-\sigma}}{n} \log(n) < \frac{e}{n} \log(m),$$

where the last inequality follows because  $1 - \sigma \leq \frac{1}{\log(m)}$ . Then

$$\left| \sum_{n \leq m} \frac{\chi(n) \log(n)}{n^\sigma} \right| < e \log(m) \sum_{n < m} \frac{1}{n} < e \log(m) \int_1^m \frac{1}{n} dn \ll \log^2(m).$$

For the second sum,  $A(Y) \ll 1$  so that  $A(Y) \log(Y) Y^{-\sigma} \rightarrow 0$  as  $Y \rightarrow \infty$ . Then Abel's summation formula (see Appendix B.3) gives

$$\sum_{n \geq m} \frac{\chi(n) \log(n)}{n^\sigma} = -A(m) \log(m) m^{-\sigma} - \int_m^\infty A(u) (1 - \sigma \log(u)) u^{-(\sigma+1)} du. \quad (9.37)$$

Since  $0 \leq 1 - \sigma \leq \frac{1}{\log(m)}$ , we have  $1 - \sigma \log(u) \leq \frac{\log(u)}{\log(m)}$ . Also, we have the more precise estimate  $|A(X)| \leq m$  because  $\chi$  is  $m$ -periodic and  $|\chi(n)| \leq 1$ . With these estimates and Equation (9.37) we make the following computation:

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \sum_{n \geq m} \frac{\chi(n) \log(n)}{n^\sigma} \right| &\leq |A(m)| \log(m) m^{-\sigma} + \int_m^\infty |A(u)| (1 - \sigma \log(u)) u^{-(\sigma+1)} du \\ &\leq |A(m)| \log(m) m^{-\sigma} + \log(m) \int_m^\infty |A(u)| \log(u) u^{-(\sigma+1)} du \\ &\leq m^{1-\sigma} \log(m) + m \int_m^\infty \log(u) u^{-(\sigma+1)} du \\ &= m^{1-\sigma} \log(m) + m \left( -\log(u) \frac{u^{-\sigma}}{\sigma} \Big|_m^\infty + \int_m^\infty \frac{u^{-(\sigma+1)}}{s} du \right) \\ &= m^{1-\sigma} \log(m) + m \left( -\log(u) \frac{u^{-\sigma}}{\sigma} - \frac{u^{-\sigma}}{\sigma^2} \right) \Big|_m^\infty \\ &= m^{1-\sigma} \log(m) + m \left( \log(m) \frac{m^{-\sigma}}{\sigma} + \frac{m^{-\sigma}}{\sigma^2} \right) \\ &\ll m^{1-\sigma} \log(m) \\ &\ll e \log(m), \end{aligned}$$

where in the fourth line we have used integration by parts and the last line holds because  $1 - \sigma \leq \frac{1}{\log(m)}$ . But  $e \log(m) = O(\log^2(m))$  so the second sum is also  $O(\log^2(m))$ . Therefore we have shown  $L'(\sigma, \chi) = O(\log^2(m))$  finishing the proof.  $\square$

The second lemma is even easier and is proved in exactly the same way:

**Lemma 9.2.3.** *Let  $\chi$  be a non-principal Dirichlet character modulo  $m > 1$ . Then  $L(\sigma, \chi) = O(\log(m))$  for any  $\sigma$  such that  $0 \leq 1 - \sigma \leq \frac{1}{\log(m)}$ .*

*Proof.* Note that

$$L(\sigma, \chi) = \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\chi(n)}{n^\sigma} = \sum_{n < m} \frac{\chi(n)}{n^\sigma} + \sum_{n \geq m} \frac{\chi(n)}{n^\sigma}.$$

It suffices to show that the last two sums are both  $O(\log^2(m))$ . For the first sum, since  $n < m$ , we have

$$\left| \frac{\chi(n)}{n^\sigma} \right| \leq \frac{1}{n^\sigma} = \frac{n^{1-\sigma}}{n} < \frac{m^{1-\sigma}}{n} < \frac{e}{n},$$

where the last inequality follows because  $1 - \sigma \leq \frac{1}{\log(m)}$ . Therefore

$$\left| \sum_{n \leq m} \frac{\chi(n)}{n^\sigma} \right| < e \sum_{n < m} \frac{1}{n} < e \log(m) \int_1^m \frac{1}{n} dn \ll \log(m).$$

As for the second sum, setting  $A(Y) = \sum_{n \leq Y} \chi(n)$  we have  $A(Y) \ll 1$  by Corollary 1.3.1 (i) and that  $\chi$  is periodic. Thus  $A(Y)Y^{-\sigma} \rightarrow 0$  as  $Y \rightarrow \infty$ . Then Abel's summation formula (see Appendix B.3) gives

$$\sum_{n \geq m} \frac{\chi(n)}{n^\sigma} = -A(m)m^{-\sigma} - \int_m^\infty A(u)u^{-(\sigma+1)} du. \quad (9.38)$$

Using the more precise estimate  $|A(X)| \leq m$ , because  $\chi$  is  $m$ -periodic and  $|\chi(n)| \leq 1$ , with Equation (9.38), we make the following computation:

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \sum_{n \geq m} \frac{\chi(n) \log(n)}{n^\sigma} \right| &\leq |A(m)|m^{-\sigma} + \int_m^\infty |A(u)|u^{-(\sigma+1)} du \\ &\leq |A(m)|m^{-\sigma} + \int_m^\infty |A(u)|\log(u)u^{-(\sigma+1)} du \\ &\leq m^{1-\sigma} + m \int_m^\infty \log(u)u^{-(\sigma+1)} du \\ &= m^{1-\sigma} + m \left( -\log(u) \frac{u^{-\sigma}}{\sigma} \Big|_m^\infty + \int_m^\infty \frac{u^{-(\sigma+1)}}{s} du \right) \\ &= m^{1-\sigma} + m \left( -\log(u) \frac{u^{-\sigma}}{\sigma} - \frac{u^{-\sigma}}{\sigma^2} \right) \Big|_m^\infty \\ &= m^{1-\sigma} + m \left( \log(m) \frac{m^{-\sigma}}{\sigma} + \frac{m^{-\sigma}}{\sigma^2} \right) \\ &\ll m^{1-\sigma} \\ &\ll e, \end{aligned}$$

where in the fourth line we have used integration by parts and the last line holds because  $1 - \sigma \leq \frac{1}{\log(m)}$ . But  $e = O(\log^2(m))$  so the second sum is also  $O(\log^2(m))$ . Therefore we have shown  $L(\sigma, \chi) = O(\log(m))$  which completes the proof.  $\square$

We will now prove the zero-free region version of Siegel's theorem, assuming the lower bound version, and using Lemma 9.2.2:

*Proof of Siegel's theorem, zero-free region version.* We will prove the theorem by contradiction. Clearly the result holds for a single  $q$ , and notice that the result also holds provided we bound  $q$  from above by taking the maximum of all the  $c_2(\varepsilon)$ . Therefore we may suppose  $q$  is arbitrarily large. In this case, if there was a real zero  $\beta$  with  $\beta \geq 1 - \frac{c_2(\varepsilon)}{q^\varepsilon}$ , equivalently  $1 - \beta \leq \frac{c_2(\varepsilon)}{q^\varepsilon}$ , then for large enough  $q$  we have  $0 \leq 1 - \beta \leq \frac{1}{\log(q)}$  so that  $L'(\sigma, \chi) = O(\log^2(q))$  for  $\beta \leq \sigma \leq 1$  by Lemma 9.2.2. These two estimates and the mean value theorem together give

$$L(1, \chi) = L(1, \chi) - L(\beta, \chi) = L'(\sigma, \chi)(1 - \beta) \ll \frac{\log^2(q)}{q^\varepsilon}.$$

Upon taking  $\frac{\varepsilon}{2}$  in the lower bound version of Siegel's theorem, we obtain

$$\frac{1}{q^{\frac{\varepsilon}{2}}} \ll L(1, \chi) \ll \frac{\log^2(q)}{q^\varepsilon},$$

which is a contradiction for large  $q$ . □

It remains to prove the lower bound version of Siegel's theorem. The idea is to combine two Dirichlet  $L$ -functions attached to distinct characters with distinct moduli and use this new  $L$ -function to derive a lower bound for a single Dirichlet  $L$ -function at  $s = 1$ :

*Proof of Siegel's theorem, lower bound version.* Let  $\chi_1$  and  $\chi_2$  be two distinct primitive quadratic and non-principal characters modulo  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  respectively. Set

$$F(s) = \zeta(s)L(s, \chi_1)L(s, \chi_2)L(s, \chi_1\chi_2).$$

The key ingredient in the proof is a lower bound for  $F(s)$  relative to the modulus  $q_1q_2$  in a small interval on the real axis close to 1. We will first deduce this estimate from which the rest of the proof follows easily. Observe that  $F(s)$  is holomorphic on  $\mathbb{C}$  except for a simple pole at  $s = 1$ . Let  $\lambda$  be the residue at this pole so that

$$\lambda = L(1, \chi_1)L(1, \chi_2)L(1, \chi_1\chi_2).$$

Taking the logarithm of  $F(s)$  with  $\sigma > 1$  and using Equation (8.5) gives

$$\log F(s) = \sum_p \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{1 + \chi_1(p^k) + \chi_2(p^k) + (\chi_1\chi_2)(p^k)}{kp^{ks}} = \sum_p \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{(1 + \chi_1(p^k))(1 + \chi_2(p^k))}{kp^{ks}}.$$

Since  $(1 + \chi_1(p^k))(1 + \chi_2(p^k))$  is nonnegative, the coefficients of  $\log F(s)$  are nonnegative and therefore the coefficients of  $F(s)$ , call them  $a(n)$ , are nonnegative as well. Moreover,  $a(0) = 1$  which can be seen by expanding out the Dirichlet series defining  $F(s)$ . Now  $F(s)$  is represented as an absolutely convergent series for  $\sigma > 1$  so that it has a power series expansion about  $s = 2$  with radius 1:

$$F(s) = \sum_{m \geq 0} \frac{F^{(m)}(2)}{m!} (s - 2)^m,$$

for  $|s - 2| < 1$ . We can compute  $F^{(m)}(2)$  using the Dirichlet series by differentiating termwise:

$$F^{(m)}(2) = \frac{d^m}{ds^m} \left( \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n)}{n^s} \right) \Big|_{s=2} = (-1)^m \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n) \log^m(n)}{n^s} \Big|_{s=2} = (-1)^m \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{a(n) \log^m(n)}{n^2}. \quad (9.39)$$

Since the  $a(n)$  are nonnegative, as just mentioned, it follows that  $F^{(m)}(2)$  is nonnegative and therefore we may write

$$F(s) = \sum_{m \geq 0} b(m)(2-s)^m,$$

for  $|s-2| < 1$  and with  $b(m)$  nonnegative. Also, Equation (9.39) and the fact that the  $a(n)$  are nonnegative with  $a(0) = 1$  together imply that  $b(0) > 1$ . Then

$$F(s) - \frac{\lambda}{s-1} = F(s) - \lambda \sum_{m \geq 0} (2-s)^m = \sum_{m \geq 0} (b(m) - \lambda)(2-s)^m, \quad (9.40)$$

and the last series must be absolutely convergent for say  $|s-2| < 2$  because  $F(s) - \frac{\lambda}{s-1}$  is entire as we have removed the pole at  $s = 1$ . We now wish to estimate  $F(s)$  and  $\frac{\lambda}{s-1}$  on the circle  $|s-2| = \frac{3}{2}$ . Let  $\chi$  be a non-principal Dirichlet character modulo  $m$  and let  $A(X) = \sum_{n \leq X} \chi(n)$ . Then Abel's summation formula and that  $A(X) \ll 1$  (by Corollary 1.3.1 (i) and that  $\chi$  is periodic) together imply

$$L(s, \chi) = s \int_1^\infty A(u) u^{-(s+1)} du,$$

for  $\sigma > 0$ . Now suppose  $\sigma \geq \frac{1}{2}$ . As  $|A(X)| \leq m$ , we obtain

$$|L(s, \chi)| \leq m|s| \int_1^\infty u^{-(\sigma+1)} du = -m|s| \frac{u^{-\sigma}}{\sigma} \Big|_1^\infty = \frac{m|s|}{\sigma} \leq 2m|s|.$$

In particular, on the disk  $|s-2| \leq \frac{3}{2}$  we have the estimates

$$L(s, \chi_1) \ll q_1, \quad L(s, \chi_2) \ll q_2, \quad \text{and} \quad L(s, \chi_1 \chi_2) \ll q_1 q_2.$$

Since  $\zeta(s)$  is bounded on the circle  $|s-2| = \frac{3}{2}$  (it's a compact set) and  $\lambda = L(1, \chi_1)L(1, \chi_2)L(1, \chi_1 \chi_2)$ , we obtain the bounds

$$F(s) \ll q_1^2 q_2^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\lambda}{s-1} \ll q_1^2 q_2^2,$$

on this circle as well. Cauchy's inequality for the size of coefficients of a power series applied to Equation (9.40) on the circle  $|s-2| = \frac{3}{2}$  gives

$$b(m) - \lambda \ll q_1^2 q_2^2 \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^m. \quad (9.41)$$

Let  $M$  be a positive integer. For real  $s$  with  $\frac{7}{8} < s < 1$  we have  $2-s < \frac{9}{8}$  and using Equations (9.40) and (9.41) together we can upper bound the tail of  $F(s) - \frac{\lambda}{s-1}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \sum_{m \geq M} (b(m) - \lambda)(2-s)^m \right| &\leq \sum_{m \geq M} |b(m) - \lambda|(2-s)^m \\ &\ll q_1^2 q_2^2 \sum_{m \geq M} \left(\frac{2}{3}(2-s)\right)^m \\ &\ll q_1^2 q_2^2 \sum_{m \geq M} \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^m \\ &\ll q_1^2 q_2^2 \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^M \\ &\ll q_1^2 q_2^2 e^{-\frac{M}{4}}, \end{aligned}$$

where the last estimate follows because  $(\frac{3}{4})^M < e^{-\frac{M}{4}}$  (which is equivalent to  $\log(\frac{3}{4}) < -\frac{1}{4}$ ). Let  $c$  be the implicit constant. Using that the  $b(m)$  are nonnegative,  $b(0) > 1$ , and the previous estimate for the tail, we can estimate  $F(s) - \frac{\lambda}{s-1}$  from below for  $\frac{7}{8} < s < 1$ . Indeed, throwing away the  $b(m)$  terms for  $1 \leq m \leq M$ , bounding the constant term below by 1, and use the tail estimate gives

$$F(s) - \frac{\lambda}{s-1} \geq 1 - \lambda \sum_{0 \leq m \leq M-1} (2-s)^m - cq_1^2 q_2^2 e^{-\frac{M}{4}} = 1 - \lambda \frac{(2-s)^M - 1}{1-s} - cq_1^2 q_2^2 e^{-\frac{M}{4}}, \quad (9.42)$$

which is valid for any positive integer  $M$ . Now chose  $M$  to be a positive integer such that

$$\frac{1}{2} e^{-\frac{1}{4}} \leq cq_1^2 q_2^2 e^{-\frac{M}{4}} < \frac{1}{2}. \quad (9.43)$$

Upon isolating  $F(s)$  in Equation (9.42) and using the second estimate in Equation (9.43), we get

$$F(s) \geq \frac{1}{2} - \lambda \frac{(2-s)^M}{1-s}. \quad (9.44)$$

Taking the logarithm of the first estimate in Equation (9.43) and isolating  $M$ , we obtain

$$M \leq 8 \log(q_1 q_2) + c, \quad (9.45)$$

for some different constant  $c$ . It follows that

$$(2-s)^M = e^{M \log(2-s)} < e^{M(1-s)} \leq c(q_1 q_2)^{8(1-s)}, \quad (9.46)$$

for some different constant  $c$ , where in the first estimate we have used the Taylor series of the logarithm truncated at the first term and in the second estimate we have used Equation (9.45). Since  $1-s$  is positive for  $\frac{7}{8} < s < 1$ , we can combine Equations (9.44) and (9.46) which gives

$$F(s) \geq \frac{1}{2} - \lambda \frac{c}{1-s} (q_1 q_2)^{8(1-s)}. \quad (9.47)$$

This is our desired lower bound for  $F(s)$ . We will now choose the character  $\chi_1$ . If there exists a Siegel zero  $\beta_1$  with  $1 - \frac{\varepsilon}{16} < \beta_1 < 1$ , let  $\chi_1$  be the character corresponding to the Dirichlet  $L$ -function that admits this Siegel zero. Then  $F(\beta_1) = 0$  independent of the choice of  $\chi_2$ . If there is no such Siegel zero, choose  $\chi_1$  to be any quadratic primitive character and  $\beta_1$  to be any number such that  $1 - \frac{\varepsilon}{16} < \beta_1 < 1$ . Then  $F(\beta_1) < 0$  independent of the choice of  $\chi_2$ . Indeed,  $\zeta(s)$  is negative in this segment (actually for  $0 \leq s < 1$ ) and each of the Dirichlet  $L$ -function defining  $F(s)$  is positive at  $s = 1$  (the Euler product implies Dirichlet  $L$ -function are positive for  $s > 1$  and they are in fact nonzero for  $s = 1$  by Theorem 8.1.3) and do not admit a zero for  $\beta_1 < s \leq 1$  by our choice of  $\beta_1$ . In either case,  $F(\beta_1) \leq 0$  so isolating  $\lambda$  and disregarding the constants in Equation (9.47) with  $s = \beta_1$  gives the weaker estimate

$$\lambda \gg \frac{1 - \beta_1}{(q_1 q_2)^{8(1-\beta_1)}}. \quad (9.48)$$

We will now choose  $\chi_2 = \chi$  and hence  $q_2 = q$  as in the statement of the theorem. Notice that, independent of any work we have done, the theorem holds for a single  $q$ . Moreover, the theorem holds provided we bound  $q$  from above by taking the minimum of the  $c_1(\varepsilon)$ . Therefore we may assume  $q$  is arbitrarily large and in particular that  $q > q_1$ . Using Lemma 9.2.3 with  $\sigma = 1$  applied to  $L(\sigma, \chi_1)$  and  $L(\sigma, \chi_1 \chi)$ , we obtain

$$\lambda \ll \log(q_1) \log(q_1 q) L(1, \chi). \quad (9.49)$$

Combining Equations (9.48) and (9.49) yields

$$\frac{1 - \beta_1}{(q_1 q)^{8(1-\beta_1)}} \ll \log(q_1) \log(q_1 q) L(1, \chi).$$

As  $\beta_1$  and  $q_1$  are fixed and  $\log(q_1 q) = O(\log(q))$ , isolating  $L(1, \chi)$  gives the weaker estimate

$$L(1, \chi) \gg \frac{1}{q^{8(1-\beta_1) \log(q)}}. \quad (9.50)$$

But  $1 - \frac{\varepsilon}{16} < \beta_1 < 1$  so that  $0 < 8(1 - \beta_1) < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$  which combined with Equation (9.50) yields

$$L(1, \chi) \gg \frac{1}{q^{\frac{\varepsilon}{2}(\log(q))}} \gg \frac{1}{q^\varepsilon},$$

where the last estimate follows because  $\log(q) \ll q^{\frac{\varepsilon}{2}}$  for sufficiently large  $q$ . □

The part of the proof of the lower bound version of Siegel's theorem which makes  $c_1(\varepsilon)$  (and hence  $c_2(\varepsilon)$ ) ineffective is the value of  $\beta_1$ . The choice of  $\beta_1$  depends upon the existence of a Siegel zero near 1 and relative to the given  $\varepsilon$ . Since we don't know if Siegel zeros exist, this makes estimating  $\beta_1$  relative to  $\varepsilon$  ineffective. Many results in analytic number theory make use of Siegel's theorem and hence are also ineffective. Many important problems investigate methods to get around using Siegel's theorem in favor of a weaker result that is effective.

### 9.3 Zero Counting & Riemann-von Mangoldt Formulas

Although the Riemann hypothesis is currently out of reach, it is an interesting question to know how many nontrivial zeros there are up to height  $T$  or around a specific height. This can be accomplished with some tools from complex analysis, explicit formulas for logarithmic derivatives, and lots of estimation.

#### The Riemann–von Mangoldt formula for $\zeta(s)$

Let  $Z(\zeta)$  be the set of nontrivial zeros for  $\zeta(s)$  counted with multiplicity. For any  $T > 0$  set

$$N(T) = \#\{\rho = \beta + i\gamma \in Z(\zeta) : \gamma \in (0, T)\}.$$

We will be interested in estimating  $N(T)$ . In order to accomplish this, we will require a small lemma:

**Lemma 9.3.1.** *Let  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  be a nontrivial zero of  $\zeta(s)$ . Then for  $|t| > 2$ ,*

$$\sum_{\rho} \frac{1}{1 + (t - \gamma)^2} \ll \log |t|.$$

*Proof.* Suppose  $1 < \sigma \leq 2$  and  $|t| > 2$ . By Equation (8.10),  $\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) \right)$  is bounded so Equation (9.13) implies

$$\sum_{\rho} \operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{1}{s - \rho} + \frac{1}{\rho} \right) \ll \log |t|,$$

As we have already mentioned (see the proof of the classical zero-free region for  $\zeta(s)$ ) the terms in the sum are positive. Noting that  $\operatorname{Re}\left(\frac{1}{s-\rho}\right) = \frac{\sigma-\beta}{(\sigma-\beta)^2+(t-\gamma)^2}$ , discarding the constant terms in the sum gives

$$\sum_{\rho} \frac{\sigma-\beta}{(\sigma-\beta)^2+(t-\gamma)^2} \ll \log |t|. \quad (9.51)$$

If we take  $\sigma = 2$  in Equation (9.51), then

$$\sum_{\rho} \frac{1}{4+(t-\gamma)^2} \ll \log |t|,$$

because  $1 < (\sigma - \beta) < 2$ . As  $4 + (t - \gamma)^2 \ll 1 + (t - \gamma)^2$ , the desired estimate follows.  $\square$

Actually, Lemma 9.3.1 already gives us some information about the number of nontrivial zeros around a fixed height. Specifically, we have the following corollary:

**Corollary 9.3.1.** *Let  $|t| > 2$ . Then the following hold:*

- (i) *The number of nontrivial zeros of  $\zeta(s)$  with ordinate in  $[t-1, t+1]$  is  $O(\log |t|)$ .*
- (ii) *For nontrivial zeros  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  of  $\zeta(s)$ ,*

$$\sum_{|\gamma-t|>1} \frac{1}{(t-\gamma)^2} = O(\log |t|).$$

*Proof.* For (i),  $\gamma$  is bounded so  $1 + (t - \gamma)^2 \ll 1$ . The statement follows by discarding all the terms in the sum in Lemma 9.3.1 with  $|\gamma - t| > 1$  and using the previous bound. To prove (ii),  $|\gamma - t| > 1$  implies  $1 + (t - \gamma)^2 \ll (t - \gamma)^2$  (if  $|\gamma - t|$  was not bounded below the implicit constant would depend upon  $\gamma$  and  $t$ ). This last estimate with Lemma 9.3.1 gives (ii).  $\square$

With Corollary 9.3.1 we can prove the most well-known result which estimates  $N(T)$ . The result was conjectured by Riemann in [Rie59] but was proved by von Mangoldt in 1905 (see [Man05]). Consequently, it is known as the **Riemann–von Mangoldt formula (for  $\zeta(s)$ )**:

**Theorem 9.3.1 (Riemann–von Mangoldt formula,  $\zeta(s)$  version).** *For  $T > 2$ ,*

$$N(T) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \log \left( \frac{T}{2\pi} \right) - \frac{T}{2\pi} + O(\log(T)).$$

*Proof.* We will prove this estimate  $N(T)$  by an application of the argument principle to  $\xi(s)$ . Recall that  $\xi(s)$  is holomorphic on  $\mathbb{C}$  and its zeros are exactly the nontrivial zeros of  $\zeta(s)$ . Then for any region  $\Omega$ , the argument principle implies

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial\Omega} \frac{\xi'(s)}{\xi(s)} ds = |Z(\xi) \cap \Omega|.$$

Let  $\Omega$  be the region enclosed by the contours  $\eta_1, \dots, \eta_6$  in Figure 9.2 and let  $\eta = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq 6} \eta_i$  so that  $\eta = \partial\Omega$ . It will also be useful to let  $\eta_L = \eta_2 + \eta_3$  and  $\eta_R = \eta_4 + \eta_5$ .

Since  $\bar{\rho}$  is a nontrivial zero if  $\rho$  is, the number of zeros enclosed by  $\eta$  is  $N(T)$ . Therefore  $|Z(\xi) \cap \Omega| = N(T)$  and hence

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta} \frac{\xi'(s)}{\xi(s)} ds = N(T). \quad (9.52)$$


 Figure 9.2: Contour for the Riemann–von Mangoldt formula for  $\zeta(s)$ 

We now examine the left-hand side of Equation (9.52). The facts  $\frac{\xi'}{\xi}(s) = \frac{d}{ds} \log(\xi(s))$  and  $\log(s) = \log|s| + \arg(s)$  together imply

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta} \frac{\xi'}{\xi}(s) ds = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta} \frac{d}{ds} \log|\xi(s)| ds + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\eta} \frac{d}{ds} \arg(\xi(s)) ds = \frac{1}{2\pi} \Delta_{\eta} \arg(\xi(s)), \quad (9.53)$$

where the last equality follows because  $\eta$  is closed. Since  $\xi(s)$  is real for real  $s > 0$ , the functional equation implies  $\xi(s)$  is real for all real  $s$ . Then  $\xi(s) = \xi(\bar{s})$  holds for all  $s$  by the identity theorem. This implies that there is no change in the argument along  $\eta_1$  and  $\eta_6$ . Moreover, the functional equation for  $\xi(s)$  and that  $-\arg(s) = \arg(\bar{s})$  together imply

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\xi(s)) &= \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\xi(1-s)) \\ &= \Delta_{-\eta_R} \arg(\xi(s)) \\ &= -\Delta_{\eta_R} \arg(\xi(s)) \\ &= \Delta_{\eta_R} \arg(\overline{\xi(s)}) \\ &= \Delta_{\eta_R} \arg(\xi(\bar{s})) \\ &= \Delta_{\eta_R} \arg(\xi(s)). \end{aligned}$$

So the change in the argument of  $\xi(s)$  along  $\eta_L$  is the same as the change in the argument along  $\eta_R$ . So this discussion together with Equations (9.52) and (9.53) tell us that

$$N(T) = \frac{1}{\pi} \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\xi(s)). \quad (9.54)$$

Since the argument function is additive,  $\xi(s) = (s-1)\pi^{-\frac{s}{2}}\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}+1\right)\zeta(s)$  implies

$$\Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\xi(s)) = \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(s-1) + \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\pi^{-\frac{s}{2}}) + \Delta_{\eta_L} \left( \Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}+1\right) \right) + \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\zeta(s)). \quad (9.55)$$

We now estimate the terms on the right-hand side of Equation (9.55). For the first term, we compute

$$\Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(s-1) = \arg(s-1) \Big|_2^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} = \arg\left(-\frac{1}{2} + iT\right) = \frac{\pi}{2} + O\left(\frac{1}{T}\right), \quad (9.56)$$



where in the last equality we have used the estimate  $\arg(s) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{t}{\sigma}\right) = \frac{\pi}{2} + O\left(\frac{1}{t}\right)$ , which holds by the Laurent series of the inverse tangent. For the second term, we perform an analogous computation:

$$\Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\pi^{-\frac{s}{2}}) = \arg(\pi^{-\frac{s}{2}}) \Big|_2^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} = \arg\left(\pi^{-\frac{\frac{1}{2}+iT}{2}}\right) = \operatorname{Im}\left(\log\left(\pi^{-\frac{\frac{1}{2}+iT}{2}}\right)\right) = -\frac{T}{2} \log(\pi). \quad (9.57)$$

To compute the gamma term we apply Stirling's formula to the log gamma function by using Equation (1.7):

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg\left(\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2} + 1\right)\right) &= \arg\left(\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2} + 1\right)\right) \Big|_2^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \\ &= \arg\left(\Gamma\left(\frac{5}{4} + i\frac{T}{2}\right)\right) \\ &= \operatorname{Im}\left(\log \Gamma\left(\frac{5}{4} + i\frac{T}{2}\right)\right) \\ &= \operatorname{Im}\left(\frac{1}{2} \log(2\pi) + \left(\frac{3}{4} + i\frac{T}{2}\right) \log\left(\frac{5}{4} + i\frac{T}{2}\right) - \left(\frac{5}{4} + i\frac{T}{2}\right)\right) + O(1) \\ &= \frac{3}{4} \arg\left(\frac{5}{4} + i\frac{T}{2}\right) + \frac{T}{2} \log\left|\frac{5}{4} + i\frac{T}{2}\right| - \frac{T}{2} + O(1) \\ &= \frac{3\pi}{8} + \frac{T}{2} \log\left(\frac{T}{2}\right) - \frac{T}{2} + O(1), \end{aligned} \quad (9.58)$$

where in the last line we have used the estimate  $\arg(s) = \frac{\pi}{2} + O\left(\frac{1}{t}\right)$  again. Substituting Equations (9.56) to (9.58) into Equation (9.55) yields

$$\Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\xi(s)) = \frac{T}{2} \log\left(\frac{T}{2\pi}\right) - \frac{T}{2} + \frac{7\pi}{8} + \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\zeta(s)) + O(1).$$

By Equation (9.54), we conclude

$$N(T) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \log\left(\frac{T}{2\pi}\right) - \frac{T}{2\pi} + \frac{7}{8} + S(T) + O(1), \quad (9.59)$$

where we set  $S(T) = \frac{1}{\pi} \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\zeta(s))$ . We now show  $S(T) = O(\log(T))$ . To prove this estimate, we first

rewrite  $S(T)$  in terms of an integral:

$$\begin{aligned}
 S(T) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\zeta(s)) \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \arg(\zeta(s)) \Big|_2^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Im}(\log \zeta(s)) \Big|_2^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Im} \left( \log \zeta(s) \Big|_2^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Im} \left( \int_{\eta_L} \frac{d}{ds} \log \zeta(s) ds \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Im} \left( \int_{\eta_L} \frac{\zeta'(s)}{\zeta(s)} ds \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\eta_L} \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{\zeta'(s)}{\zeta(s)} \right) ds \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_2^{2+iT} \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{\zeta'(s)}{\zeta(s)} \right) ds + \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{\zeta'(s)}{\zeta(s)} \right) ds \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{\zeta'(s)}{\zeta(s)} \right) ds + O(1),
 \end{aligned} \tag{9.60}$$

where the last line follows because  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$  is bounded for  $\sigma > 1$  by Equation (8.10). It's now necessary to estimate  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$ . The explicit formula for  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$  at  $s = 2 + it$  with  $t > 0$  implies

$$0 = -\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(2 + it) + B - \frac{1}{1 + it} - \frac{1}{2} \log(\pi) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( 2 + i \frac{t}{2} \right) + \sum_{\rho} \left( \frac{1}{2 + it - \rho} + \frac{1}{\rho} \right). \tag{9.61}$$

Subtracting Equation (9.61) from the explicit formula for  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$  gives

$$\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) = \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(2 + it) + \frac{1}{1 + it} - \frac{1}{s - 1} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( 2 + i \frac{t}{2} \right) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( \frac{s}{2} + 1 \right) + \sum_{\rho} \left( \frac{1}{s - \rho} - \frac{1}{2 + it - \rho} \right).$$

Now suppose  $-1 \leq \sigma \leq 2$  with  $t$  bounded away from zero and not coinciding with the ordinate of a nontrivial zero. We will estimate all of the terms except for the sum. Equation (8.10) implies that the first term is bounded. For the second and third terms,  $\frac{1}{1+it} = O(\log |t|)$  and  $\frac{1}{s-1} = O(\log |t|)$  where in the second estimate we have used the fact that  $\sigma$  is bounded. For the two digamma terms, Proposition 1.6.3 implies  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( 2 + i \frac{t}{2} \right) = O(\log |t|)$  and  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( \frac{s}{2} + 1 \right) = O(\log |t|)$ . All of these estimates together give the asymptotic

$$\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) = \sum_{\rho} \left( \frac{1}{s - \rho} - \frac{1}{2 + it - \rho} \right) + O(\log |t|). \tag{9.62}$$

Now we estimate part of the sum in Equation (9.62). Let  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$ . For the terms in the sum with  $|\gamma - t| < 1$ ,  $|2 + it - \rho| \geq 1$  so that the terms corresponding to  $2 + it - \rho$  are at most 1 in absolute value

and there are at most  $O(\log |t|)$  of them by Corollary 9.3.1 (i). Hence

$$\sum_{|\gamma-t|<1} \left( \frac{1}{s-\rho} - \frac{1}{2+it-\rho} \right) = \sum_{|\gamma-t|<1} \frac{1}{s-\rho} + O(\log |t|). \quad (9.63)$$

For those terms with  $|\gamma-t|>1$ , since  $t-\gamma \ll s-\rho$  and  $t-\gamma \ll 2+it-\rho$  we have

$$\frac{1}{s-\rho} - \frac{1}{2+it-\rho} = \frac{2-\sigma}{(s-\rho)(2+it-\rho)} \ll \frac{1}{(t-\gamma)^2}.$$

Therefore Corollary 9.3.1 (ii) gives

$$\sum_{|\gamma-t|>1} \left( \frac{1}{s-\rho} - \frac{1}{2+it-\rho} \right) \ll \sum_{|\gamma-t|>1} \frac{1}{(t-\gamma)^2} = O(\log |t|). \quad (9.64)$$

Inserting Equations (9.63) and (9.64) into Equation (9.62) yields the estimate

$$\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) = \sum_{|\gamma-t|<1} \frac{1}{s-\rho} + O(\log |t|). \quad (9.65)$$

We are now ready to estimate  $S(T)$ . Equations (9.60) and (9.65) give the first line in the following chain:

$$\begin{aligned} S(T) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \operatorname{Im} \left( \sum_{|\gamma-t|<1} \frac{1}{s-\rho} \right) ds + O(\log(T)) \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{|\gamma-t|<1} \int_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{1}{s-\rho} \right) ds + O(\log(T)) \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{|\gamma-t|<1} \operatorname{Im} \left( \int_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \frac{1}{s-\rho} ds \right) + O(\log(T)) \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{|\gamma-t|<1} \operatorname{Im} \left( \int_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \frac{d}{ds} \log(s-\rho) ds \right) + O(\log(T)) \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{|\gamma-t|<1} \arg(s-\rho) \Big|_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} + O(\log(T)) \\ &= \sum_{|\gamma-t|<1} 2 + O(\log(T)) \\ &= O(\log(T)), \end{aligned}$$

where the second to last line follows because the change in argument is at most  $2\pi$  in absolute value, and the last line follows by Corollary 9.3.1 (i). So we have shown that  $S(T) = O(\log(T))$ . Then from Equation (9.59) we obtain

$$N(T) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \log \left( \frac{T}{2\pi} \right) - \frac{T}{2\pi} + \frac{7}{8} + O(\log(T)),$$

which implies the weaker estimate

$$N(T) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \log \left( \frac{T}{2\pi} \right) - \frac{T}{2\pi} + O(\log(T)),$$

as desired. □

We can obtain good information about the distribution of the nontrivial zeros of  $\zeta(s)$  from the Riemann-von Mangoldt formula:

**Corollary 9.3.2.** *For  $T > 2$ ,*

$$\frac{N(T)}{T} \sim \frac{1}{2\pi} \log \left( \frac{T}{2\pi} \right).$$

*Proof.* From the Riemann-von Mangoldt formula for  $\zeta(s)$ ,

$$\frac{N(T)}{T} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \log \left( \frac{T}{2\pi} \right) \left( 1 + O \left( \frac{\log(T)}{\log \left( \frac{T}{2\pi} \right) T} \right) \right).$$

Since  $O \left( \frac{\log(T)}{\log \left( \frac{T}{2\pi} \right) T} \right) = o(1)$ , the result follows.  $\square$

Corollary 9.3.2 can be interpreted as saying that for large  $T$  the density of  $N(T)$  is approximately  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \log \left( \frac{T}{2\pi} \right)$ . Since this grows with  $T$ , we see that the nontrivial zeros tend to accumulate farther up the critical strip with logarithmic growth.

### The Riemann–von Mangoldt formula for $L(s, \chi)$

Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q > 1$  and let  $Z(\chi)$  be the set of nontrivial zeros for  $L(s, \chi)$  counted with multiplicity. For any  $T > 0$  set

$$N(T, \chi) = \#\{\rho = \beta + i\gamma \in Z(\chi) : 0 < |\gamma| < T\}.$$

We need to use the condition  $0 < |\gamma| < T$  instead of  $\gamma \in (0, T)$  because the zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$  need not be symmetric with respect to the real axis ( $\bar{\rho}$  is not necessarily a zero if  $\rho$  is when  $\chi$  is complex). We will compensate for this by introducing a factor of  $\frac{1}{2}$  in the statement of the theorem. Just as for the Riemann zeta function, we will require a small lemma:

**Lemma 9.3.2.** *Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q > 1$ . Let  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  be a nontrivial zero of  $L(s, \chi)$ . Then for all  $t$ ,*

$$\sum_{\rho} \frac{1}{1 + (t - \gamma)^2} \ll \mathcal{L}.$$

*Proof.* Suppose  $1 < \sigma \leq 2$ . By Equation (8.14),  $\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) \right)$  is bounded so Equation (9.19) implies

$$\sum_{\rho} \operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{1}{s - \rho} \right) \ll \mathcal{L},$$

As we have already mentioned (see the proof of the classical zero-free region for  $L(s, \chi)$ ) the terms in the sum are positive. Since  $\operatorname{Re} \left( \frac{1}{s - \rho} \right) = \frac{\sigma - \beta}{(\sigma - \beta)^2 + (t - \gamma)^2}$ , we immediately have

$$\sum_{\rho} \frac{\sigma - \beta}{(\sigma - \beta)^2 + (t - \gamma)^2} \ll \mathcal{L}. \quad (9.66)$$

Taking  $\sigma = 2$  in Equation (9.66) gives

$$\sum_{\rho} \frac{1}{4 + (t - \gamma)^2} \ll \mathcal{L},$$

because  $1 < (\sigma - \beta) < 2$ . Since  $4 + (t - \gamma)^2 \ll 1 + (t - \gamma)^2$ , the desired estimate follows.  $\square$

Just as for Lemma 9.3.1, Lemma 9.3.2 tells us some information about the number of nontrivial zeros around a fixed height:

**Corollary 9.3.3.** *Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q > 1$ . Then for all  $t$ , the following hold:*

- (i) *The number of nontrivial zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$  with ordinate in  $[t - 1, t + 1]$  is  $O(\mathcal{L})$ .*
- (ii) *For nontrivial zeros  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  of  $L(s, \chi)$ ,*

$$\sum_{|\gamma - t| > 1} \frac{1}{(t - \gamma)^2} = O(\mathcal{L}).$$

*Proof.* To prove (i),  $\gamma$  is bounded so  $1 + (t - \gamma)^2 \ll 1$ . The claim follows by discarding all the terms in the sum in Lemma 9.3.2 with  $|\gamma - t| > 1$  and using the previous bound. As for (ii),  $|\gamma - t| > 1$  implies  $1 + (t - \gamma)^2 \ll (t - \gamma)^2$  (as we mentioned in Corollary 9.3.1). This estimate with Lemma 9.3.2 gives (ii).  $\square$

We are now ready to prove the **Riemann–von Mangoldt formula (for  $L(s, \chi)$ )**:

**Theorem 9.3.2 (Riemann–von Mangoldt formula,  $L(s, \chi)$  version).** *Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q > 1$ . Then for  $T > 2$ ,*

$$\frac{1}{2}N(T, \chi) = \frac{T}{2\pi} \log \left( \frac{qT}{2\pi} \right) - \frac{T}{2\pi} + O(\log(qT)).$$

*Proof.* For any region  $\Omega$ , the argument principle implies

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\partial\Omega} \frac{\xi'}{\xi}(s, \chi) ds = |Z(\chi) \cap \Omega|.$$

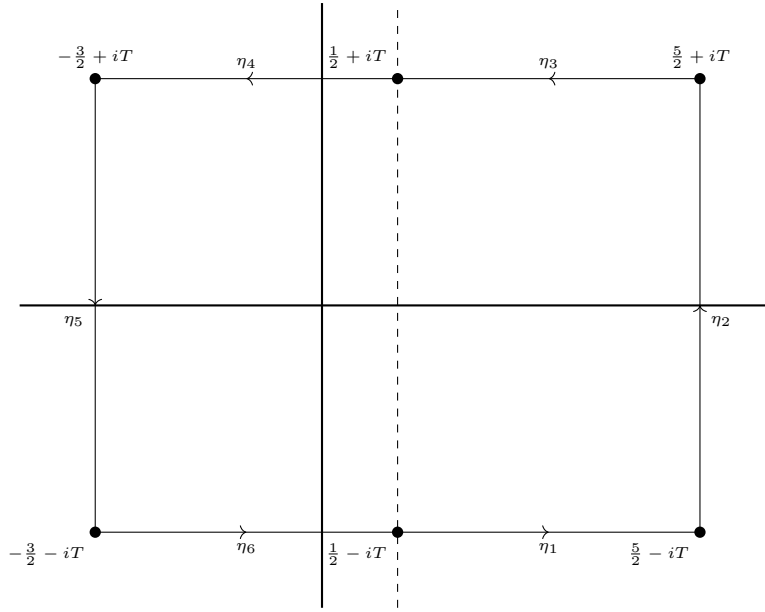
Let  $\Omega$  be the region enclosed by the contours  $\eta_1, \dots, \eta_6$  in Figure 9.3 and set  $\eta = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq 6} \eta_i$  so we have  $\eta = \partial\Omega$ . It will be helpful to let  $\eta_L = \eta_1 + \eta_2 + \eta_3$  and  $\eta_R = \eta_3 + \eta_4 + \eta_5$ .

We have chosen this region so that the boundary avoids the potential zero at  $s = -1$  if  $\chi$  is odd (we need to enlarge the region to make sure we contain the width of the entire critical strip). Then  $|Z(\chi) \cap \Omega| = N(T, \chi)$  and so

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta} \frac{\xi'}{\xi}(s, \chi) ds = N(T, \chi). \quad (9.67)$$

We now manipulate left-hand side of Equation (9.67). Since  $\frac{\xi'}{\xi}(s, \chi) = \frac{d}{ds} \log(\xi(s, \chi))$  and  $\log(s) = \log|s| + \arg(s)$ , we have

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta} \frac{\xi'}{\xi}(s, \chi) ds = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta} \frac{d}{ds} \log |\xi(s, \chi)| ds + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\eta} \frac{d}{ds} \arg(\xi(s, \chi)) ds = \frac{1}{2\pi} \Delta_{\eta} \arg(\xi(s, \chi)), \quad (9.68)$$


 Figure 9.3: Contour for the Riemann–von Mangoldt formula for  $L(s, \chi)$ 

where the last equality holds because  $\eta$  is closed. Recall that we have already shown  $\overline{(\xi(s, \chi))} = \xi(\bar{s}, \bar{\chi})$ . This fact along with the functional equation for  $\xi(s, \chi)$  and that  $-\arg(s) = \arg(\bar{s})$  together imply

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\xi(s, \chi)) &= \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg\left(\frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} \xi(1-s, \bar{\chi})\right) \\
 &= \Delta_{-\eta_R} \arg\left(\frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} \xi(s, \bar{\chi})\right) \\
 &= -\Delta_{\eta_R} \arg\left(\frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} \xi(s, \bar{\chi})\right) \\
 &= \Delta_{\eta_R} \arg\left(\overline{\frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} \xi(s, \bar{\chi})}\right) \\
 &= \Delta_{\eta_R} \arg\left(\frac{\overline{\varepsilon_\chi}}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} \xi(\bar{s}, \chi)\right) \\
 &= \Delta_{\eta_R} \arg\left(\frac{\overline{\varepsilon_\chi}}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} \xi(s, \chi)\right) \\
 &= \Delta_{\eta_R} \arg\left(\frac{\overline{\varepsilon_\chi}}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}}\right) + \Delta_{\eta_R} \arg(\xi(s, \chi)) \\
 &= \Delta_{\eta_R} \arg(\xi(s, \chi)),
 \end{aligned}$$

where the second to last line follows because the argument function is additive. Hence the change in the argument of  $\xi(s, \chi)$  along  $\eta_L$  is the same as the change in the argument along  $\eta_R$ . This fact along with Equations (9.67) and (9.68) together imply

$$N(T, \chi) = \frac{1}{\pi} \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\xi(s, \chi)). \quad (9.69)$$

By additivity of the argument function and that  $\xi(s, \chi) = \left(\frac{q}{\pi}\right)^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) L(s, \chi)$ , we have

$$\Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\xi(s, \chi)) = \Delta_{\eta_L} \arg\left(\left(\frac{q}{\pi}\right)^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}}\right) + \Delta_{\eta_L} \left(\Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right)\right) + \Delta_{\eta_L}(L(s, \chi)). \quad (9.70)$$

We will estimate the terms on the right-hand side of Equation (9.70). The first term is a direct computation:

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta_{\eta_L} \arg \left( \left( \frac{q}{\pi} \right)^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \right) &= \arg \left( \left( \frac{q}{\pi} \right)^{\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \right) \Big|_{\frac{5}{2}-iT}^{-\frac{3}{2}+iT} \\
&= \arg \left( \left( \frac{q}{\pi} \right)^{\frac{-\frac{3}{2}+iT+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \right) - \arg \left( \left( \frac{q}{\pi} \right)^{\frac{\frac{5}{2}-iT+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \right) \\
&= \operatorname{Im} \left( \log \left( \left( \frac{q}{\pi} \right)^{\frac{-\frac{3}{2}+iT+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \right) \right) - \operatorname{Im} \left( \log \left( \left( \frac{q}{\pi} \right)^{\frac{\frac{5}{2}-iT+\mathfrak{a}}{2}} \right) \right) \\
&= T \log \left( \frac{q}{\pi} \right).
\end{aligned} \tag{9.71}$$

For the gamma term we apply Stirling's formula to the log gamma function by using Equation (1.7):

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta_{\eta_L} \arg \left( \Gamma \left( \frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) \right) &= \arg \left( \Gamma \left( \frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) \right) \Big|_{\frac{5}{2}-iT}^{-\frac{3}{2}+iT} \\
&= \arg \left( \Gamma \left( \frac{-3+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} + i\frac{T}{2} \right) \right) - \arg \left( \Gamma \left( \frac{5+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} - i\frac{T}{2} \right) \right) \\
&= \operatorname{Im} \left( \log \Gamma \left( \frac{-3+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} + i\frac{T}{2} \right) \right) - \operatorname{Im} \left( \log \Gamma \left( \frac{5+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} - i\frac{T}{2} \right) \right) \\
&= \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{1}{2} \log(2\pi) + \left( \frac{-5+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} + i\frac{T}{2} \right) \log \left( \frac{-3+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} + i\frac{T}{2} \right) \right. \\
&\quad \left. - \left( \frac{-3+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} + i\frac{T}{2} \right) \right) - \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{1}{2} \log(2\pi) + \left( \frac{3+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} - i\frac{T}{2} \right) \right. \\
&\quad \left. \cdot \log \left( \frac{5+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} - i\frac{T}{2} \right) - \left( \frac{5+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} - i\frac{T}{2} \right) \right) + O(1) \\
&= -\frac{5+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} \arg \left( \frac{-3+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} + i\frac{T}{2} \right) + \frac{T}{2} \log \left| \frac{-3+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} + i\frac{T}{2} \right| - \frac{T}{2} \\
&\quad - \frac{3+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} \arg \left( \frac{5+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} - i\frac{T}{2} \right) + \frac{T}{2} \log \left| \frac{5+2\mathfrak{a}}{4} - i\frac{T}{2} \right| - \frac{T}{2} + O(1) \\
&= -\pi \left( 1 + \frac{\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) + T \log \left( \frac{T}{2} \right) - T + O(1),
\end{aligned} \tag{9.72}$$

where in the last line we have used the estimate  $\arg(s) = \frac{\pi}{2} + O\left(\frac{1}{t}\right)$ . Substituting Equations (9.71) and (9.72) into Equation (9.70) yields

$$\Delta_{\eta_L} \arg(\xi(s, \chi)) = T \log \left( \frac{T}{2\pi} \right) - T + -\pi \left( 1 + \frac{\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) + \Delta_{\eta_L}(L(s, \chi)) + O(1).$$

Using Equation (9.69), we get

$$N(T, \chi) = \frac{T}{\pi} \log \left( \frac{qT}{2\pi} \right) - \frac{T}{\pi} - \left( 1 + \frac{\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) + S(T, \chi) + O(1), \tag{9.73}$$

where we set  $S(T, \chi) = \frac{1}{\pi} \Delta_{\eta_L}(L(s, \chi))$ . We will now show  $S(T, \chi) = O(\log(qT))$ . To accomplish this we

first rewrite  $S(T, \chi)$  in terms of an an integral:

$$\begin{aligned}
 S(T, \chi) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \Delta_{\eta_L}(L(s, \chi)) \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \arg(L(s, \chi)) \Big|_{\frac{5}{2}-iT}^{-\frac{3}{2}+iT} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Im}(\log L(s, \chi)) \Big|_{\frac{5}{2}-iT}^{-\frac{3}{2}+iT} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Im} \left( \log L(s, \chi) \Big|_{\frac{5}{2}-iT}^{-\frac{3}{2}+iT} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Im} \left( \int_{\eta_L} \frac{d}{ds} \log L(s, \chi) ds \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Im} \left( \int_{\eta_L} \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) ds \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\eta_L} \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) \right) ds \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\frac{5}{2}-iT}^{\frac{5}{2}+iT} \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) \right) ds + \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\frac{5}{2}+iT}^{-\frac{3}{2}+iT} \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) \right) ds \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{\frac{5}{2}+iT}^{-\frac{3}{2}+iT} \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) \right) ds + O(1),
 \end{aligned} \tag{9.74}$$

where the last line holds because  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  is bounded for  $\sigma > 1$  by Equation (8.14). Now we estimate  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$ . The explicit formula for  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  at  $s = 2 + it$  with  $t > 0$  implies

$$0 = -\frac{L'}{L}(2 + it, \chi) + B(\chi) - \frac{1}{2} \log \left( \frac{q}{\pi} \right) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( 1 + \frac{\mathfrak{a}}{2} + i \frac{t}{2} \right) + \sum_{\rho} \left( \frac{1}{2 + it - \rho} + \frac{1}{\rho} \right). \tag{9.75}$$

Subtracting Equation (9.75) from the explicit formula for  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  gives

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) = \frac{L'}{L}(2 + it) + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( 1 + \frac{\mathfrak{a}}{2} + i \frac{t}{2} \right) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( \frac{s + \mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) + \sum_{\rho} \left( \frac{1}{s - \rho} - \frac{1}{2 + it - \rho} \right).$$

Now suppose  $-\frac{3}{2} \leq \sigma \leq \frac{5}{2}$  with  $t$  bounded away from zero and not coinciding with the ordinate of a nontrivial zero. We will estimate all of the terms save for the sum. The first term is bounded by Equation (8.14). For the two digamma terms, Proposition 1.6.3 implies  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( 1 + \frac{\mathfrak{a}}{2} + i \frac{t}{2} \right) = O(\log |t|)$  and  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( \frac{s + \mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) = O(\log |t|)$ . All of these estimates together give the asymptotic

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) = \sum_{\rho} \left( \frac{1}{s - \rho} - \frac{1}{2 + it - \rho} \right) + O(\log |t|). \tag{9.76}$$

Now we are ready to estimate part of the sum in Equation (9.76). Let  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$ . For the terms in the sum with  $|\gamma - t| < 1$ ,  $|2 + it - \rho| \geq 1$  so that the terms corresponding to  $2 + it - \rho$  are at most 1 in absolute value and there are at most  $O(\mathcal{L})$  of them by Corollary 9.3.3 (i). Therefore

$$\sum_{|\gamma - t| < 1} \left( \frac{1}{s - \rho} - \frac{1}{2 + it - \rho} \right) = \sum_{|\gamma - t| < 1} \frac{1}{s - \rho} + O(\mathcal{L}). \tag{9.77}$$



As for the terms with  $|\gamma - t| > 1$ , we have  $t - \gamma \ll s - \rho$  and  $t - \gamma \ll 2 + it - \rho$  so that

$$\frac{1}{s - \rho} - \frac{1}{2 + it - \rho} = \frac{2 - \sigma}{(s - \rho)(2 + it - \rho)} \ll \frac{1}{(t - \gamma)^2}.$$

Hence Corollary 9.3.1 (ii) implies

$$\sum_{|\gamma - t| > 1} \left( \frac{1}{s - \rho} - \frac{1}{2 + it - \rho} \right) \ll \sum_{|\gamma - t| > 1} \frac{1}{(t - \gamma)^2} = O(\mathcal{L}). \quad (9.78)$$

Inserting Equations (9.77) and (9.78) into Equation (9.76) yields the estimate

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s) = \sum_{|\gamma - t| < 1} \frac{1}{s - \rho} + O(\mathcal{L}). \quad (9.79)$$

We can now estimate  $S(T, \chi)$ . Equations (9.74) and (9.79) give the first line in the following chain:

$$\begin{aligned} S(T, \chi) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \operatorname{Im} \left( \sum_{|\gamma - t| < 1} \frac{1}{s - \rho} \right) ds + O(\mathcal{L}) \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{|\gamma - t| < 1} \int_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \operatorname{Im} \left( \frac{1}{s - \rho} \right) ds + O(\mathcal{L}) \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{|\gamma - t| < 1} \operatorname{Im} \left( \int_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \frac{1}{s - \rho} ds \right) + O(\mathcal{L}) \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{|\gamma - t| < 1} \operatorname{Im} \left( \int_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} \frac{d}{ds} \log(s - \rho) ds \right) + O(\mathcal{L}) \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{|\gamma - t| < 1} \arg(s - \rho) \Big|_{2+iT}^{\frac{1}{2}+iT} + O(\mathcal{L}) \\ &= \sum_{|\gamma - T| < 1} 2 + O(\mathcal{L}) \\ &= O(\mathcal{L}), \end{aligned}$$

where the second to last line follows because the change in argument is at most  $2\pi$  in absolute value, and the last line follows by Corollary 9.3.3 (i). But  $\mathcal{L} = O(\log(qT))$  so that  $S(T) = O(\log(qT))$ . By Equation (9.73) we get

$$N(T, \chi) = \frac{T}{\pi} \log \left( \frac{qT}{2\pi} \right) - \frac{T}{\pi} - \left( 1 + \frac{\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) + O(\log(qT)),$$

and this implies the weaker estimate

$$N(T, \chi) = \frac{T}{\pi} \log \left( \frac{qT}{2\pi} \right) - \frac{T}{\pi} + O(\log(qT)),$$

which is equivalent to the claim. □

As for  $\zeta(s)$ , we can obtain good information about the distribution of the nontrivial zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$  from the Riemann-von Mangoldt formula:

**Corollary 9.3.4.** *Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q > 1$ . Then for  $T > 2$ ,*

$$\frac{N(T, \chi)}{T} \sim \frac{1}{\pi} \log \left( \frac{qT}{2\pi} \right).$$

*Proof.* From the Riemann-von Mangoldt formula for  $L(s, \chi)$ ,

$$\frac{N(T, \chi)}{T} = \frac{1}{\pi} \log \left( \frac{qT}{2\pi} \right) \left( 1 + O \left( \frac{\log(qT)}{\log \left( \frac{qT}{2\pi} \right) T} \right) \right).$$

Since  $O \left( \frac{\log(qT)}{\log \left( \frac{qT}{2\pi} \right) T} \right) = o(1)$ , the result follows. □

Corollary 9.3.4 says that for large  $T$  the density of  $N(T, \chi)$  is approximately  $\frac{1}{\pi} \log \left( \frac{qT}{2\pi} \right)$ . As this grows with  $T$ , the nontrivial zeros tend to accumulate farther up the critical strip with logarithmic growth.

# Chapter 10

## Explicit Formulas & Prime Number Theorems

Our main aim is to prove the prime number theorem and its variant for primes restricted to a certain residue class, the Siegel–Walfisz theorem, in the classical manner. These results will follow from explicit formulas for Chebyshev functions. After deriving these results, we prove the prime number theorem and the Siegel–Walfisz theorem.

### 10.1 Explicit Formulas for Chebyshev Functions

#### The Explicit Formula for $\psi(x)$

The **Chebyshev function**  $\psi(x)$ , for  $x > 0$ , is defined by

$$\psi(x) = \sum_{n \leq x} \Lambda(n).$$

The explicit formula for  $\psi(x)$  will be obtained by applying truncated Perron’s formula to the logarithmic derivative of  $\zeta(s)$ . Since  $\psi(x)$  is discontinuous when  $x$  is a prime power, we need to work with a slightly modified function to apply the Mellin inversion formula. Define  $\psi_0(x)$  by

$$\psi_0(x) = \begin{cases} \psi(x) & \text{if } x \text{ is not a prime power,} \\ \psi(x) - \frac{1}{2}\Lambda(x) & \text{if } x \text{ is a prime power.} \end{cases}$$

Equivalently,  $\psi_0(x)$  is  $\psi(x)$  except that its value is halfway between the limit values when  $x$  is a prime power. Stated another way, if  $x$  is a prime power the last term in the sum for  $\psi_0(x)$  is multiplied by  $\frac{1}{2}$ . The **explicit formula** for  $\psi(x)$  is the following:

**Theorem 10.1.1 (Explicit formula for  $\psi(x)$ ).** *For  $x \geq 2$ ,*

$$\psi_0(x) = x - \sum_{\rho} \frac{x^{\rho}}{\rho} - \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(0) - \frac{1}{2} \log(1 - x^{-2}),$$

where  $\rho$  runs over the nontrivial zeros of  $\zeta(s)$  counted with multiplicity and ordered with respect to the size of the ordinate.

A few comments are in order before we prove the explicit formula for  $\psi(x)$ . First, since  $\rho$  is conjectured to be of the form  $\rho = \frac{1}{2} + i\gamma$  under the Riemann hypothesis,  $x$  is conjectured to be the main term in the explicit formula. The constant  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(0)$  can be shown to be  $\log(2\pi)$  (see [Dav80] for a proof). Also, using the Taylor series of the logarithm, the last term can be expressed as

$$\frac{1}{2} \log(1 - x^{-2}) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{m \geq 1} (-1)^{m-1} \frac{(-x^{-2})^m}{m} = \sum_{m \geq 1} (-1)^{2m-1} \frac{x^{-2m}}{2m} = \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{x^{-2m}}{-2m} = \sum_{\omega} \frac{x^{\omega}}{\omega},$$

where  $\omega$  runs over the trivial zeros of  $\zeta(s)$ . We will now prove the explicit formula for  $\psi(x)$ :

*Proof of the explicit formula for  $\psi(x)$ .* Recalling Equation (8.10) and that  $\psi(x) = \sum_{n \leq x} \Lambda(n)$ , applying truncated Perron's formula to  $-\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$  gives

$$\psi_0(x) - J(x, T) \ll x^c \sum_{\substack{n \geq 1 \\ n \neq x}} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^c} \min \left( 1, \frac{1}{T |\log(\frac{x}{n})|} \right) + \delta_x \Lambda(x) \frac{c}{T}, \quad (10.1)$$

where

$$J(x, T) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} -\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) x^s \frac{ds}{s},$$

$c > 1$ , and it is understood that  $\delta_x = 0$  unless  $x$  is a prime power. Take  $T > 2$  not coinciding with the ordinate of a nontrivial zero and let  $c = 1 + \frac{1}{\log(x^2)}$  so that  $x^c = \sqrt{e}x$ . The first step is to estimate the right-hand side of Equation (10.1). We deal with the terms corresponding to  $n$  such that  $n$  is bounded away from  $x$  before anything else. So suppose  $n \leq \frac{3}{4}x$  or  $n \geq \frac{5}{4}x$ . For these  $n$ ,  $\log(\frac{x}{n})$  is bounded away from zero so that their contribution is

$$\ll \frac{x^c}{T} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{n^c} \ll \frac{x^c}{T} \left( -\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(c) \right) \ll \frac{x \log(x)}{T}, \quad (10.2)$$

where the last estimate follows from Equation (9.12) and our choice of  $c$ . Now we deal with the terms  $n$  close to  $x$ . Consider those  $n$  for which  $\frac{3}{4}x < n < x$ . Let  $x_1$  be the largest prime power less than  $x$ . We may also suppose  $\frac{3}{4}x < x_1 < x$  since otherwise  $\Lambda(n) = 0$  and these terms do not contribute anything. Moreover,  $\frac{x^c}{n^c} \ll 1$ . For the term  $n = x_1$ , we have

$$\log\left(\frac{x}{n}\right) = -\log\left(1 - \frac{x - x_1}{x}\right) \geq \frac{x - x_1}{x},$$

where we have obtained the inequality by using Taylor series of the logarithm truncated after the first term. The contribution of this term is then

$$\ll \Lambda(x_1) \min\left(1, \frac{x}{T(x - x_1)}\right) \ll \log(x) \min\left(1, \frac{x}{T(x - x_1)}\right). \quad (10.3)$$

For the other such  $n$ , we can write  $n = x_1 - v$ , where  $v$  is an integer satisfying  $0 < v < \frac{1}{4}x$ , so that

$$\log\left(\frac{x}{n}\right) \geq \log\left(\frac{x_1}{n}\right) = -\log\left(1 - \frac{v}{x_1}\right) \geq \frac{v}{x_1},$$

where we have obtained the latter inequality by using Taylor series of the logarithm truncated after the first term. The contribution for these  $n$  is then

$$\ll \sum_{0 < v < \frac{1}{4}x} \Lambda(x_1 - v) \frac{x_1}{Tv} \ll \frac{x}{T} \sum_{0 < v < \frac{1}{4}x} \frac{\Lambda(x_1 - v)}{v} \ll \frac{x \log(x)}{T} \sum_{0 < v < \frac{1}{4}x} \frac{1}{v} \ll \frac{x \log^2(x)}{T}. \quad (10.4)$$

The contribution for those  $n$  for which  $x < n < \frac{5}{4}x$  is handled in exactly the same way with  $x_1$  being the least prime power larger than  $x$ . Let  $\langle x \rangle$  be the distance between  $x$  and the nearest prime power other than  $x$  if  $x$  itself is a prime power. Combining Equations (10.3) and (10.4) with our previous comment, the contribution for those  $n$  with  $\frac{3}{4}x < n < \frac{5}{4}x$  is

$$\ll \frac{x \log^2(x)}{T} + \log(x) \min \left( 1, \frac{x}{T \langle x \rangle} \right). \quad (10.5)$$

Putting Equations (10.2) and (10.5) together and noticing that the error term in Equation (10.2) is absorbed by the second error term in Equation (10.5), we obtain

$$\psi_0(x) - J(x, T) \ll \frac{x \log^2(x)}{T} + \log(x) \min \left( 1, \frac{x}{T \langle x \rangle} \right). \quad (10.6)$$

This is the first part of the proof. Now we estimate  $J(x, T)$  by appealing to the residue theorem. Let  $U \geq 1$  be an odd integer. Let  $\Omega$  be the region enclosed by the contours  $\eta_1, \dots, \eta_4$  in Figure 10.1 and set  $\eta = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq 4} \eta_i$  so that  $\eta = \partial\Omega$ .

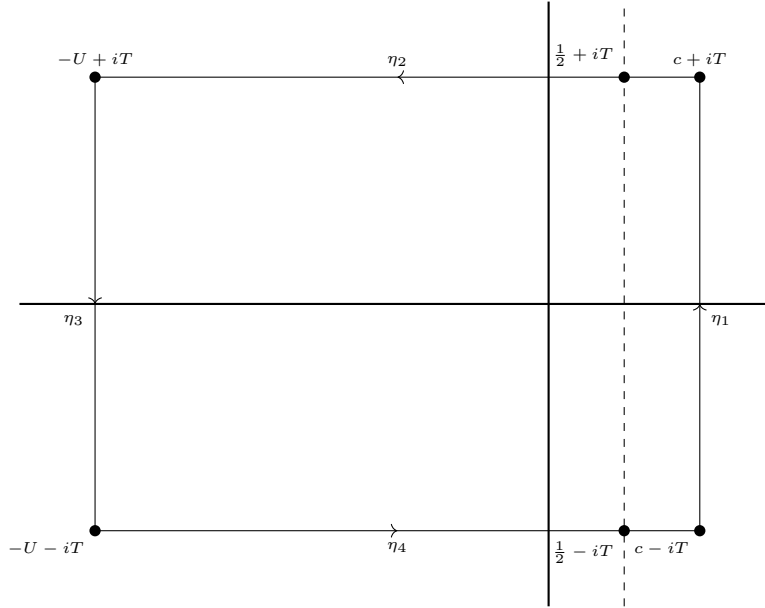


Figure 10.1: Contour for the explicit formula for  $\psi(x)$

We may express  $J(x, T)$  as

$$J(x, T) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta_1} -\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) x^s \frac{ds}{s}.$$

The residue theorem together with the explicit formula for  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$  and Corollary 1.6.1 imply

$$J(x, T) = x - \sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} - \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(0) - \sum_{0 < 2m < U} \frac{x^{-2m}}{-2m} + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta_2 + \eta_3 + \eta_4} -\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) x^s \frac{ds}{s}, \quad (10.7)$$

where  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  is a nontrivial zero of  $\zeta$ . We will estimate  $J(x, T)$  by estimating the remaining integral. By Corollary 9.3.1 (i), the number of nontrivial zeros satisfying  $|\gamma - T| < 1$  is  $O(\log(T))$ . Among the ordinates of these zeros, there must be a gap of size  $\gg \frac{1}{\log(T)}$ . Upon varying  $T$  by a bounded amount (we are varying in the interval  $[T - 1, T + 1]$ ) so that it belongs to this gap, we can additionally ensure

$$\gamma - T \gg \frac{1}{\log(T)},$$

for all the nontrivial zeros of  $\zeta(s)$ . To estimate part of the horizontal integrals over  $\eta_2$  and  $\eta_4$ , Equation (9.65) gives

$$\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) = \sum_{|\gamma - T| < 1} \frac{1}{s - \rho} + O(\log(T)),$$

on the parts of these segments with  $-1 \leq \sigma \leq 2$ . By our choice of  $T$ ,  $|s - \rho| \geq |\gamma - T| \gg \frac{1}{\log(T)}$  so that each term in the sum is  $O(\log(T))$ . There are at most  $O(\log(T))$  such terms by Corollary 9.3.1 (i), so we find that

$$\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) = O(\log^2(T)),$$

for  $-1 \leq \sigma \leq 2$ . It follows that the parts of the horizontal integrals over  $\eta_2$  and  $\eta_4$  with  $-1 \leq \sigma \leq c$  (as  $x \geq 2$  our choice of  $c$  ensures  $c < 2$ ) contribute

$$\ll \frac{\log^2(T)}{T} \int_{-1}^c x^\sigma d\sigma \ll \frac{\log^2(T)}{T} \int_{-\infty}^c x^\sigma d\sigma \ll \frac{x \log^2(T)}{T \log(x)}, \quad (10.8)$$

where in the last estimate we have used the choice of  $c$ . To estimate the remainder of the horizontal integrals, we need a bound for  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s)$  when  $\sigma < -1$  and away from the trivial zeros. To this end, write the functional equation for  $\zeta(s)$  in the form

$$\zeta(s) = \pi^{s-1} \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{1-s}{2}\right)}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s}{2}\right)} \zeta(1-s),$$

and take the logarithmic derivative to get

$$\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) = \log(\pi) + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{1-s}{2}\right) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) + \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(1-s).$$

Let  $s$  be such that  $\sigma < -1$  and suppose  $s$  is distance  $\frac{1}{2}$  away from the trivial zeros. We will estimate every term on the right-hand side of the previous identity. The first term is constant and the last term is bounded by Equation (8.10). As for the digamma terms, since  $s$  is away from the trivial zeros, Proposition 1.6.3 implies  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{1-s}{2}\right) = O(\log|1-s|)$  and  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) = O(\log|s|)$ . However, as  $\sigma < -1$  and  $s$  is away from the trivial zeros,  $s$  and  $1-s$  are bounded away from zero so that  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{1-s}{2}\right) = O(\log|s|)$ . Putting these estimates together gives

$$\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) \ll \log(|s|), \quad (10.9)$$

for  $\sigma < -1$ . Using Equation (10.9), the parts of the horizontal integrals over  $\eta_2$  and  $\eta_4$  with  $-U \leq \sigma \leq -1$  contribute

$$\ll \frac{\log(T)}{T} \int_{-U}^{-1} x^\sigma d\sigma \ll \frac{\log(T)}{Tx \log(x)}. \quad (10.10)$$

Combining Equations (10.8) and (10.10) gives

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta_2 + \eta_4} -\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) x^s \frac{ds}{s} \ll \frac{x \log^2(T)}{T \log(x)} + \frac{\log(T)}{Tx \log(x)} \ll \frac{x \log^2(T)}{T \log(x)}. \quad (10.11)$$

To estimate the vertical integral, we use Equation (10.9) again to conclude that

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta_3} -\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(s) x^s \frac{ds}{s} \ll \frac{\log(U)}{U} \int_{-T}^T x^{-U} dt \ll \frac{T \log(U)}{U x^U}. \quad (10.12)$$

Combining Equations (10.7), (10.11) and (10.12) and taking the limit as  $U \rightarrow \infty$ , the error term in Equation (10.12) vanishes and the sum over  $m$  in Equation (10.7) evaluates to  $\frac{1}{2} \log(1 - x^{-2})$  (as we have already mentioned) giving

$$J(x, T) = x - \sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} - \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(0) - \frac{1}{2} \log(1 - x^{-2}) + \frac{x \log^2(T)}{T \log(x)}. \quad (10.13)$$

Substituting Equation (10.13) into Equation (10.6), we at last obtain

$$\psi_0(x) = x - \sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} - \frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(0) - \frac{1}{2} \log(1 - x^{-2}) + \frac{x \log^2(xT)}{T} + \log(x) \min \left( 1, \frac{x}{T \langle x \rangle} \right), \quad (10.14)$$

where the second to last term on the right-hand side is obtained by combining the error term in Equation (10.11) with the first error term in Equation (10.6). The theorem follows by taking the limit as  $T \rightarrow \infty$ .  $\square$

Note that the convergence of the right-hand side in the explicit formula for  $\psi(x)$  is uniform in any interval not containing a prime power since  $\psi(x)$  is continuous there. Moreover, we have an approximate formula for  $\psi(x)$  as a corollary:

**Corollary 10.1.1.** *For  $x \geq 2$  and  $T > 2$ ,*

$$\psi_0(x) = x - \sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} + R(x, T),$$

where  $\rho$  runs over the nontrivial zeros of  $\zeta(s)$  counted with multiplicity and ordered with respect to the size of the ordinate, and

$$R(x, T) \ll \frac{x \log^2(xT)}{T} + \log(x) \min \left( 1, \frac{x}{T \langle x \rangle} \right),$$

where  $\langle x \rangle$  is the distance between  $x$  and the nearest prime power other than  $x$  if  $x$  itself is a prime power. Moreover, if  $x$  is an integer, we have the simplified estimate

$$R(x, T) \ll \frac{x \log^2(xT)}{T}.$$

*Proof.* This follows from Equation (10.14) since  $\frac{\zeta'}{\zeta}(0)$  is constant and  $\frac{1}{2} \log(1 - x^{-2})$  is bounded for  $x \geq 2$ . If  $x$  is an integer, then  $\langle x \rangle \geq 1$  so that  $\log(x) \min \left( 1, \frac{x}{T \langle x \rangle} \right) \leq \frac{x \log(x)}{T}$  and this term can be absorbed by  $\frac{x \log^2(xT)}{T}$ .  $\square$

## The Explicit Formula for $\psi(x, \chi)$

Let  $\chi$  be a Dirichlet character modulo  $m > 1$ . The **Dirichlet-Chebyshev function**  $\psi(x, \chi)$ , for  $x > 0$ , is defined by

$$\psi(x, \chi) = \sum_{n \leq x} \chi(n) \Lambda(n).$$

This object plays the analogous role of  $\psi(x)$  but for Dirichlet  $L$ -functions. Accordingly, we will derive an explicit formula for  $\psi(x, \chi)$  in a similar manner to that of  $\psi(x)$ . Because  $\psi(x, \chi)$  is discontinuous when  $x$  is a prime power, we also introduce a slightly modified function. Define  $\psi_0(x, \chi)$  by

$$\psi_0(x, \chi) = \begin{cases} \psi(x, \chi) & \text{if } x \text{ is not a prime power,} \\ \psi(x, \chi) - \frac{1}{2}\chi(x)\Lambda(x) & \text{if } x \text{ is a prime power.} \end{cases}$$

Thus  $\psi_0(x, \chi)$  is  $\psi(x, \chi)$  except that its value is halfway between the limit values when  $x$  is a prime power. We will also need to define a particular constant that will come up. For a character  $\chi$ , define  $b(\chi)$  to be  $\frac{L'}{L}(0, \chi)$  if  $\chi$  is odd and to be the constant term in the Laurent series of  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  if  $\chi$  is even (as in the even case  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  has a pole at  $s = 0$ ). The **explicit formula** for  $\psi(x, \chi)$  is the following:

**Theorem 10.1.2 (Explicit formula for  $\psi(x, \chi)$ ).** *Let  $\chi$  be a primitive Dirichlet character of conductor  $q > 1$ . Then for  $x \geq 2$ ,*

$$\psi_0(x, \chi) = - \sum_{\rho} \frac{x^{\rho}}{\rho} - b(\chi) + \tanh^{-1}(x^{-1}),$$

if  $\chi$  is odd, and

$$\psi_0(x, \chi) = - \sum_{\rho} \frac{x^{\rho}}{\rho} - \log(x) - b(\chi) - \frac{1}{2} \log(1 - x^{-2}),$$

if  $\chi$  is even, and where in both expressions,  $\rho$  runs over the nontrivial zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$  counted with multiplicity and ordered with respect to the size of the ordinate.

As for  $\psi(x)$ , a few comments are in order. Unlike the explicit formula for  $\psi(x)$ , there is no main term  $x$  in the explicit formula for  $\psi(x, \chi)$ . This is because  $L(s, \chi)$  does not have a pole at  $s = 1$ . The constant  $b(\chi)$  can be expressed in terms of  $B(\chi)$  (see [Dav80] for a proof). Also, in the case  $\chi$  is odd the Taylor series of the inverse hyperbolic tangent lets us write

$$\tanh^{-1}(x^{-1}) = \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{x^{-(2m-1)}}{2m-1} = - \sum_{m \geq 1} \frac{x^{-(2m-1)}}{-(2m-1)} = - \sum_{\omega} \frac{x^{\omega}}{\omega},$$

where  $\omega$  runs over the trivial zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$ . In the case  $\chi$  is even,  $\frac{1}{2} \log(1 - x^{-2})$  accounts for the contribution of the trivial zeros just as for  $\zeta(s)$ . We will now prove the explicit formula for  $\psi(x, \chi)$ :

*Proof of the explicit formula for  $\psi(x, \chi)$ .* Recalling Equation (8.14) and that  $\psi(x, \chi) = \sum_{n \leq x} \chi(n) \Lambda(n)$ , truncated Perron's formula applied to  $-\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  gives

$$\psi_0(x, \chi) - J(x, T, \chi) \ll x^c \sum_{\substack{n \geq 1 \\ n \neq x}} \frac{\chi(n) \Lambda(n)}{n^c} \min \left( 1, \frac{1}{T |\log(\frac{x}{n})|} \right) + \delta_x \chi(x) \Lambda(x) \frac{c}{T}, \quad (10.15)$$

where

$$J(x, T, \chi) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} -\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) x^s \frac{ds}{s},$$



$c > 1$ , and it is understood that  $\delta_x = 0$  unless  $x$  is a prime power. Take  $T > 2$  not coinciding with the ordinate of a nontrivial zero and let  $c = 1 + \frac{1}{\log(x^2)}$  so that  $x^c = \sqrt{e}x$ . We will estimate the right-hand side of Equation (10.15). First, we estimate the terms corresponding to  $n$  such that  $n$  is bounded away from  $x$ . So suppose  $n \leq \frac{3}{4}x$  or  $n \geq \frac{5}{4}x$ . For these  $n$ ,  $\log\left(\frac{x}{n}\right)$  is bounded away from zero so that their contribution is

$$\ll \frac{x^c}{T} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\chi(n)\Lambda(n)}{n^c} \ll \frac{x^c}{T} \left( -\frac{\zeta'(c)}{\zeta(c)} \right) \ll \frac{x \log(x)}{T}, \quad (10.16)$$

where the middle estimate follows from Equation (8.10) and the last estimate follows from Equation (9.12) and our choice of  $c$ . Now we estimate the terms  $n$  close to  $x$ . So consider those  $n$  for which  $\frac{3}{4}x < n < x$  and let  $x_1$  be the largest prime power less than  $x$ . We may also assume  $\frac{3}{4}x < x_1 < x$  since otherwise  $\Lambda(n) = 0$  and these terms do not contribute anything. Moreover,  $\frac{x^c}{n^c} \ll 1$ . For the term  $n = x_1$ , we have the estimate

$$\log\left(\frac{x}{n}\right) = -\log\left(1 - \frac{x - x_1}{x}\right) \geq \frac{x - x_1}{x},$$

where we have obtained the inequality by using Taylor series of the logarithm truncated after the first term. The contribution of this term is

$$\ll \chi(x_1)\Lambda(x_1) \min\left(1, \frac{x}{T(x - x_1)}\right) \ll \log(x) \min\left(1, \frac{x}{T(x - x_1)}\right). \quad (10.17)$$

For the other  $n$ , we write  $n = x_1 - v$ , where  $v$  is an integer satisfying  $0 < v < \frac{1}{4}x$ , so that

$$\log\left(\frac{x}{n}\right) \geq \log\left(\frac{x_1}{n}\right) = -\log\left(1 - \frac{v}{x_1}\right) \geq \frac{v}{x_1},$$

where we have obtained the latter inequality by using Taylor series of the logarithm truncated after the first term. The contribution for these  $n$  is

$$\ll \sum_{0 < v < \frac{1}{4}x} \chi(x_1 - v)\Lambda(x_1 - v) \frac{x_1}{Tv} \ll \frac{x}{T} \sum_{0 < v < \frac{1}{4}x} \frac{\Lambda(x_1 - v)}{v} \ll \frac{x \log(x)}{T} \sum_{0 < v < \frac{1}{4}x} \frac{1}{v} \ll \frac{x \log^2(x)}{T}. \quad (10.18)$$

The contribution for those  $n$  for which  $x < n < \frac{5}{4}x$  is handled in exactly the same way with  $x_1$  being the least prime power larger than  $x$ . Let  $\langle x \rangle$  be the distance between  $x$  and the nearest prime power other than  $x$  if  $x$  itself is a prime power. Combining Equations (10.17) and (10.18) with our previous comment, the contribution for those  $n$  with  $\frac{3}{4}x < n < \frac{5}{4}x$  is

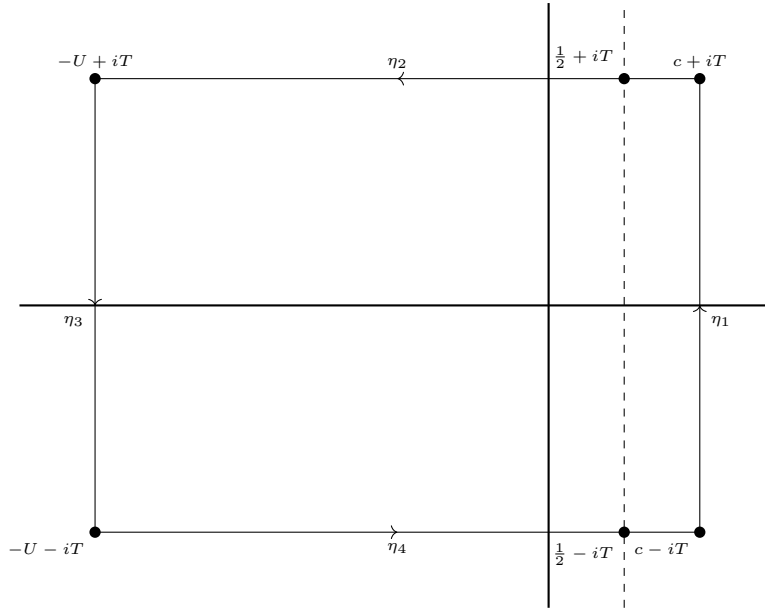
$$\ll \frac{x \log^2(x)}{T} + \log(x) \min\left(1, \frac{x}{T\langle x \rangle}\right). \quad (10.19)$$

Putting Equations (10.16) and (10.19), the error term in Equation (10.16) is absorbed by the second error term in Equation (10.19) and we obtain

$$\psi_0(x, \chi) - J(x, T, \chi) \ll \frac{x \log^2(x)}{T} + \log(x) \min\left(1, \frac{x}{T\langle x \rangle}\right). \quad (10.20)$$

Now we estimate  $J(x, T, \chi)$  by using the residue theorem. Let  $U \geq 1$  be an integer with  $U$  is even if  $\chi$  is odd and odd if  $\chi$  is even. Let  $\Omega$  be the region enclosed by the contours  $\eta_1, \dots, \eta_4$  in Figure 10.2 and set  $\eta = \sum_{1 \leq i \leq 4} \eta_i$  so that  $\eta = \partial\Omega$ . We may write  $J(x, T, \chi)$  as

$$J(x, T, \chi) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta_1} -\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) x^s \frac{ds}{s}.$$


 Figure 10.2: Contour for the explicit formula for  $\psi(x)$ 

We now separate the cases that  $\chi$  is even or odd. If  $\chi$  is odd, then the residue theorem together with the explicit formula for  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  and Corollary 1.6.1 gives

$$J(x, T, \chi) = - \sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} - b(\chi) - \sum_{0 < 2m+1 < U} \frac{x^{-(2m-1)}}{-(2m-1)} + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta_2 + \eta_3 + \eta_4} -\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) x^s \frac{ds}{s}, \quad (10.21)$$

where  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  is a nontrivial zero of  $L(s, \chi)$ . If  $\chi$  is even, then there is a minor complication because  $L(s, \chi)$  has a simple zero at  $s = 0$  and so the integrand has a double pole at  $s = 0$ . To find the residue, the Laurent series are

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) = \frac{1}{s} + b(\chi) + \cdots \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{x^s}{s} = \frac{1}{s} + \log(x) + \cdots,$$

and thus the residue of the integrand is  $-(\log(x) + b(\chi))$ . Now as before, the residue theorem together with the explicit formula for  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  and Corollary 1.6.1 gives

$$J(x, T, \chi) = - \sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} - \log(x) - b(\chi) - \sum_{0 < 2m < U} \frac{x^{-2m}}{-2m} + \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta_2 + \eta_3 + \eta_4} -\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) x^s \frac{ds}{s}, \quad (10.22)$$

where  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  is a nontrivial zero of  $L(s, \chi)$ . We now estimate the remaining integrals in Equations (10.21) and (10.22). For this estimate, the parity of  $\chi$  does not matter so we make no such restriction. By Corollary 9.3.3 (i), the number of nontrivial zeros satisfying  $|\gamma - T| < 1$  is  $O(\log(qT))$ . Among the ordinates of these zeros, there must be a gap of size  $\gg \frac{1}{\log(qT)}$ . Upon varying  $T$  by a bounded amount (we are varying in the interval  $[T - 1, T + 1]$ ) so that it belongs to this gap, we can additionally ensure

$$\gamma - T \gg \frac{1}{\log(qT)},$$

for all the nontrivial zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$ . To estimate part of the horizontal integrals over  $\eta_2$  and  $\eta_4$ , Equation (9.79) gives

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) = \sum_{|\gamma - T| < 1} \frac{1}{s - \rho} + O(\log(qT)),$$

on the parts of these segments with  $-1 \leq \sigma \leq 2$ . Our choice of  $T$  implies  $|s - \rho| \geq |\gamma - T| \gg \frac{1}{\log(qT)}$  so that each term in the sum is  $O(\log(qT))$ . As there are at most  $O(\log(qT))$  such terms by Corollary 9.3.3 (i), we have

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) = O(\log^2(qT)),$$

for  $-1 \leq \sigma \leq 2$ . It follows that the parts of the horizontal integrals over  $\eta_2$  and  $\eta_4$  with  $-1 \leq \sigma \leq c$  (as  $x \geq 2$  our choice of  $c$  ensures  $c < 2$ ) contribute

$$\ll \frac{\log^2(qT)}{T} \int_{-1}^c x^\sigma d\sigma \ll \frac{\log^2(qT)}{T} \int_{-\infty}^c x^\sigma d\sigma \ll \frac{x \log^2(qT)}{T \log(x)}. \quad (10.23)$$

where in the last estimate we have used the choice of  $c$ . To estimate the remainder of the horizontal integrals, we require a bound for  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  when  $\sigma < -1$  and away from the trivial zeros. To find such a bound, write the functional equation for  $L(s, \chi)$  in the form

$$L(s, \chi) = \frac{\varepsilon_\chi}{i^{\mathfrak{a}}} q^{\frac{1}{2}-s} \pi^{s-1} \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right)}{\Gamma\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right)} L(1-s, \chi),$$

and take the logarithmic derivative to get

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) = -\log(q) + \log(\pi) + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( \frac{(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( \frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) + \frac{L'}{L}(1-s, \chi).$$

Now let  $s$  be such that  $\sigma < -1$  and suppose  $s$  is distance  $\frac{1}{2}$  away from the trivial zeros. We will estimate every term on the right-hand side of the identity above. The second term is constant and the last term is bounded by Equation (8.14). For the digamma terms,  $s$  is away from the trivial zeros so Proposition 1.6.3 implies  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( \frac{(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) = O(\log |(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}|)$  and  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( \frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) = O(\log |s+\mathfrak{a}|)$ . However, as  $\sigma < -1$  and  $s$  is away from the trivial zeros,  $s + \mathfrak{a}$  and  $(1-s) + \mathfrak{a}$  are bounded away from zero so that  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( \frac{(1-s)+\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) = O(\log |s|)$  and  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma} \left( \frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2} \right) = O(\log |s|)$ . Putting these estimates together with the first term yields

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) \ll \log(q|s|), \quad (10.24)$$

for  $\sigma < -1$ . Using Equation (10.24), the parts of the horizontal integrals over  $\eta_2$  and  $\eta_4$  with  $-U \leq \sigma \leq -1$  contribute

$$\ll \frac{\log(qT)}{T} \int_{-U}^{-1} x^\sigma d\sigma \ll \frac{\log(qT)}{Tx \log(x)}. \quad (10.25)$$

Combining Equations (10.23) and (10.25) gives

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta_2+\eta_4} -\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) x^s \frac{ds}{s} \ll \frac{x \log^2(qT)}{T \log(x)} + \frac{\log(qT)}{Tx \log(x)} \ll \frac{x \log^2(qT)}{T \log(x)}. \quad (10.26)$$

To estimate the vertical integral, we use Equation (10.24) again to conclude that

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{\eta_3} -\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) x^s \frac{ds}{s} \ll \frac{\log(qU)}{U} \int_{-T}^T x^{-U} dt \ll \frac{T \log(qU)}{U x^U}. \quad (10.27)$$

Combining Equations (10.21), (10.26) and (10.27) and taking the limit as  $U \rightarrow \infty$ , the error term in Equation (10.27) vanishes and the sum over  $m$  in Equations (10.21) and (10.22) evaluates to  $-\tanh^{-1}(x^{-1})$  or  $\frac{1}{2}\log(1-x^{-2})$  respectively (as we have already mentioned) giving

$$J(x, T, \chi) = - \sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} - b(\chi) + \tanh^{-1}(x^{-1}) + \frac{x \log^2(qT)}{T \log(x)}, \quad (10.28)$$

if  $\chi$  is odd, and

$$J(x, T, \chi) = - \sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} - \log(x) - b(\chi) - \frac{1}{2} \log(1 - x^{-2}) + \frac{x \log^2(qT)}{T \log(x)}, \quad (10.29)$$

if  $\chi$  is even. Substituting Equations (10.28) and (10.29) into Equation (10.20) in the respective cases, we obtain

$$\psi_0(x, \chi) = - \sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} - b(\chi) + \tanh^{-1}(x^{-1}) + \frac{x \log^2(xqT)}{T} + \log(x) \min \left( 1, \frac{x}{T \langle x \rangle} \right), \quad (10.30)$$

if  $\chi$  is odd, and

$$\psi_0(x, \chi) = - \sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} - \log(x) - b(\chi) - \frac{1}{2} \log(1 - x^{-2}) + \frac{x \log^2(xqT)}{T} + \log(x) \min \left( 1, \frac{x}{T \langle x \rangle} \right), \quad (10.31)$$

if  $\chi$  is even, and where the second to last term on the right-hand side in both equations are obtained by combining the error term in Equation (10.26) with the first error term in Equation (10.20). The theorem follows by taking the limit as  $T \rightarrow \infty$ .  $\square$

As was the case for  $\psi(x)$ , the convergence of the right-hand side in the explicit formula for  $\psi(x, \chi)$  is uniform in any interval not containing a prime power since  $\psi(x, \chi)$  is continuous there. Moreover, there is an approximate formula for  $\psi(x, \chi)$  as a corollary which holds for all Dirichlet characters:

**Corollary 10.1.2.** *Let  $\chi$  be a Dirichlet character modulo  $m > 1$ . Then for  $2 \leq T \leq x$ ,*

$$\psi_0(x, \chi) = -\frac{x^{\beta_1}}{\beta_1} - \sum'_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} + R(x, T, \chi),$$

where  $\rho$  runs over the nontrivial zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$  counted with multiplicity and ordered with respect to the size of the ordinate, the ' in the sum indicates that we are excluding the terms corresponding to real zeros, the term corresponding to a Siegel zero  $\beta_1$  is present only if  $L(s, \chi)$  admits a Siegel zero, and

$$R(x, T, \chi) \ll \frac{x \log^2(xmT)}{T} + x^{1-\beta_1} \log(x) + \log(x) \min \left( 1, \frac{x}{T \langle x \rangle} \right),$$

where  $\langle x \rangle$  is the distance between  $x$  and the nearest prime power other than  $x$  if  $x$  itself is a prime power and again the term corresponding to a Siegel zero  $\beta_1$  is present only if  $L(s, \chi)$  admits a Siegel zero. Moreover, if  $x$  is an integer, we have the simplified estimate

$$R(x, T, \chi) \ll \frac{x \log^2(xmT)}{T} + x^{1-\beta_1} \log(x).$$

*Proof.* We first reduced to the case that  $\chi$  is primitive. Let  $\tilde{\chi}$  be the primitive character inducing  $\chi$  and denote its conductor by  $q$ . We estimate

$$\begin{aligned}
|\psi_0(x, \chi) - \psi_0(x, \tilde{\chi})| &\leq \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ (n, m) > 1}} \Lambda(n) \\
&= \sum_{p|m} \sum_{\substack{v \geq 1 \\ p^v \leq x}} \log(p) \\
&\ll \log(x) \sum_{p|m} \log(p) \\
&\ll \log(x) \log(m) \\
&\ll \log^2(xm),
\end{aligned} \tag{10.32}$$

where the third line holds because  $p^v \leq x$  implies  $v \leq \frac{\log(x)}{\log(p)}$  so that there are  $O(\log(x))$  many terms in the inner sum and in the last line we have used the simple estimates  $\log(x) \ll \log(xm)$  and  $\log(m) \ll \log(xm)$ . Therefore the difference between  $\psi_0(x, \chi)$  and  $\psi_0(x, \tilde{\chi})$  is  $O(\log^2(xm))$ . Now for  $2 \leq T \leq x$ , we have  $\log^2(xm) \ll \frac{x \log^2(xmT)}{T}$ , which implies that the difference is absorbed by  $\frac{x \log^2(xmT)}{T}$  which is the first term in the error for  $R(x, T, \chi)$ . As  $R(x, T, \tilde{\chi}) \ll R(x, T, \chi)$  because  $q \leq m$ , and there are finitely many nontrivial zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$  that are not nontrivial zeros of  $L(s, \tilde{\chi})$  (all occurring on the line  $\sigma = 0$ ), it suffices to assume that  $\chi$  is primitive. The claim will follow from estimating terms in Equations (10.30) and (10.31). We will estimate the constant  $b(\chi)$  first. The explicit formula for  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  at  $s = 2$  implies

$$0 = -\frac{L'}{L}(2, \chi) + B(\chi) - \frac{1}{2} \log\left(\frac{q}{\pi}\right) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{2+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) + \sum_{\rho} \left(\frac{1}{2-\rho} + \frac{1}{\rho}\right). \tag{10.33}$$

Subtracting Equation (10.33) from the explicit formula for  $\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi)$  gives

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) = \frac{L'}{L}(2, \chi) + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{2+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) + \sum_{\rho} \left(\frac{1}{s-\rho} - \frac{1}{2-\rho}\right).$$

As the first two terms are constant, we obtain a weaker estimate

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) = -\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) + \sum_{\rho} \left(\frac{1}{s-\rho} - \frac{1}{2-\rho}\right) + O(1).$$

If  $\chi$  is odd, we set  $s = 0$  since  $\frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right)$  does not have a pole there. If  $\chi$  is even, we compare constant terms in the Laurent series using the Laurent series

$$\frac{L'}{L}(s, \chi) = \frac{1}{s} + b(\chi) + \cdots \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{2} \frac{\Gamma'}{\Gamma}\left(\frac{s+\mathfrak{a}}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{s} + b + \cdots,$$

for some constant  $b$ . In either case, we arrive at

$$b(\chi) = -\sum_{\rho} \left(\frac{1}{\rho} + \frac{1}{2-\rho}\right) + O(1). \tag{10.34}$$

Let  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$ . For all the terms with  $|\gamma| > 1$ , we estimate

$$\sum_{|\gamma| > 1} \left(\frac{1}{\rho} + \frac{1}{2-\rho}\right) \leq \sum_{|\gamma| > 1} \left|\frac{1}{\rho} + \frac{1}{2-\rho}\right| = \sum_{|\gamma| > 1} \frac{2}{|\rho(2-\rho)|} \ll \sum_{|\gamma| > 1} \frac{1}{|2-\rho|^2} \ll \log(q), \tag{10.35}$$

where the second to last estimate holds because  $|\rho| \gg |2 - \rho|$  as  $\beta$  is bounded and the last estimate holds by Lemma 9.3.2 (ii) since  $|2 - \rho| \geq |\gamma|$ . For the terms corresponding to  $2 - \rho$  with  $|\gamma| \leq 1$ , we have

$$\sum_{|\gamma| \leq 1} \frac{1}{2 - \rho} \leq \sum_{|\gamma| \leq 1} \frac{1}{|2 - \rho|} \ll \sum_{|\gamma| \leq 1} \frac{1}{|2 - \rho|^2} \ll \log(q), \quad (10.36)$$

where the second to last estimate holds because  $|2 - \rho| \gg |2 - \rho|^2$  as  $\rho$  is bounded (because both  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  are) and the last estimate holds by Lemma 9.3.2 (i). Combining Equations (10.34) to (10.36) yields

$$b(\chi) = - \sum_{|\gamma| \leq 1} \frac{1}{\rho} + O(\log(q)). \quad (10.37)$$

Inserting Equation (10.37) into Equations (10.30) and (10.31) and noting that  $\tanh^{-1}(x^{-1})$  and  $\frac{1}{2} \log(1 - x^{-2})$  are both bounded for  $x \geq 2$  gives

$$\psi_0(x, \chi) = - \sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} + \sum_{|\gamma| \leq 1} \frac{1}{\rho} + R'(x, T, \chi), \quad (10.38)$$

where

$$R'(x, T, \chi) \ll \frac{x \log^2(xqT)}{T} + \log(x) \min \left( 1, \frac{x}{T \langle x \rangle} \right),$$

and we have absorbed the error in Equation (10.37) into  $\frac{x \log^2(xqT)}{T}$  because  $2 \leq T \leq x$ . By the classical zero-free region for  $L(s, \tilde{\chi})$ , all of the zeros  $\rho$  with  $|\gamma| < T$  (we have assume  $T \geq 2$  so that this includes the zeros with  $|\gamma| \leq 1$ ) satisfy  $\beta \ll 1 - \frac{1}{\log(qT)}$  except for possibly a single real Siegel zero  $\beta_1$  if  $\chi$  is quadratic. Since  $\bar{\rho}$  is a zero if  $\rho$  is, there will be another real zero  $1 - \beta_1$ . Extracting the terms corresponding to these two zeros in Equation (10.38), gives

$$\psi_0(x, \chi) = - \sum'_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} + \sum'_{|\gamma| \leq 1} \frac{1}{\rho} - \frac{x^{\beta_1} - 1}{\beta_1} - \frac{x^{1-\beta_1} - 1}{1 - \beta_1} + R(x, T, \chi), \quad (10.39)$$

where the  $'$  on the sums indicates that we are excluding the terms corresponding to real zeros and the terms corresponding to  $\beta_1$  and  $1 - \beta_1$  are present if and only if  $L(s, \chi)$  admits a Siegel zero. We now estimate some of the terms in Equation (10.39). For the second sum, we have  $\rho \gg \frac{1}{\log(q)}$  since  $\gamma$  is bounded and these zeros satisfy  $\beta \ll 1 - \frac{1}{\log(q)}$ . Thus

$$\sum'_{|\gamma| \leq 1} \frac{1}{\rho} \ll \sum'_{|\gamma| \leq 1} \log(q) \ll \log^2(q), \quad (10.40)$$

where the last estimate holds by Lemma 9.3.2 (i). Similarly,

$$\frac{x^{1-\beta_1} - 1}{1 - \beta_1} \ll x^{1-\beta_1} \log(x), \quad (10.41)$$

because  $1 - \beta_1 \gg \frac{1}{\log(q)} \gg \frac{1}{\log(x)}$ . Substituting Equations (10.40) and (10.41) into Equation (10.39) and noting that  $\beta_1$  is bounded, yields

$$\psi_0(x, \chi) = - \frac{x^{\beta_1}}{\beta_1} - \sum'_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} + R(x, T, \chi), \quad (10.42)$$

where

$$R(x, T, \chi) \ll \frac{x \log^2(xqT)}{T} + x^{1-\beta_1} \log(x) + \log(x) \min \left( 1, \frac{x}{T \langle x \rangle} \right)$$

and we have absorbed the error in Equation (10.40) into  $\frac{x \log^2(xqT)}{T}$  because because  $2 \leq T \leq x$ . If  $x$  is an integer, then  $\langle x \rangle \geq 1$  so that  $\log(x) \min \left( 1, \frac{x}{T \langle x \rangle} \right) \leq \frac{x \log(x)}{T}$  and this term can be absorbed by  $\frac{x \log^2(xqT)}{T}$ .  $\square$

## 10.2 Prime Number Theorems

### The Prime Number Theorem

The **prime counting function**  $\pi(x)$  is defined by

$$\pi(x) = \sum_{p \leq x} 1,$$

for  $x > 0$ . Equivalently,  $\pi(x)$  counts the number of primes that no larger than  $x$ . Euclid's infinitude of the primes is equivalent to  $\pi(x) \rightarrow \infty$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ . A more interesting question is to ask how the primes are distributed among the integers. The classical **prime number theorem** answers this question and the precise statement is the following:

**Theorem 10.2.1 (Prime number theorem, classical version).** *For  $x \geq 2$ ,*

$$\pi(x) \sim \frac{x}{\log(x)}.$$

We will delay the proof for the moment and give some intuition and historical context to the result. Intuitively, the prime number theorem is a result about how dense the primes are in the integers. To see this, notice that the result is equivalent to the asymptotic

$$\frac{\pi(x)}{x} \sim \frac{1}{\log(x)}.$$

Letting  $x \geq 2$ , the left-hand side is the probability that a randomly chosen positive integer no larger than  $x$  is prime. Thus the asymptotic result says that for large enough  $x$ , the probability that a randomly chosen integer no larger than  $x$  is prime is approximately  $\frac{1}{\log(x)}$ . We can also interpret this as saying that the average gap between primes no larger than  $x$  is approximately  $\frac{1}{\log(x)}$ . As a consequence, a positive integer with at most  $2n$  digits is about half as likely to be prime than a positive integer with at most  $n$  digits. Indeed, there are  $10^n - 1$  numbers with at most  $n$  digits,  $10^{2n} - 1$  with at most  $2n$  digits, and  $\log(10^{2n} - 1)$  is approximately  $2 \log(10^n)$ . Note that the prime number theorem says nothing about the exact error  $\pi(x) - \frac{x}{\log(x)}$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ . The theorem only says that the relative error tends to zero:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\pi(x) - \frac{x}{\log(x)}}{\frac{x}{\log(x)}} = 0.$$

Now for some historical context. While Gauss was not the first to put forth a conjectural form of the prime number theorem, he was known for compiling extensive tables of primes and he suspected that the density

of the primes up to  $x$  was roughly  $\frac{1}{\log(x)}$ . How might one suspect this is the correct density? Well, let  $d\delta_p$  be the weighted point measure that assigns  $\frac{1}{p}$  at the prime  $p$  and zero everywhere else. Then

$$\sum_{p \leq x} \frac{1}{p} = \int_1^x d\delta_p(u).$$

We can interpret the integral as integrating the density  $d\delta_p$  over the volume  $[1, x]$ . Let's try and find a more explicit expression for the density  $d\delta_p$ . Euler (see [Eul44]), argued

$$\sum_{p \leq x} \frac{1}{p} \sim \log \log(x).$$

But notice that

$$\log \log(x) = \int_1^{\log(x)} \frac{du}{u} = \int_e^x \frac{1}{u} \frac{du}{\log u},$$

where in the second equality we have made the change of variables  $u \rightarrow \log(u)$ . So altogether,

$$\sum_{p \leq x} \frac{1}{p} \sim \int_e^x \frac{1}{u} \frac{du}{\log u}.$$

This is an asymptotic formula that gives a more explicit representation of the density  $d\delta_p$ . Notice that both sides of this asymptotic are weighted the same, the left-hand side by  $\frac{1}{p}$ , and the right-hand side by  $\frac{1}{u}$ . If we remove these weight (this is not strictly allowed), then we might hope

$$\pi(x) = \sum_{p \leq x} 1 \sim \int_e^x \frac{du}{\log(u)}.$$

Accordingly, we define the **logarithmic integral**  $\text{Li}(x)$  by

$$\text{Li}(x) = \int_2^x \frac{dt}{\log(t)},$$

for  $x \geq 2$ . Notice that  $\text{Li}(x) \sim \frac{x}{\log x}$  because

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{\text{Li}(x)}{\frac{x}{\log x}} \right| = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{\int_2^x \frac{dt}{\log(t)}}{\frac{x}{\log x}} \right| = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{\frac{1}{\log(x)}}{\frac{\log(x)-1}{\log^2(x)}} \right| = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{\log(x)}{\log(x)-1} \right| = 1.$$

where in the second equality we have used L'Hôpital's rule. So an equivalent statement is the logarithmic integral version of the **prime number theorem**:

**Theorem 10.2.2 (Prime number theorem, logarithmic integral version).** *For  $x \geq 2$ ,*

$$\pi(x) \sim \text{Li}(x).$$

Interpreting the logarithmic integral as an integral of density over volume, then for large  $x$  the density of primes up to  $x$  is approximately  $\frac{1}{\log(x)}$  which is what both versions of the prime number theorem claim. Legendre was the first to put forth a conjectural form of the prime number theorem. In 1798 (see [Leg98]) he claimed that  $\pi(x)$  was of the form

$$\frac{x}{A \log(x) + B},$$



for some constants  $A$  and  $B$ . In 1808 (see [Leg08]) he refined his conjecture by claiming

$$\frac{x}{\log(x) + A(x)},$$

where  $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} A(x) \approx 1.08366$ . Riemann's 1859 manuscript (see [Rie59]) contains an outline for how to prove the prime number theorem, but it was not until 1896 that the prime number theorem was proved independently by Hadamard and de la Vallée Poussin (see [Had96] and [Pou97]). Their proofs, as well as every proof thereon out until 1949, used complex analytic methods in an essential way (there are now elementary proofs due to Erdős and Selberg). We are now ready to prove the prime number theorem. Strictly speaking, we will prove the absolute error version of the **prime number theorem**, due to de la Vallée Poussin, which bounds the absolute error between  $\pi(x)$  and  $\text{Li}(x)$ :

**Theorem 10.2.3 (Prime number theorem, absolute error version).** *For  $x \geq 2$ , there exists a positive constant  $c$  such that*

$$\pi(x) = \text{Li}(x) + O\left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}\right).$$

*Proof.* It suffices to assume  $x$  is an integer, because  $\pi(x)$  can only change value at integers and the other functions in the statement are increasing. We will first prove

$$\psi(x) = x + O\left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}\right), \quad (10.43)$$

for some positive constant  $c$ . To achieve this, we estimate the sum over the nontrivial zeros of  $\zeta(s)$  in Corollary 10.1.1. So let  $T > 2$  not coinciding with the ordinate of a nontrivial zero, and suppose  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  is a nontrivial zero with  $|\gamma| < T$ . By the classical version of the zero-free region for  $\zeta(s)$ , we know  $\beta < 1 - \frac{c}{\log(T)}$  for some positive constant  $c$ . It follows that

$$|x^\rho| = x^\beta < x^{1 - \frac{c}{\log(T)}} = xe^{-c\frac{\log(x)}{\log(T)}}. \quad (10.44)$$

As  $|\rho| > |\gamma|$ , letting  $\gamma_1 > 0$  (which is bounded away from zero since the zeros of  $\zeta(s)$  are discrete and we know that there is no real nontrivial zero) be the ordinate of the first nontrivial zero, applying integration by parts gives

$$\sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{1}{\rho} \ll \sum_{\gamma_1 \leq |\gamma| < T} \frac{1}{\gamma} \ll \int_{\gamma_1}^T \frac{dN(t)}{t} = \frac{N(T)}{T} + \int_{\gamma_1}^T \frac{N(t)}{t^2} dt \ll \log^2(T), \quad (10.45)$$

where in the last estimate we have used that  $N(t) \ll t \log(t)$  which follows from Corollary 9.3.2. Putting Equations (10.44) and (10.45) together gives

$$\sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} \ll x \log^2(T) e^{-c\frac{\log(x)}{\log(T)}}. \quad (10.46)$$

As  $\psi(x) \sim \psi_0(x)$  and  $x$  is an integer, Equation (10.46) with Corollary 10.1.1 together imply

$$\psi(x) - x \ll x \log^2(T) e^{-c\frac{\log(x)}{\log(T)}} + \frac{x \log^2(xT)}{T}. \quad (10.47)$$

We will now let  $T$  be determined by

$$\log^2(T) = \log(x),$$

or equivalently,

$$T = e^{\sqrt{\log(x)}}.$$

With this choice of  $T$  (note that if  $x \geq 2$  then  $T > 2$ ), we can estimate Equation (10.47) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(x) - x &\ll x \log(x) e^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}} + x (\log^2(x) + \log(x)) e^{-\sqrt{\log(x)}} \\ &\ll x \log(x) e^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}} + x \log^2(x) e^{-\sqrt{\log(x)}} \\ &\ll x \log^2(x) e^{-\min(1,c)\sqrt{\log(x)}}. \end{aligned}$$

As  $\log(x) \ll_{\varepsilon} e^{-\varepsilon\sqrt{\log(x)}}$ , we conclude that

$$\psi(x) - x \ll x e^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}},$$

for some smaller  $c$  with  $c < 1$ . This is equivalent to Equation (10.43). Now let

$$\pi_1(x) = \sum_{n \leq x} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{\log(n)}.$$

We can write  $\pi_1(x)$  in terms of  $\psi(x)$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \pi_1(x) &= \sum_{n \leq x} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{\log(n)} \\ &= \sum_{n \leq x} \Lambda(n) \int_n^x \frac{dt}{t \log^2(t)} + \frac{1}{\log(x)} \sum_{n \leq x} \Lambda(n) \\ &= \int_2^x \sum_{n \leq t} \Lambda(n) \frac{dt}{t \log^2(t)} + \frac{1}{\log(x)} \sum_{n \leq x} \Lambda(n) \\ &= \int_2^x \frac{\psi(t)}{t \log^2(t)} dt + \frac{\psi(x)}{\log(x)}. \end{aligned}$$

Applying Equation (10.43) to the last expression yields

$$\pi_1(x) = \int_2^x \frac{t}{t \log^2(t)} dt + \frac{x}{\log(x)} + O\left(\int_2^x \frac{e^{-c\sqrt{\log(t)}}}{\log^2(t)} dt + \frac{x e^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}}{\log(x)}\right). \quad (10.48)$$

Upon applying integrating by parts to the main term in Equation (10.48), we obtain

$$\int_2^x \frac{t}{t \log^2(t)} dt + \frac{x}{\log(x)} = \int_2^x \frac{dt}{\log(t)} + \frac{2}{\log(2)} = \text{Li}(x) + \frac{2}{\log(2)}. \quad (10.49)$$

As for the error term in Equation (10.48),  $\log^2(t)$  and  $\log(x)$  are both bounded away from zero so that

$$\int_2^x \frac{e^{-c\sqrt{\log(t)}}}{\log^2(t)} dt + \frac{x e^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}}{\log(x)} \ll \int_2^x e^{-c\sqrt{\log(t)}} dt + x e^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}.$$

For  $t \leq x^{\frac{1}{4}}$ , we use the bound  $e^{-c\sqrt{\log(t)}} < 1$  so that

$$\int_2^{x^{\frac{1}{4}}} e^{-c\sqrt{\log(t)}} dt < \int_2^{x^{\frac{1}{4}}} dt \ll x^{\frac{1}{4}}.$$

For  $t > x^{\frac{1}{4}}$ ,  $\sqrt{\log(t)} > \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\log(x)}$  and thus

$$\int_2^{x^{\frac{1}{4}}} e^{-c\sqrt{\log(t)}} dt \leq e^{-c\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\log(x)}} \int_2^{x^{\frac{1}{4}}} dt \ll x^{\frac{1}{4}} e^{-c\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\log(x)}}.$$

All of these estimates together imply

$$\int_2^x \frac{e^{-c\sqrt{\log(t)}}}{\log^2(t)} dt + \frac{xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}}{\log(x)} \ll xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}, \quad (10.50)$$

for some smaller  $c$ . Combining Equations (10.48) to (10.50) yields

$$\pi_1(x) = \text{Li}(x) + O\left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}\right), \quad (10.51)$$

where the constant in Equation (10.49) has been absorbed into the error term. We now pass from  $\pi_1(x)$  to  $\pi(x)$ . If  $p$  is a prime such that  $p^m < x$  for some  $m \geq 1$ , then  $p < x^{\frac{1}{2}} < x^{\frac{1}{3}} < \dots < x^{\frac{1}{m}}$ . Therefore

$$\pi_1(x) = \sum_{n \leq x} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{\log(n)} = \sum_{p^m \leq x} \frac{\log(p)}{m \log(p)} = \pi(x) + \frac{1}{2}\pi(x^{\frac{1}{2}}) + \dots. \quad (10.52)$$

Moreover, as  $\pi(x^{\frac{1}{n}}) < x^{\frac{1}{n}}$  for any  $n \geq 1$ , we see that  $\pi(x) - \pi_1(x) = O(x^{\frac{1}{2}})$ . This estimate together with Equations (10.51) and (10.52) gives

$$\pi(x) = \text{Li}(x) + O\left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}\right),$$

because  $x^{\frac{1}{2}} \ll xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}$ . This completes the proof.  $\square$

The proof of the logarithmic integral and classical versions of the prime number theorem are immediate:

*Proof of prime number theorem, logarithmic integral and classical versions.* By the absolute error version of the prime number theorem,

$$\pi(x) = \text{Li}(x) \left(1 + O\left(\frac{xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}}{\text{Li}(x)}\right)\right).$$

But we have shown  $\text{Li}(x) \sim \frac{x}{\log(x)}$  so that

$$\frac{xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}}{\text{Li}(x)} \sim \log(x)e^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}} = o(1),$$

where the equality holds since  $\log(x) \ll_{\varepsilon} e^{-\varepsilon\sqrt{\log(x)}}$ . The logarithm integral version follows. The classical version also holds using the asymptotic  $\text{Li}(x) \sim \frac{x}{\log(x)}$ .  $\square$

In the proof of the logarithmic integral and classical versions of the prime number theorem, we saw that  $xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}} < \frac{x}{\log(x)}$  for sufficiently large  $x$ . Therefore the exact error  $\pi(x) - \text{Li}(x)$  grows slower than  $\pi(x) - \frac{x}{\log(x)}$  for sufficiently large  $x$ . This means that  $\text{Li}(x)$  is a better numerical approximation to  $\pi(x)$  than  $\frac{x}{\log(x)}$ . There is also the following result due to Hardy and Littlewood (see [HL16]) which gives us more information:

**Proposition 10.2.1.**  $\pi(x) - \text{Li}(x)$  changes sign infinitely often as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ .

So in addition, Proposition 10.2.1 implies that  $\text{Li}(x)$  never underestimates or overestimates  $\pi(x)$  continuously. On the other hand, the exact error  $\pi(x) - \frac{x}{\log(x)}$  is positive provided  $x \geq 17$  (see [RS62]). It is also worthwhile to note that in 1901 Koch showed that the Riemann hypothesis improves the error term in the absolute error version of the prime number theorem (see [Koc01]):

**Proposition 10.2.2.** For  $x \geq 2$ , under the Riemann hypothesis

$$\pi(x) = \text{Li}(x) + O(\sqrt{x} \log(x)).$$

*Proof.* If  $\rho$  is a nontrivial zero of  $\zeta(s)$ , the Riemann hypothesis implies  $|x^\rho| = \sqrt{x}$ . Therefore as in the proof of the absolute error version of the prime number theorem,

$$\sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} \ll \sqrt{x} \log^2(T),$$

for  $T > 2$  not coinciding with the ordinate of a nontrivial zero. Repeating the same argument with  $T$  determined by

$$T^2 = x,$$

gives

$$\psi(x) = x + O(\sqrt{x} \log^2(x)),$$

and then transferring to  $\pi_1(x)$  and finally  $\pi(x)$  gives

$$\pi(x) = x + O(\sqrt{x} \log(x)).$$

□

## The Siegel–Walfisz Theorem

Let  $a$  and  $m$  be positive integers with  $m > 1$  and  $(a, m) = 1$ . The **prime counting function**  $\pi(x; a, m)$  is defined by

$$\pi(x; a, m) = \sum_{\substack{p \leq x \\ p \equiv a \pmod{m}}} 1,$$

for  $x > 0$ . Equivalently,  $\pi(x; a, m)$  counts the number of primes that no larger than  $x$  and are equivalent to  $a$  modulo  $m$ . This is the analog of  $\pi(x)$  that is naturally associated to Dirichlet characters modulo  $m$ . Accordingly, there are asymptotics for  $\pi(x; a, m)$  analogous to those for  $\pi(x)$ . To prove them, we will require an auxiliary function. The **Chebyshev function**  $\psi(x; a, m)$ , for  $x \geq 1$ , is defined by

$$\psi(x; a, m) = \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ n \equiv a \pmod{m}}} \Lambda(n).$$

This is just  $\psi(x)$  restricted to only those terms equivalent to  $a$  modulo  $m$ . As for the asymptotics, the classical **Siegel–Walfisz theorem** is the first of them and the precise statement is the following:

**Theorem 10.2.4 (Siegel–Walfisz theorem, classical version).** Let  $a$  and  $m$  be positive integers with  $m > 1$ ,  $(a, m) = 1$ , and let  $N \geq 1$ . For  $x \geq 2$ ,

$$\pi(x; a, m) \sim \frac{x}{\varphi(m) \log(x)},$$

provided  $m \leq \log^N(x)$ .

The logarithmic integral version of the **Siegel–Walfisz theorem** is equivalent and sometimes more useful:

**Theorem 10.2.5 (Siegel–Walfisz theorem, logarithmic integral version).** *Let  $a$  and  $m$  be positive integers with  $m > 1$ ,  $(a, m) = 1$ , and let  $N \geq 1$ . For  $x \geq 2$ ,*

$$\pi(x; a, m) \sim \frac{\text{Li}(x)}{\varphi(m)},$$

*provided  $m \leq \log^N(x)$ .*

We will prove the absolute error version of the **Siegel–Walfisz theorem** which is slightly stronger as it bounds the absolute error between  $\pi(x; a, m)$  and  $\frac{\text{Li}(x)}{\varphi(m)}$ :

**Theorem 10.2.6 (Siegel–Walfisz theorem, absolute error version).** *Let  $a$  and  $m$  be positive integers with  $m > 1$ ,  $(a, m) = 1$ , and let  $N \geq 1$ . For  $x \geq 2$ , there exists a positive constant  $c$  such that*

$$\pi(x; a, m) = \frac{\text{Li}(x)}{\varphi(m)} + O\left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}\right),$$

*provided  $m \leq \log^N(x)$ .*

*Proof.* It suffices to assume  $x$  is an integer, because  $\pi(x; a, m)$  can only change value at integers and the other functions in the statement are increasing. We begin with the identity

$$\psi(x; a, m) = \frac{1}{\varphi(m)} \sum_{\chi \pmod{m}} \bar{\chi}(a) \psi(x, \chi), \quad (10.53)$$

which holds by the orthogonality relations (Proposition 1.3.1 (ii)). Let  $\tilde{\chi}$  be the primitive character inducing  $\chi$ . Then Equation (10.32) implies

$$\psi(x, \chi) = \psi(x, \tilde{\chi}) + O(\log^2(xm)). \quad (10.54)$$

When  $\chi = \chi_{m,0}$  we have  $\psi(x, \tilde{\chi}) = \psi(x)$ , and as  $\psi(x, \chi) \sim \psi_0(x, \chi)$ , substituting Equation (10.43) into Equation (10.54) gives

$$\psi(x, \chi_{m,0}) = \psi(x) + O\left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}} + \log^2(xm)\right), \quad (10.55)$$

for some positive constant  $c$ . Upon combining Equations (10.53) and (10.55), we obtain

$$\psi(x; a, m) = \frac{x}{\varphi(m)} + \frac{1}{\varphi(m)} \sum_{\substack{\chi \pmod{m} \\ \chi \neq \chi_{m,0}}} \bar{\chi}(a) \psi(x, \chi) + O\left(\frac{1}{\varphi(m)} \left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}} + \log^2(xm)\right)\right). \quad (10.56)$$

We now prove

$$\psi(x, \chi) = -\frac{x^{\beta_1}}{\beta_1} + O\left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}\right), \quad (10.57)$$

for some potentially different constant  $c$ , where  $\chi \neq \chi_{m,0}$ , and the term corresponding to  $\beta_1$  appears if and only if  $L(s, \chi)$  admits a Siegel zero. To accomplish this, we estimate the sum over the nontrivial zeros of  $L(s, \chi)$  in Corollary 10.1.2. So fix a non-principal  $\chi$  modulo  $m$  and let  $\tilde{\chi}$  be the primitive character inducing  $\chi$ . Let  $2 \leq T \leq x$  not coinciding with the ordinate of a nontrivial zero and let  $\rho = \beta + i\gamma$  be a nontrivial zero of  $L(s, \chi)$  with  $|\gamma| < T$  and not a real zero. By the classical zero-free region for  $L(s, \tilde{\chi})$ , all

of the zeros  $\rho$  satisfy  $\beta < 1 - \frac{c}{\log(mT)}$  for some possibly different constant  $c$  (recall that the zeros of  $L(s, \tilde{\chi})$  and  $L(s, \chi)$  are the same). It follows that

$$|x^\rho| = x^\beta < x^{1 - \frac{c}{\log(mT)}} = xe^{-c \frac{\log(x)}{\log(mT)}}. \quad (10.58)$$

As  $|\rho| > |\gamma|$ , for those terms with  $|\gamma| > 1$  (unlike the Riemann zeta function we do not have a positive lower bound for the first ordinate  $\gamma_1$  of a nontrivial zero that is not real since Siegel zeros may exist), applying integration by parts gives

$$\sum_{1 < |\gamma| < T} \frac{1}{\rho} \ll \sum_{1 < |\gamma| < T} \frac{1}{\gamma} \ll \int_1^T \frac{dN(t, \tilde{\chi})}{t} = \frac{N(T, \tilde{\chi})}{T} + \int_1^T \frac{N(t, \tilde{\chi})}{t^2} dt \ll \log^2(mT) \ll \log^2(xm), \quad (10.59)$$

where in the second to last estimate we have used that  $N(t, \tilde{\chi}) \ll t \log(qt) \ll t \log(mt)$  which follows from Corollary 9.3.4 and that  $q \leq m$  and in the last estimate we have used that  $T \leq x$ . For the remaining terms with  $|\gamma| \leq 1$  (that are not real), Equation (10.40) along with  $q \leq m$  gives

$$\sum_{|\gamma| \leq 1} \frac{1}{\rho} \ll \log^2(m). \quad (10.60)$$

Combining Equations (10.57) to (10.60) yields

$$\sum'_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} \ll x \log^2(xm) e^{-c \frac{\log(x)}{\log(mT)}}, \quad (10.61)$$

where the ' in the sum indicates that we are excluding the terms corresponding to real zeros and the error in Equation (10.60) has been absorbed by that in Equation (10.59). As  $\psi(x, \chi) \sim \psi_0(x, \chi)$  and  $x$  is an integer, inserting Equation (10.61) into Corollary 10.1.2 results in

$$\psi(x, \chi) + \frac{x^{\beta_1}}{\beta_1} \ll x \log^2(xm) e^{-c \frac{\log(x)}{\log(mT)}} + \frac{x \log^2(xmT)}{T} + x^{1-\beta_1} \log(x), \quad (10.62)$$

where the terms corresponding to real zeros are present if and only if  $L(s, \chi)$  admits a Siegel zero. We now let  $T$  be determined by  $T = x$  for  $2 \leq x < 3$  and

$$\log^2(T) = \log(x),$$

or equivalently,

$$T = e^{\sqrt{\log(x)}},$$

for  $x \geq 3$ . With this choice of  $T$  (note that if  $x \geq 2$  then  $2 \leq T \leq x$ ) and that  $m \ll \log^N(x)$ , we can estimate Equation (10.62) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(x) + \frac{x^{\beta_1}}{x} &\ll x(\log^2(x) + \log^2(m)) e^{-c \frac{\log(x)}{\log(m) + \sqrt{\log(x)}}} + x(\log^2(x) + \log^2(m) + \log(x)) e^{-\sqrt{\log(x)}} + x^{1-\beta_1} \log(x) \\ &\ll x(\log^2(x) + \log^2(m)) e^{-c \frac{\log(x)}{\log(m) + \sqrt{\log(x)}}} + x(\log^2(x) + \log^2(m) + \log(x)) e^{-\sqrt{\log(x)}} + x^{1-\beta_1} \log(x) \\ &\ll x(\log^2(x) + \log^2(m)) e^{-c \sqrt{\log(x)}} + x(\log^2(x) + \log^2(m)) e^{-\sqrt{\log(x)}} + x^{1-\beta_1} \log(x) \\ &\ll x \log^2(x) e^{-c \sqrt{\log(x)}} + x \log^2(x) e^{-\sqrt{\log(x)}} + x^{1-\beta_1} \log(x) \\ &\ll x \log^2(x) e^{-\min(1, c) \frac{\sqrt{\log(x)}}{\log(m)}}, \end{aligned}$$

where in the last estimate we have used that  $x^{1-\beta_1} \leq x^{\frac{1}{2}}$  because  $\beta_1 \geq \frac{1}{2}$ . As  $\log(x) \ll_\varepsilon e^{-\varepsilon\sqrt{\log(x)}}$ , we conclude that

$$\psi(x) + \frac{x^{\beta_1}}{x} \ll xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}},$$

for some smaller  $c$  with  $c < 1$ . This is equivalent to Equation (10.57). Substituting Equation (10.57) into Equation (10.56) and noting that there is at most one Siegel zero for characters modulo  $m$  by Proposition 9.2.2, we arrive at

$$\psi(x; a, m) = \frac{x}{\varphi(m)} - \frac{\bar{\chi}_1(a)x^{\beta_1}}{\varphi(m)\beta_1} + O\left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}\right), \quad (10.63)$$

where  $\chi_1$  is the single quadratic character modulo  $m$  such that  $L(s, \chi_1)$  admits a Siegel zero if it exists and we have absorbed the second term in the error in Equation (10.56) into the first since  $\log(x) \ll_\varepsilon e^{-\varepsilon\sqrt{\log(x)}}$  and  $m \ll \log^N(x)$ . Taking  $\varepsilon = \frac{1}{2N}$  in the zero-free region version of Siegel's theorem,  $m^{\frac{1}{2N}} \ll \sqrt{\log(x)}$  so that  $\beta_1 < 1 - \frac{c}{\sqrt{\log(x)}}$  for some potentially smaller constant  $c$ . It follows that  $m^{2N}$ . Therefore

$$x^{\beta_1} < x^{1 - \frac{c}{\sqrt{\log(x)}}} = xe^{-c\log(x)}. \quad (10.64)$$

Combining Equations (10.63) and (10.64) gives the simplified estimate

$$\psi(x; a, m) = \frac{x}{\varphi(m)} + O\left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}\right), \quad (10.65)$$

for some potentially smaller constant  $c$ . Now let

$$\pi_1(x; a, m) = \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ n \equiv a \pmod{m}}} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{\log(n)}.$$

We can write  $\pi_1(x; a, m)$  in terms of  $\psi(x; a, m)$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \pi_1(x; a, m) &= \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ n \equiv a \pmod{m}}} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{\log(n)} \\ &= \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ n \equiv a \pmod{m}}} \Lambda(n) \int_n^x \frac{dt}{t \log^2(t)} + \frac{1}{\log(x)} \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ n \equiv a \pmod{m}}} \Lambda(n) \\ &= \int_2^x \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ n \equiv a \pmod{m}}} \Lambda(n) \frac{dt}{t \log^2(t)} + \frac{1}{\log(x)} \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ n \equiv a \pmod{m}}} \Lambda(n) \\ &= \int_2^x \frac{\psi(t; a, m)}{t \log^2(t)} dt + \frac{\psi(x; a, m)}{\log(x)}. \end{aligned}$$

Applying Equation (10.65) to the last expression yields

$$\pi_1(x; a, m) = \int_2^x \frac{t}{\varphi(m)t \log^2(t)} dt + \frac{x}{\varphi(m)\log(x)} + O\left(\int_2^x \frac{e^{-c\sqrt{\log(t)}}}{\log^2(t)} dt + \frac{xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}}{\log(x)}\right), \quad (10.66)$$

Applying integrating by parts to the main term in Equation (10.66), we obtain

$$\int_2^x \frac{t}{\varphi(m)t \log^2(t)} dt + \frac{x}{\varphi(m) \log(x)} = \int_2^x \frac{dt}{\varphi(m) \log(t)} + \frac{2}{\varphi(m) \log(2)} = \frac{\text{Li}(x)}{\varphi(m)} + \frac{2}{\varphi(m) \log(2)}. \quad (10.67)$$

As for the error term in Equation (10.66), we use Equation (10.50). Combining Equations (10.50), (10.66) and (10.67) yields

$$\pi_1(x; a, m) = \frac{\text{Li}(x)}{\varphi(m)} + O\left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}\right), \quad (10.68)$$

for some smaller  $c$  and where the constant in Equation (10.67) has been absorbed into the error term. As last we pass from  $\pi_1(x; a, m)$  to  $\pi(x; a, m)$ . If  $p$  is a prime such that  $p^m < x$  for some  $m \geq 1$ , then  $p < x^{\frac{1}{2}} < x^{\frac{1}{3}} < \dots < x^{\frac{1}{m}}$ . Therefore

$$\pi_1(x; a, m) = \sum_{\substack{n \leq x \\ n \equiv a \pmod{m}}} \frac{\Lambda(n)}{\log(n)} = \sum_{\substack{p^m \leq x \\ p^m \equiv a \pmod{m}}} \frac{\log(p)}{m \log(p)} = \pi(x; a, m) + \frac{1}{2}\pi(x^{\frac{1}{2}}; a, m) + \dots \quad (10.69)$$

Moreover, as  $\pi(x^{\frac{1}{n}}; a, m) < x^{\frac{1}{n}}$  for any  $n \geq 1$ , we see that  $\pi(x; a, m) - \pi_1(x; a, m) = O(x^{\frac{1}{2}})$ . This estimate together with Equations (10.68) and (10.69) gives

$$\pi(x) = \frac{\text{Li}(x)}{\varphi(m)} + O\left(xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}\right),$$

because  $x^{\frac{1}{2}} \ll xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}$ . This completes the proof.  $\square$

It is interesting to note that the constant  $c$  in the Siegel-Walfisz theorem is ineffective because of the use of Siegel's theorem (it also depends upon  $N$ ). This is unlike the prime number theorem, where the constant  $c$  is effective. The proof of the logarithmic integral and classical versions of the Siegel-Walfisz theorem are immediate:

*Proof of Siegel-Walfisz theorem, logarithmic integral and classical versions.* By the absolute error version of the Siegel-Walfisz theorem,

$$\pi(x; a, m) = \frac{\text{Li}(x)}{\varphi(m)} \left( 1 + O\left( \frac{\varphi(m)xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}}{\text{Li}(x)} \right) \right).$$

As  $\text{Li}(x) \sim \frac{x}{\log(x)}$ , we have

$$\frac{\varphi(m)xe^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}}}{\text{Li}(x)} \sim \varphi(m) \log(x) e^{-c\sqrt{\log(x)}} = o(1),$$

where the equality holds since  $m \ll \log^N(x)$  and  $\log(x) \ll_{\varepsilon} e^{-\varepsilon\sqrt{\log(x)}}$ . The logarithm integral version follows. The classical version also holds using the asymptotic  $\text{Li}(x) \sim \frac{x}{\log(x)}$ .  $\square$

Also, we have an optimal error term, in a much wider range of  $m$ , assuming the Riemann hypothesis for Dirichlet  $L$ -functions:



**Proposition 10.2.3.** *Let  $a$  and  $m$  be positive integers with  $m > 1$ ,  $(a, m) = 1$ , and let  $N \geq 1$ . For  $x \geq 2$ , under the Riemann hypothesis for Dirichlet  $L$ -functions*

$$\pi(x; a, m) = \frac{\text{Li}(x)}{\varphi(m)} + O(\sqrt{x} \log(x)).$$

*provided  $m \leq x$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\chi$  be a Dirichlet character modulo  $m$ . If  $\rho$  is a nontrivial zero of  $L(s, \chi)$ , the Riemann hypothesis for Dirichlet  $L$ -functions implies  $|x^\rho| = \sqrt{x}$  and that Siegel zeros do not exist so we may merely assume  $m \leq x$ . Therefore as in the proof of the absolute error version of the Siegel-Walfisz theorem,

$$\sum_{|\gamma| < T} \frac{x^\rho}{\rho} \ll \sqrt{x} \log^2(x),$$

for  $2 \leq T \leq x$  not coinciding with the ordinate of a nontrivial zero. Repeating the same argument with  $T$  determined by  $T = x$  for  $2 \leq x < 3$  and

$$T^2 = x,$$

for  $x \geq 3$  gives

$$\psi(x; a, m) = \frac{x}{\varphi(m)} + O(\sqrt{x} \log^2(x)),$$

and then transferring to  $\pi_1(x)$  and finally  $\pi(x)$  gives

$$\pi(x; a, m) = \frac{x}{\varphi(m)} + O(\sqrt{x} \log(x)).$$

□

# Part V

## Appendices

# Appendix A

## Number Theory

### A.1 Arithmetic Functions

An arithmetic function  $f(n)$  is a function  $f : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ . That is, it takes the positive integers into the complex numbers. We say that  $f(n)$  is **additive** if  $f(nm) = f(n) + f(m)$  for all positive integers  $n$  and  $m$  such that  $(n, m) = 1$ . If this condition simply holds for all  $n$  and  $m$  then we say  $f(n)$  is **completely additive**. Similarly, we say that  $f(n)$  is **multiplicative** if  $f(nm) = f(n)f(m)$  for all positive integers  $n$  and  $m$  such that  $(n, m) = 1$ . If this condition simply holds for all  $n$  and  $m$  then we say  $f(n)$  is **completely multiplicative**. Many important arithmetic functions are either additive, completely additive, multiplicative, or completely multiplicative. Note that if a  $f(n)$  is additive or multiplicative then  $f(n)$  is uniquely determined by its values on prime powers and if  $f(n)$  is completely additive or completely multiplicative then it is uniquely determined by its values on primes. Moreover, if  $f(n)$  is additive or completely additive then  $f(1) = 0$  and if  $f(n)$  is multiplicative or completely multiplicative then  $f(1) = 1$ .

Below is a list defining the most important arithmetic functions. Some of these functions are restrictions of common functions but we define them here as arithmetic functions because their domain being  $\mathbb{N}$  is important.

- (i) The **constant function**: The function  $\mathbf{1}(n)$  defined by  $\mathbf{1}(n) = 1$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . This function is neither additive or multiplicative.
- (ii) The **unit function**: The function  $e(n)$  defined by

$$e(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n = 1, \\ 0 & \text{if } n \geq 2. \end{cases}$$

This function is completely multiplicative.

- (iii) The **identity function**: The identity function  $\text{id}(n)$  restricted to all  $n \geq 1$ . This function is completely multiplicative.
- (iv) The **logarithm**: The function  $\log(n)$  restricted to all  $n \geq 1$ . This function is completely additive.
- (v) The **Möbius function**: The function  $\mu(n)$  defined by

$$\mu(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n \text{ is square-free with an even number of prime factors,} \\ -1 & \text{if } n \text{ is square-free with an odd number of prime factors,} \\ 0 & \text{if } n \text{ is not square-free,} \end{cases}$$

for all  $n \geq 1$ . This function is multiplicative.

(vi) The **characteristic function of square-free integers**: The square of the Möbius function  $\mu^2(n)$  or  $|\mu(n)|$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . This function is multiplicative.

(vii) **Liouville's function**: The function  $\lambda(n)$  defined by

$$\lambda(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n = 1, \\ (-1)^k & \text{if } n \text{ is composed of } k \text{ not necessarily distinct prime factors,} \end{cases}$$

for all  $n \geq 1$ . This function is completely multiplicative.

(viii) **Euler's totient function**: The function  $\varphi(n)$  defined by

$$\varphi(n) = \sum'_{m \pmod n} 1,$$

for all  $n \geq 1$ . This function is multiplicative.

(ix) The **divisor function**: The function  $\sigma_0(n)$  defined by

$$\sigma_0(n) = \sum_{d|n} 1,$$

for all  $n \geq 1$ . This function is multiplicative.

(x) The **sum of divisors function**: The function  $\sigma_1(n)$  defined by

$$\sigma_1(n) = \sum_{d|n} d,$$

for all  $n \geq 1$ . This function is multiplicative.

(xi) The **generalized sum of divisors function**: The function  $\sigma_s(n)$  defined by

$$\sigma_s(n) = \sum_{d|n} d^s,$$

for all  $n \geq 1$  and any complex number  $s$ . This function is multiplicative.

(xii) The **number of distinct prime factors function**: The function  $\omega(n)$  defined by

$$\omega(n) = \sum_{p|n} 1,$$

for all  $n \geq 1$ . This function is additive.

(xiii) The **total number of prime divisors function**: The function  $\Omega(n)$  defined by

$$\Omega(n) = \sum_{p^m|n} 1,$$

for all  $n \geq 1$  and where  $m \geq 1$ . This function is completely additive.

(xiv) The **von Mangoldt function**: The function  $\Lambda(n)$  defined by

$$\Lambda(n) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } n \text{ is not a prime power,} \\ \log(p) & \text{if } n = p^m \text{ for some prime } p \text{ and integer } m \geq 1, \end{cases}$$

for all  $n \geq 1$ . This function is neither additive or multiplicative.

## A.2 The Möbius Function

Recall that the Möbius function is the arithmetic function  $\mu$  defined by

$$\mu(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n \text{ is square-free with an even number of prime factors,} \\ -1 & \text{if } n \text{ is square-free with an odd number of prime factors,} \\ 0 & \text{if } n \text{ is not square-free,} \end{cases}$$

and it is multiplicative. It also satisfies an important summation property:

**Proposition A.2.1.**

$$\sum_{d|n} \mu(d) = \delta_{n,1}.$$

From this property, the important **Möbius inversion formula** can be derived:

**Theorem A.2.1 (Möbius inversion formula).** *Suppose  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$  are arithmetic functions. Then*

$$g(n) = \sum_{d|n} f(d),$$

*for all  $n \geq 1$ , if and only if*

$$f(n) = \sum_{d|n} \mu(d)g\left(\frac{n}{d}\right)$$

*for all  $n \geq 1$ .*

Using Möbius inversion, the following useful formula can also be derived:

**Proposition A.2.2.** *For  $\sigma > 1$ ,*

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{\mu(n)}{n^s} = \zeta(s)^{-1} = \prod_p (1 - p^{-s}).$$

There is also an important similar statement to the Möbius inversion formula that we will need:

**Theorem A.2.2.** *Let  $f(n)$  be an arithmetic function and  $B$  be the completely multiplicative function defined on primes  $p$  by*

$$B(p) = f(p)^2 - f(p^2).$$

*Then*

$$f(n)f(m) = \sum_{d|(n,m)} B(d)f\left(\frac{nm}{d^2}\right),$$

*for all  $n, m \geq 1$ , if and only if*

$$f(nm) = \sum_{d|(n,m)} \mu(d)B(d)f\left(\frac{n}{d}\right)f\left(\frac{m}{d}\right),$$

*for all  $n, m \geq 1$ .*

Any function  $f(n)$  satisfying the conditions of Theorem A.2.2 is said to be **specialy multiplicative**.

### A.3 The Generalized Sum of Divisors Function

Recall that the generalized sum of divisor function  $\sigma_s(n)$  defined by

$$\sigma_s(n) = \sum_{d|n} d^s.$$

As we always take divisors to be positive, the sign of  $n$  is irrelevant. So

$$\sigma_s(n) = \sigma_s(-n) = \sigma_s(|n|).$$

More importantly,  $\sigma_s(n)$  has a remarkable property: it can be written as a product. Recalling that  $\text{ord}_p(n)$  is the positive integer satisfying  $p^{\text{ord}_p(n)} \parallel n$ , we have the following statement:

**Proposition A.3.1.** *For  $s \neq 0$ ,*

$$\sigma_s(n) = \prod_{p|n} \frac{p^{(\text{ord}_p(n)+1)s} - 1}{p^s - 1}.$$

### A.4 Quadratic Symbols

Let  $p$  be an odd prime. We are often interested in when the equation  $x^2 = a \pmod{p}$  is solvable for some  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ . The **Legendre symbol**  $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)$  keeps track of this:

$$\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x^2 \equiv a \pmod{p} \text{ is solvable,} \\ -1 & \text{if } x^2 \equiv a \pmod{p} \text{ is not solvable,} \\ 0 & \text{if } a \equiv 0 \pmod{p}. \end{cases}$$

**Euler's criterion** gives an alternative expression for Legendre symbol when  $a$  is coprime to  $p$ :

**Proposition A.4.1 (Euler's criterion).** *Let  $p$  be an odd prime and suppose  $(a, p) = 1$ . Then*

$$\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) = a^{\frac{p-1}{2}} \pmod{p}.$$

From the definition and Euler's criterion it is not difficult to show that the Legendre symbol satisfies the following properties:

**Proposition A.4.2.** *Let  $p$  be an odd prime and let  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then the following hold:*

$$(i) \text{ If } a \equiv b \pmod{p}, \text{ then } \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) = \left(\frac{b}{p}\right).$$

$$(ii) \left(\frac{ab}{p}\right) = \left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \left(\frac{b}{p}\right).$$

From Proposition A.4.2, to compute the Legendre symbol in general it suffices to know how to compute  $\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right)$ ,  $\left(\frac{2}{p}\right)$ , and  $\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)$  where  $q$  is another odd prime. The **supplemental laws of quadratic reciprocity** are formulas for the first two symbols:

**Proposition A.4.3 (Supplemental laws of quadratic reciprocity).** *Let  $p$  be an odd prime.*

(i)

$$\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2}} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } p \equiv 1 \pmod{4}, \\ -1 & \text{if } p \equiv 3 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

(ii)

$$\left(\frac{2}{p}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{p^2-1}{8}} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } p \equiv 1, 7 \pmod{8}, \\ -1 & \text{if } p \equiv 3, 5 \pmod{8}. \end{cases}$$

The **law of quadratic reciprocity** handles the last symbol by relating  $\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)$  to  $\left(\frac{p}{q}\right)$ :

**Theorem A.4.1 (Law of quadratic reciprocity).** *Let  $p$  and  $q$  be distinct odd primes. Then*

$$\left(\frac{p}{q}\right) \left(\frac{q}{p}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{p-1}{2} \frac{q-1}{2}} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } p \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \text{ or } q \equiv 1 \pmod{4}, \\ -1 & \text{if } p \equiv 3 \pmod{4} \text{ and } q \equiv 3 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

We can generalize the Jacobi symbol further by making it multiplicative in the denominator. Let  $n$  be a positive odd integer with prime factorization  $n = p_1^{r_1} p_2^{r_2} \cdots p_k^{r_k}$  and let  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ . The **Jacobi symbol**  $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$  is defined by

$$\left(\frac{a}{n}\right) = \prod_{1 \leq i \leq k} \left(\frac{a}{p_i}\right)^{r_i}.$$

When  $n = p$  is prime, the Jacobi symbol reduces to the Legendre symbol and the Jacobi symbol is precisely the unique multiplicative extension of the Legendre symbol to all positive odd integers. Accordingly, the Jacobi symbol has the following properties:

**Proposition A.4.4.** *Let  $m$  and  $n$  be positive odd integers and let  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then the following hold:*

$$(i) \text{ If } a \equiv b \pmod{p}, \text{ then } \left(\frac{a}{n}\right) = \left(\frac{b}{n}\right).$$

$$(ii) \left(\frac{a}{mn}\right) = \left(\frac{a}{m}\right) \left(\frac{a}{n}\right).$$

$$(iii) \left(\frac{ab}{n}\right) = \left(\frac{a}{n}\right) \left(\frac{b}{n}\right).$$

There is also an associated reciprocity law:

**Proposition A.4.5.** *Let  $m$  and  $n$  be distinct positive odd integers. Then*

$$\left(\frac{m}{n}\right) \left(\frac{n}{m}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{m-1}{2} \frac{n-1}{2}} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } m \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \text{ or } n \equiv 1 \pmod{4}, \\ -1 & \text{if } m \equiv 3 \pmod{4} \text{ and } n \equiv 3 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

We can further generalize the Jacobi symbol so that it is valid for all integers. Let  $a, n \in \mathbb{Z}$  where  $n = up_1^{r_1} p_2^{r_2} \cdots p_k^{r_k}$  is the prime factorization of  $n$  with  $u = \pm 1$ . The **Kronecker symbol**  $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$  is defined by

$$\left(\frac{a}{n}\right) = \left(\frac{a}{u}\right) \prod_{1 \leq i \leq k} \left(\frac{a}{p_i}\right)^{r_i},$$

where we set

$$\left(\frac{a}{1}\right) = 1, \quad \left(\frac{a}{-1}\right) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } a \geq 0, \\ -1 & \text{if } a < 0, \end{cases} \quad \left(\frac{a}{0}\right) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } a = \pm 1, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

and

$$\left(\frac{a}{2}\right) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } a \equiv 1, 7 \pmod{8}, \\ -1 & \text{if } a \equiv 3, 5 \pmod{8}, \\ 0 & \text{if } a \equiv 0 \pmod{2}. \end{cases}$$

When  $n$  is a positive odd integer, the Kronecker symbol reduces to the Jacobi symbol. The Kronecker symbol also satisfies a reciprocity law:

**Proposition A.4.6.** *Let  $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then*

$$\left(\frac{m}{n}\right) \left(\frac{n}{|m|}\right) = (-1)^{\frac{m^{(2)}-1}{2} \frac{n^{(2)}-1}{2}}.$$

where  $m^{(2)}$  and  $n^{(2)}$  are the parts of  $m$  and  $n$  relatively prime to 2 respectively.



# Appendix B

## Analysis

### B.1 Local Absolute Uniform Convergence

Often, we are interested in some series

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} f_n(z),$$

where the  $f_n(z)$  are analytic functions on some region  $\Omega$ . We say that the series above is **locally absolutely uniformly convergent** if

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} |f_n(z)|,$$

converges uniformly on compact subsets of  $\Omega$ . This mode of convergence is very useful because it is enough to guarantee the series is analytic on  $\Omega$ :

**Theorem B.1.1.** *Suppose  $(f_n(z))_{n \geq 1}$  is a sequence of analytic functions on a region  $\Omega$ . Then if*

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} f_n(z),$$

*is locally absolutely uniformly convergent, it is analytic on  $\Omega$ .*

We can also apply this idea in the case of integrals. Suppose we have an integral

$$\int_D f(z, x) dx,$$

where  $f(z, x)$  is an analytic function on some region  $\Omega \times D$ . The integral is a function of  $z$ , and we say that the integral is **locally absolutely uniformly bounded** if

$$\int_D |f(z, x)| dx,$$

is uniformly bounded on compact subsets of  $\Omega$ . Similar to the series case, this mode of convergence is very useful because it guarantees the integral is analytic on  $\Omega$ :

**Theorem B.1.2.** *Suppose  $f(z, x)$  is an analytic function on a region  $\Omega \times D$ . Then if*

$$\int_D f(z, x) dx,$$

*is locally absolutely uniformly bounded, it is holomorphic on  $\Omega$ .*

## B.2 Interchange of Integrals, Sums & Derivatives

Often, we would like to interchange a limit and an integral. This process is not always allowed, but in many instances it is. The **dominated convergence theorem** (DCT) covers the most well-known sufficient condition:

**Theorem B.2.1 (Dominated convergence theorem).** *Let  $(f_n(z))_{n \geq 1}$  be a sequence of continuous real or complex integrable functions on some region  $\Omega$ . Suppose that the sequence converges pointwise to a function  $f(z)$ , and that there is some integrable function  $g$  on  $\Omega$  such that*

$$|f_n(z)| \leq g(z)$$

*for all  $n \geq 1$  and all  $z \in \Omega$ . Then  $f(z)$  is integrable on  $\Omega$  and*

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_{\Omega} f_n(z) dz = \int_{\Omega} f(z) dz.$$

This theorem is often employed when the underlying sequence is a sequence of partial sums of an absolutely convergent series ( $g(s)$  will be the absolute series). In this case we have the following result:

**Corollary B.2.1.** *Suppose  $\sum_{n \geq 1} f_n(z)$  is an absolutely convergent series of real or complex continuous functions that are integrable on some region  $\Omega$  and that either  $\int_{\Omega} \sum_{n \geq 1} |f_n(z)| dz$  or  $\sum_{n \geq 1} \int_{\Omega} |f_n(z)| dz$  is finite. Then*

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \int_{\Omega} f_n(z) dz = \int_{\Omega} \sum_{n \geq 1} f_n(z) dz.$$

Of course, we can apply Corollary B.2.1 repeatedly to interchange a sum with multiple integrals provided that the partial sums are absolutely convergent in each variable.

Other times we would also like to interchange a derivative and an integral. The **Leibniz integral rule** tells us when this is allowed:

**Theorem B.2.2 (Leibniz integral rule).** *Suppose  $f(\mathbf{x}, t)$  is a function such that both  $f(\mathbf{x}, t)$  and its partial derivative  $\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} f(\mathbf{x}, t)$  are continuous in  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $t$  in some region including  $\Omega \times [a(\mathbf{x}), b(\mathbf{x})]$  for some real-valued functions  $a(\mathbf{x})$  and  $b(\mathbf{x})$  and region  $\Omega$ . Also suppose that  $a(\mathbf{x})$  and  $b(\mathbf{x})$  are continuous with continuous partial derivatives  $\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} a(\mathbf{x})$  and  $\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} b(\mathbf{x})$  for  $\mathbf{x} \in \Omega$ . Then for  $\mathbf{x} \in \Omega$ , we have*

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left( \int_{a(\mathbf{x})}^{b(\mathbf{x})} f(\mathbf{x}, t) dt \right) = f(\mathbf{x}, b(\mathbf{x})) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} b(\mathbf{x}) - f(\mathbf{x}, a(\mathbf{x})) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} a(\mathbf{x}) + \int_{a(\mathbf{x})}^{b(\mathbf{x})} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} f(\mathbf{x}, t) dt.$$

The Leibniz integral rule is sometimes applied in the case when  $a(\mathbf{x}) = a$  and  $b(\mathbf{x}) = b$  are constant. In this case, we get the following corollary:

**Corollary B.2.2.** *Suppose  $f(\mathbf{x}, t)$  is a function such that both  $f(\mathbf{x}, t)$  and its partial derivative  $\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} f(\mathbf{x}, t)$  are continuous in  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $t$  in some region including  $\Omega \times [a, b]$  for some reals  $a$  and  $b$  and region  $\Omega$ . Then for  $\mathbf{x} \in \Omega$ , we have*

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left( \int_a^b f(\mathbf{x}, t) dt \right) = \int_a^b \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} f(\mathbf{x}, t) dt.$$

## B.3 Summation Formulas

The most well-known summation formula is **partial summation**:

**Theorem B.3.1 (Partial summation).** *Let  $(a_n)_{n \geq 1}$  and  $(b_n)_{n \geq 1}$  be two sequences of complex numbers. Then for any positive integers  $N$  and  $M$  with  $1 \leq M < N$  we have*

$$\sum_{M \leq k \leq N} a_k(b_{k+1} - b_k) = (a_N b_{N+1} - a_M b_M) - \sum_{M+1 \leq k \leq N} b_k(a_k - a_{k-1}).$$

There is a more useful summation formula for analytic number theory as it lets one estimate discrete sums by integrals. For this we need some notation. If  $(a_n)_{n \geq 1}$  is a sequence of complex numbers, for every  $X > 0$  set

$$A(X) = \sum_{n \leq X} a_n.$$

Then **Abel's summation formula** is the following:

**Theorem B.3.2 (Abel's summation formula).** *Let  $(a_n)_{n \geq 1}$  be a sequence of complex numbers. For every  $X$  and  $Y$  with  $0 \leq X < Y$  and continuously differentiable function  $\phi : [X, Y] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , we have*

$$\sum_{X \leq n \leq Y} a_n \phi(n) = A(Y)\phi(Y) - A(X)\phi(X) - \int_X^Y A(u)\phi'(u) du.$$

There are also some useful corollaries. For example, if we take the limit as  $Y \rightarrow \infty$  we obtain:

**Corollary B.3.1.** *Let  $(a_n)_{n \geq 1}$  be a sequence of complex numbers. For every  $X \geq 0$  and continuously differentiable function  $\phi : \mathbb{R}_{\geq X} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , we have*

$$\sum_{n \geq X} a_n \phi(n) = \lim_{Y \rightarrow \infty} A(Y)\phi(Y) - A(X)\phi(X) - \int_X^\infty A(u)\phi'(u) du.$$

We can take this corollary further by letting  $X < 1$  so that  $A(X) = 0$  to get the following:

**Corollary B.3.2.** *Let  $(a_n)_{n \geq 1}$  be a sequence of complex numbers. For every continuously differentiable function  $\phi : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , we have*

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} a_n \phi(n) = \lim_{Y \rightarrow \infty} A(Y)\phi(Y) - \int_1^\infty A(u)\phi'(u) du.$$

## B.4 Fourier Series

Let  $N \geq 1$  be an integer. If  $f(x)$  is  $N$ -periodic and integrable on  $[0, N]$ , then we define the  $n$ -th **Fourier coefficient**  $\hat{f}(n)$  of  $f(x)$  to be

$$\hat{f}(n) = \int_0^N f(x) e^{-\frac{2\pi i n x}{N}} dx.$$

The **Fourier series** of  $f(x)$  is defined by the series

$$\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \hat{f}(n) e^{\frac{2\pi i n x}{N}}.$$

There is the question of whether the Fourier series of  $f(x)$  converges at all and if so does it even converge to  $f(x)$  itself. Under reasonable conditions the answer is yes as is seen in the following proposition:

**Proposition B.4.1.** *If  $f(x)$  is smooth and  $N$ -periodic it converges uniformly to its Fourier series everywhere.*

In particular, all holomorphic  $N$ -periodic functions  $f(z)$  converge uniformly to their Fourier series everywhere because for fixed  $y$ ,  $f(z)$  restricts to an  $N$ -periodic smooth function on  $\mathbb{R}$  that's integrable on  $[0, N]$ . Actually we can do a little better. If  $f(z)$  is  $N$ -periodic and meromorphic on  $\mathbb{C}$ , then after clearing polar divisors we will have a holomorphic function on  $\mathbb{C}$  and hence it will have a Fourier series converging uniformly everywhere. Therefore  $f(z)$  will have such a Fourier series with meromorphic Fourier coefficients. In either situation, the case  $N = 1$  is the most commonly seen. So for meromorphic (or holomorphic) 1-periodic functions  $f(z)$ ,

$$f(z) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \hat{f}(n) e^{2\pi i n z},$$

uniformly everywhere.

## B.5 Factorizations, Order & Rank

The **elementary factors**, also referred to as **primary factors**, are the entire functions  $E_n(z)$  defined by

$$E_n(z) = \begin{cases} 1 - z & \text{if } n = 0, \\ (1 - z)e^{z + \frac{z^2}{2} + \dots + \frac{z^n}{n}} & \text{if } n \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

If  $f(z)$  is an entire function, then it admits a factorization in terms of its zeros and the elementary factors. This is called the **Weierstrass factorization** of  $f(z)$ :

**Theorem B.5.1 (Weierstrass factorization).** *Let  $f(z)$  be an entire function with  $\{a_n\}_{n \geq 1}$  the nonzero zeros of  $f(z)$  counted with multiplicity. Also suppose that  $f(z)$  has a zero of order  $m$  at  $z = 0$  where it is understood that if  $m = 0$  we mean  $f(0) \neq 0$  and if  $m < 0$  we mean  $f(z)$  has a pole of order  $|m|$  at  $z = 0$ . Then there exists an entire function  $g(z)$  and sequence of nonnegative integers  $(p_n)_{n \geq 1}$  such that*

$$f(z) = z^m e^{g(z)} \prod_{n \geq 1} E_{p_n} \left( \frac{z}{a_n} \right).$$

The Weierstrass factorization of  $f(z)$  can be strengthened if  $f(z)$  does not grow too fast. We say  $f(z)$  is of **finite order** if there exists a  $\rho_0 > 0$  such that

$$f(z) \ll e^{|z|^{\rho_0}},$$

for all  $z \in \mathbb{C}$ . The **order**  $\rho$  of  $f(z)$  is the infimum of the  $\rho_0$ . Let  $q = \lfloor \rho \rfloor$ . If there is no such  $\rho_0$ ,  $f(z)$  is said to be of **infinite order** and we set  $\rho = q = \infty$ . Let  $\{a_n\}_{n \geq 1}$  be the nonzero zeros of  $f(z)$  that are not zero and ordered such that  $a_n \rightarrow \infty$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$  if there are infinitely many zeros. Then we define the **rank** of  $f(z)$  to be the smallest positive integer  $p$  such that the series

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{1}{|a_n|^{p+1}},$$

converges. If there is no such integer we set  $p = \infty$  and if there are finitely many zeros we set  $p = 0$ . We set  $g = \max\{p, q\}$  and call  $g$  the **genus** of  $f(z)$ . We can now state the **Hadamard factorization** of  $f(z)$ :

**Theorem B.5.2 (Hadamard factorization).** *Let  $f(z)$  be an entire function of finite order  $\rho$ . If  $p$  is the rank and  $g$  is the genus, then  $g \leq \rho$ . Moreover, let  $\{a_n\}_{n \geq 1}$  be the nonzero zeros of  $f(z)$  counted with multiplicity and suppose that  $f(z)$  has a zero of order  $m$  at  $z = 0$  where it is understood that if  $m = 0$  we mean  $f(0) \neq 0$  and if  $m < 0$  we mean  $f(z)$  has a pole of order  $|m|$  at  $z = 0$ . Then there exists a polynomial  $Q(z)$  of degree at most  $q$  such that*

$$f(z) = z^m e^{Q(z)} \prod_{n \geq 1} E_p \left( \frac{z}{a_n} \right).$$

## B.6 The Phragmén-Lindelöf Convexity Principle for a Strip

The **Phragmén-Lindelöf convexity principle** is a generic name for extending the maximum modulus principle to unbounded regions. The **Phragmén-Lindelöf Convexity principle for a strip** is the case when the unbounded region is the vertical strip  $a < \sigma < b$ :

**Theorem B.6.1 (Phragmén-Lindelöf Convexity principle for a strip).** *Let  $f(s)$  be a holomorphic function on an open neighborhood of the vertical strip  $a < \sigma < b$  such that  $f(s) \ll e^{|s|^A}$  for some  $A \geq 0$ . Then the following hold:*

- (i) *If  $|f(s)| \leq M$  for  $\sigma = a, b$ , that is on the boundary edges of the strip, then  $|f(s)| \leq M$  for all  $s$  in the strip.*
- (ii) *Assume that there is a continuous function  $g(t) : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that*

$$f(a + it) \ll g(t)^\alpha \quad \text{and} \quad f(b + it) \ll g(t)^\beta,$$

*for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then*

$$f(s) \ll g(t)^{\alpha \ell(\sigma) + \beta(1 - \ell(\sigma))},$$

*where  $\ell$  is the linear function such that  $\ell(a) = 1$  and  $\ell(b) = 0$ .*

We will also need a variant. The **Phragmén-Lindelöf Convexity principle for a half-strip** is the case when the unbounded region is the vertical strip  $a < \sigma < b$  with  $t > c$ :

**Theorem B.6.2 (Phragmén-Lindelöf Convexity principle for a half-strip).** *Let  $f(s)$  be a holomorphic function on an open neighborhood of the vertical strip  $a < \sigma < b$  with  $t > c$  such that  $f(s) \ll e^{|s|^A}$  for some  $A \geq 0$ . Then the following hold:*

- (i) *If  $|f(s)| \leq M$  for  $\sigma = a, b$  with  $t \geq c$  and  $t = c$  with  $a \leq \sigma \leq b$ , that is on the boundary edges of the half-strip, then  $|f(s)| \leq M$  for all  $s$  in the strip.*
- (ii) *Assume that there is a continuous function  $g(t) : \mathbb{R}_{\geq c} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that*

$$f(a + it) \ll g(t)^\alpha \quad \text{and} \quad f(b + it) \ll g(t)^\beta,$$

*for all  $t \geq c$ . Then*

$$f(s) \ll g(t)^{\alpha \ell(\sigma) + \beta(1 - \ell(\sigma))},$$

*where  $\ell$  is the linear function such that  $\ell(a) = 1$  and  $\ell(b) = 0$ .*

## B.7 Bessel Functions

For any  $\nu \in \mathbb{C}$ , the **Bessel equation** is the ODE

$$x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} + (x^2 - \nu^2)y = 0.$$

There are two linearly independent solutions to this equation. One solution is the **Bessel function of the first kind**  $J_\nu(x)$  defined by

$$J_\nu(x) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{(-1)^n}{n! \Gamma(n + \nu + 1)} \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2n + \nu}.$$

For integers  $n$ ,  $J_n(x)$  is entire and we have

$$J_n(x) = (-1)^n J_{-n}(x).$$

Otherwise,  $J_\nu(x)$  has a pole at  $x = 0$  and  $J_\nu(x)$  and  $J_{-\nu}(x)$  are linearly independent solutions to the Bessel equation. The other solution is the **Bessel function of the second kind**  $Y_\nu(x)$  defined by

$$Y_\nu(x) = \frac{J_\nu(x) \cos(\nu\pi) - J_{-\nu}(x)}{\sin(\nu\pi)},$$

for non-integers  $\nu$ , and for integers  $n$  is

$$Y_n(x) = \lim_{\nu \rightarrow n} Y_\nu(x).$$

For any integer  $n$ , we also have

$$Y_n(x) = (-1)^n Y_{-n}(x).$$

For the  $J$ -Bessel function there is also an important integral representation called the **Schl\"{a}flin integral representation**:

**Proposition B.7.1 (Schl\"{a}flin integral representation for the  $J$ -Bessel function).** *For any  $\nu \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $\operatorname{Re}(x) > 0$ ,*

$$J_\nu(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^\nu \int_{-\infty}^{(0+)} t^{-(\nu+1)} e^{t - \frac{x^2}{4t}} dt.$$

The **modified Bessel equation** is the ODE

$$x^2 \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + x \frac{dy}{dx} - (x^2 + \nu^2)y = 0.$$

Like the Bessel equation, there are two linearly independent solutions. One solution is the **modified Bessel function of the first kind**  $I_\nu(x)$  given by

$$I_\nu(x) = i^{-\nu} J_\nu(ix) = \sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{1}{n! \Gamma(n + \nu + 1)} \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{2n + \nu}.$$

For integers  $n$ , this solution is symmetric in  $n$ . That is,

$$I_n(x) = I_{-n}(x).$$

We also have a useful integral representation in a half-plane:

**Proposition B.7.2.** *For any  $\nu \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $\operatorname{Re}(x) > 0$ ,*

$$I_\nu(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi e^{x \cos(t)} \cos(\nu t) dt - \frac{\sin(\nu\pi)}{\pi} \int_0^\infty e^{-x \cosh(t) - \nu t} dt,$$

where the integrals are understood to be complex integrals.

From this integral representation we can show the following asymptotic:

**Lemma B.7.1.** *For any  $\nu \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $\operatorname{Re}(x) > 0$ ,*

$$I_\nu(x) = O(e^x).$$

The other solution is the **modified Bessel function of the second kind**  $K_\nu(x)$  defined by

$$K_\nu(x) = \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{I_{-\nu}(x) - I_\nu(x)}{\sin(\nu\pi)},$$

for non-integers  $\nu$ , and for integers  $n$  is

$$K_n(x) = \lim_{\nu \rightarrow n} K_\nu(x).$$

This is one of the more important types of Bessel functions as they appear in the Fourier coefficients of certain Eisenstein series. This function is symmetric in  $\nu$  even when  $\nu$  is an integer. That is,

$$K_\nu(x) = K_{-\nu}(x),$$

for all  $\nu$ . We also have a very useful integral representation in a half-plane:

**Proposition B.7.3.** *For any  $\nu \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $\operatorname{Re}(x) > 0$ ,*

$$K_\nu(x) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x \cosh(t)} \cosh(\nu t) dt,$$

where the integral is understood to be a complex integral.

From this integral representation it does not take much to show the following asymptotic:

**Lemma B.7.2.** *For any  $\nu \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $\operatorname{Re}(x) > 0$ ,*

$$K_\nu(x) = o(e^{-x}).$$

## B.8 Whittaker Functions

For  $\kappa, \mu \in \mathbb{C}$ , the **Whittaker equation** is the ODE

$$\frac{dw}{dz} + \left( \frac{1}{4} - \frac{\kappa}{z} - \frac{\frac{1}{4} - \mu^2}{z^2} \right) w = 0.$$

There are two linearly independent solutions to this equation. If we additionally assume that  $w(z) = o(e^{2\pi \operatorname{Im}(z)})$  as  $\operatorname{Im}(z) \rightarrow \infty$ , then there is only one linearly independent solution. This solution is the **Whittaker function**  $W_{\kappa, \mu}(z)$ . It can be expressed in the form

$$W_{\kappa, \mu}(z) = z^{\mu + \frac{1}{2}} e^{-\frac{z}{2}} U\left(\mu - \kappa + \frac{1}{2}, 1 + 2\mu, z\right),$$

where  $U(\alpha, \beta, z)$  is the **confluent hypergeometric function** initially defined by

$$U(\alpha, \beta, z) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \int_0^\infty e^{-zu} u^{\alpha-1} (1+u)^{\beta-\alpha-1} du,$$

for  $\operatorname{Re}(\alpha) > 0$  and  $\operatorname{Re}(z) > 0$  and then analytically continued to  $\mathbb{C}^3$ . From this integral representation we can show the following asymptotic:

**Lemma B.8.1.** *For any  $\kappa, \mu \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $\operatorname{Re}(z) > 0$ ,*

$$W_{\kappa, \mu}(z) \sim z^\kappa e^{-\frac{z}{2}}.$$

The Whittaker function has a simplified form in special cases:

**Theorem B.8.1.** *If  $\nu, \alpha \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $\operatorname{Re}(z) > 0$ ,*

$$W_{0, \nu}(z) = \left(\frac{z}{\pi}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} K_\nu\left(\frac{z}{2}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad W_{\alpha, \alpha - \frac{1}{2}}(z) = z^\alpha e^{-\frac{z}{2}}.$$

## B.9 Sums Over Lattices

Let  $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_d) \in \mathbb{R}^d$  and let  $\|\mathbf{a}\| = \sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2 + \dots + a_d^2}$  be the usual norm. We are often interested in series that obtained by summing over the lattice  $\mathbb{Z}^d \subset \mathbb{R}^d$ . In particular, we have the following general result:

**Theorem B.9.1.** *Let  $d \geq 1$  be an integer. Then*

$$\sum_{\mathbf{a} \in \mathbb{Z}^d - \{\mathbf{0}\}} \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{a}\|^s},$$

*is locally absolutely uniformly convergent in the region  $\sigma > d$ .*

In a practical setting, we usually restrict to the case  $d = 2$ . In this setting, with a little more work can show a more useful result:

**Proposition B.9.1.** *Let  $z \in \mathbb{H}$ . Then*

$$\sum_{(n, m) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 - \{\mathbf{0}\}} \frac{1}{|nz + m|^s},$$

*is locally absolutely uniformly convergent in the region  $\sigma > 2$ . In addition, it is locally absolutely uniformly convergent as a function of  $z$  provided  $\sigma > 2$ .*



# Appendix C

## Algebra

### C.1 Character Groups

For any finite abelian group  $G$ , a **character**  $\varphi$  is a homomorphism  $\varphi : G \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ . They form a group, denoted  $\widehat{G}$ , under multiplication called the **character group** of  $G$ . If  $G$  is an additive group, we say that any  $\varphi \in \Gamma$  is a **additive character**. Similarly, if  $G$  is a multiplicative group, we say that any  $\varphi \in \Gamma$  is a **multiplicative character**. In any case, if  $|G| = n$  then  $\varphi(g)^n = \varphi(g^n) = 1$  so that  $\varphi$  takes values in the  $n$ -th roots of unity. Moreover, to every character  $\varphi$  there is its **conjugate character**  $\overline{\varphi}$  defined by  $\overline{\varphi}(g) = \overline{\varphi(g)}$ . Clearly the conjugate character is also a character. Since  $\varphi$  takes its value in the roots of unity,  $\overline{\varphi(a)} = \varphi(a)^{-1}$  so that  $\overline{\varphi} = \varphi^{-1}$ . One of the central theorems about characters is that the character group of  $G$  is isomorphic to  $G$ :

**Proposition C.1.1.** *Any finite abelian group  $G$  is isomorphic to its character group. That is,*

$$G \cong \widehat{G}.$$

The characters also satisfy certain **orthogonality relations**:

**Proposition C.1.2 (Orthogonality relations).** *Let  $G$  be a finite abelian group.*

(i) *For any two characters  $\chi$  and  $\psi$  of  $G$ ,*

$$\frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{g \in G} \chi(g) \overline{\psi}(g) = \delta_{\chi, \psi}.$$

(ii) *For any  $g, h \in G$ ,*

$$\frac{1}{|\widehat{G}|} \sum_{\chi \in \widehat{G}} \chi(g) \overline{\chi}(h) = \delta_{g, h}.$$

### C.2 Representation Theory

Let  $G$  be a group and  $V$  be a vector space over a field  $\mathbb{F}$ . A **representation**  $(\rho, V)$ , or just  $\rho$  if the underlying vector space  $V$  is clear, of  $G$  on  $V$  is a map

$$\rho : G \times V \rightarrow V \quad (g, v) \mapsto \rho(g, v) = g \cdot v,$$

such that the following properties are satisfied:

1. For any  $g \in G$ , the map

$$\rho(g) : V \rightarrow V \quad v \mapsto g \cdot v,$$

is linear.

2. For any  $g, h \in G$  and  $v \in V$ ,

$$1 \cdot v = v \quad \text{and} \quad g \cdot (h \cdot v) = (gh) \cdot v.$$

Therefore  $\rho$  defines an action of  $G$  on  $V$ . An equivalent definition of a representation of  $G$  on  $V$  is a homomorphism from  $G$  into  $\text{Aut}(V)$ . By abuse of notation, we also denote this homomorphism by  $\rho$ . If the dimension of  $V$  is  $n$ , then  $(\rho, V)$  is said to be an **n-dimensional**. We say that  $(\rho, W)$  is a **subrepresentation** of  $(V, \rho)$  if  $W \subseteq V$  is a  $G$ -invariant subspace. In particular,  $(\rho, W)$  is a representation itself. Lastly, if  $(\rho_1, V_1)$  and  $(\rho_2, V_2)$  are two representations, we can form the **direct sum representation**  $(\rho_1 \oplus \rho_2, V_1 \oplus V_2)$  where  $\rho_1 \oplus \rho_2$  acts diagonally on  $V_1 \oplus V_2$ . A natural question to ask is how representation can be decomposed as a direct sum of other representations. We say  $(\rho, V)$  is **irreducible** if it contains no proper  $G$ -invariant subspaces and is **completely irreducible** if it decomposes as a direct sum of irreducible subrepresentations.

We will only need one very useful theorem about representations when  $G$  is a finite abelian group and  $V$  is a vector space over  $\mathbb{C}$ . In this case  $G$  has a group of characters  $\widehat{G}$ , and the underlying vector space  $V$  is completely reducible with respect to the characters of  $G$ :

**Theorem C.2.1.** *Let  $V$  be a vector space over  $\mathbb{C}$  and let  $\Phi$  be a representation of a group  $G$  on  $V$ . If  $G$  is a finite abelian group, then*

$$V = \bigoplus_{\chi \in \widehat{G}} V_{\chi},$$

where

$$V_{\chi} = \{v \in V : g \cdot v = \chi(g)v \text{ for all } g \in G\}.$$

*In particular,  $V$  is completely reducible and every irreducible subrepresentation is 1-dimensional.*

# Appendix D

## Miscellaneous

### D.1 Special Integrals

Below is a table of well-known integrals that are used throughout the text:

Reference	Assumptions	Integral
Gaussian		$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-\pi x^2} dx = 1$
[Gol06]	$s, \nu \in \mathbb{C}, \operatorname{Re}(s + \nu) > -1$	$\int_0^{\infty} K_{\nu}(y) y^s \frac{dy}{y} = 2^{s-2} \Gamma\left(\frac{s + \nu}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{s - \nu}{2}\right)$
[Gol06]	$n \in \mathbb{Z}, s \in \mathbb{C}, y > 0$	$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(x^2 + 1)^s} e^{-2\pi i n x y} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(s - \frac{1}{2})}{\Gamma(s)} & \text{if } n = 0, \\ \frac{2\pi^s  n ^{s-\frac{1}{2}} y^{s-\frac{1}{2}}}{\Gamma(s)} K_{s-\frac{1}{2}}(2\pi  n  y) & \text{if } n \neq 0. \end{cases}$
[Dav80]	$c > 0$	$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{(c)} y^s \frac{ds}{s} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } 0 < y < 1, \\ \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } y = 1, \\ 1 & \text{if } y > 1. \end{cases}$

# Index

- $L$ -function, 109
- $L$ -series, 108
- $O$ -estimate, 3
- $o$ -estimate, 4
- $p$ -aspect, 4
- (Maass) Eisenstein series, 71
- (Maass) cusp form, 68
- (Selberg class) Lindelöf hypothesis, 116
- (Selberg class) Riemann hypothesis, 115
- (automorphic) Poincaré series, 73
- (classical) Perron's formula, 105
- (holomorphic) Eisenstein series, 38
- (holomorphic) Poincaré series, 40
- (holomorphic) cusp form, 37
- (incomplete) Eisenstein series, 76
- (residual) Maass form, 79
- (smoothed) Perron's formula, 108
- (truncated) Perron's formula, 106
- Abel's summation formula, 223
- abscissa of absolute convergence, 99
- abscissa of convergence, 99
- additive, 215
- additive character, 229
- analytic conductor, 109
- approximate function equation, 112
- asymptotically equivalent, 4
- Atkin–Lehner involution, 61, 88
- automorphic, 68
- automorphy condition, 68
- Bessel equation, 226
- Bessel function of the first kind, 226
- Bessel function of the second kind, 226
- Binet's log gamma formula, 27
- Bruhat decomposition, 33
- central value, 116
- central value estimate, 116
- character, 36, 68, 229
- character group, 229
- characteristic function of square-free integers, 216
- Chebyshev function, 191
- classical zero-free region for  $\zeta(s)$ , 164
- classical zero-free region for  $L(s, \chi)$ , 167
- cocycle condition, 36, 67
- completed  $L$ -function, 109
- completed real-analytic Eisenstein series, 143
- completely additive, 215
- completely irreducible, 230
- completely multiplicative, 215
- complex, 10
- conductor, 10, 109
- conductor dropping, 110
- confluent hypergeometric function, 228
- congruence subgroup, 30
- conjugate character, 229
- conjugate Dirichlet character, 7
- constant function, 215
- convexity argument, 115
- convexity bound, 116
- convexity breaking bound, 116
- critical line, 110
- critical strip, 110
- cubic, 10
- cusp, 33
- degree, 104
- diamond operator, 48, 53, 83
- digamma function, 26
- direct sum representation, 230
- Dirichlet  $L$ -function, 124
- Dirichlet character, 7
- Dirichlet eta function, 166
- Dirichlet series, 98

- Dirichlet xi function, 163
- Dirichlet's theorem on primes in arithmetic progressions, 151
- Dirichlet's theta function, 125
- divisor function, 216
- dominated convergence theorem, 222
- double coset operator, 47, 81
- dual, 109
- effective, 4
- eigenform, 58, 85
- eigenvalue, 68
- Eisenstein space, 79
- Eisenstein transform, 79
- elementary factors, 224
- epsilon factor, 15, 20
- Euler product, 104
- Euler's criterion, 218
- Euler's totient function, 216
- even, 10, 70
- exceptional zeros, 170
- explicit formula, 162, 163, 191, 196
- exponential decay, 7
- exponential decay at the cusps, 37
- exponential growth, 7
- finite order, 224
- folding the integral, 44
- Fourier coefficient, 223
- Fourier series, 223
- Fourier series at the  $\mathfrak{a}$  cusp, 37, 70
- Fourier transform, 22
- Fuchsian group, 31
- functional equation for Dirichlet's theta function, 125
- functional equation for Jacobi's theta function, 120
- fundamental domain, 31
- gamma function, 24
- Gauss sum, 12
- generalized sum of divisors function, 216
- genus, 224
- geometric side, 96
- growth condition, 37, 68
- Hadamard factorization, 224
- Hecke  $L$ -function, 129
- Hecke bound, 63, 90
- Hecke congruence subgroup, 30
- Hecke eigenform, 58
- Hecke eigenvalues, 58, 85
- Hecke normalization, 58, 85
- Hecke operator, 49, 53, 82, 83
- Hecke polynomial, 63, 89
- Hecke relations, 58, 86
- Hecke-Maass  $L$ -function, 133
- Hecke-Maass eigenform, 85
- holomorphic at the cusps, 37
- holomorphic form, 36
- hyperbolic measure, 35
- identity function, 215
- implicit constant, 4
- induced, 9
- ineffective, 4
- infinite order, 224
- invariant, 36, 67
- inverse Mellin transform, 24
- irreducible, 230
- is asymptotic to, 4
- is of order, 3
- is of smaller order than, 4
- Jacobi symbol, 219
- Jacobi's theta function, 120
- Kloosterman sum, 20
- Kronecker symbol, 219
- Landau's theorem, 102
- Laplace operator, 67
- law of quadratic reciprocity, 219
- Legendre duplication formula, 25
- Legendre symbol, 218
- Leibniz integral rule, 222
- level, 30, 36, 68
- Lindelöf convexity argument, 115
- Liouville's function, 216
- local factor, 109
- local parameters, 109
- local roots, 109
- locally absolutely uniformly bounded, 221
- locally absolutely uniformly convergent, 221
- logarithm function, 215
- logarithmic decay, 7
- logarithmic growth, 7
- logarithmic integral, 204

- Möbius function, 215
- Möbius inversion formula, 217
- Maass differential operators, 67
- Maass form, 68
- Maass lowering operator, 67
- Maass raising operator, 67
- Madhava–Leibniz formula, 156
- Mellin transform, 23
- moderate decay, 7
- moderate decay at the cusps, 71
- moderate growth, 7
- moderate growth at the cusps, 68
- modified Bessel equation, 226
- modified Bessel function of the second kind, 227
- modular, 37
- modular curve, 31
- modular discriminant, 62
- modular form, 36
- modular group, 29
- modularity condition, 37
- multiplicative, 215
- multiplicative character, 229
- multiplicity one, 61
- multiplicity one theorem, 88
  
- n-dimensional, 230
- newforms, 59, 87
- newforms of level  $N$ , 59, 87
- nontrivial zeros, 115
- number of distinct prime factors function, 216
  
- odd, 10, 70
- oldforms, 59, 87
- oldforms of level  $N$ , 59, 87
- order, 224
- orthogonality relations, 7, 229
  
- partial summation, 223
- Perron-type formula, 105
- Petersson inner product, 42, 74
- Petersson normalization, 58, 85
- Petersson trace formula, 96
- Phragmén–Lindelöf convexity principle, 225
- Phragmén–Lindelöf Convexity principle for a half-strip, 225
- Phragmén–Lindelöf Convexity principle for a strip, 225
- Poisson summation formula, 23
  
- polynomial decay, 7
- polynomial growth, 7
- primary factors, 224
- prime counting function, 203, 208
- prime number theorem, 203–205
- primitive, 9
- primitive Hecke eigenform, 60
- primitive Hecke–Maass eigenform, 87
- principal, 7
- principal congruence subgroup, 30
- principal Dirichlet character, 7
  
- quadratic, 10
- quadratic Gauss sum, 16
  
- Ramanujan sum, 11
- Ramanujan’s  $\tau$  function, 62
- Ramanujan–Petersson conjecture, 63, 89
- ramified, 109
- rank, 224
- Rankin–Selberg convolution, 110, 138, 147
- Rankin–Selberg method, 147
- Rankin–Selberg square, 110
- rapid decay, 23
- real, 10
- reduced at infinity, 33
- representation, 229
- Riemann xi function, 161
- Riemann zeta function, 119
- Riemann–von Mangoldt formula (for  $\zeta(s)$ ), 179
- Riemann–von Mangoldt formula (for  $L(s, \chi)$ ), 185
- root number, 109
  
- Salié sum, 21
- same order of magnitude, 4
- scaling matrix, 33
- Schläflin integral representation, 226
- Schwarz function, 22
- Selberg class, 109
- Selberg’s eigenvalue conjecture, 90
- self-dual, 109
- shifting the line of integration, 21
- Siegel zeros, 170
- Siegel’s theorem, 172
- Siegel–Walfisz theorem, 208, 209
- slash operator, 36, 67
- specially multiplicative, 217

- spectral side, 96
- standard fundamental domain, 32
- Stirling's formula, 26
- strong multiplicity one, 149
- subconvexity argument, 116
- subconvexity estimate, 116
- subrepresentation, 230
- sum of divisors function, 216
- supplemental laws of quadratic reciprocity, 218
- total number of prime divisors function, 216
- trivial Dirichlet character, 7
- trivial zeros, 115
- twisted holomorphic form, 64
- twisted Maass form, 90
- unfolding the integral, 44
- uniform, 4
- unit function, 215
- unramified, 109
- unweighted, 107
- Vinogradov's symbol, 4
- volume, 35
- von Mangoldt function, 216
- Weierstrass factorization, 224
- weight, 36, 68
- weighted, 107
- Weil bound, 20
- Whittaker equation, 227
- Whittaker function, 227
- zero extension, 7
- zero-free regions, 164
- zeta function, 119

# Bibliography

- [Apo76] Tom M. Apostol. *Introduction to Analytic Number Theory*. Undergraduate Texts in Mathematics. Springer, New York, NY, 1976.
- [BB13] Valentin Blomer and Farrell Brumley. The role of the ramanujan conjecture in analytic number theory. *Bulletin of the American Mathematical Society*, 50(2):267–320, 2013.
- [Bum97] Daniel Bump. *Automorphic Forms and Representations*. Cambridge Studies in Advanced Mathematics. Cambridge University Press, 1997. Citation: Bump1997automorphic.
- [CS17] Henri Cohen and Fredrik Strömberg. *Modular forms: a classical approach*. Number 179 in Graduate studies in mathematics. American Mathematical Society, 2017. CitationKey: Cohen2017modular.
- [Dav80] Harold Davenport. *Multiplicative Number Theory*, volume 74 of *Graduate Texts in Mathematics*. Springer, New York, NY, 1980.
- [DB15] Lokenath Debnath and Dambaru Bhatta. *Integral transforms and their applications*. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, third edition edition, 2015.
- [Del71] Pierre Deligne. Formes modulaires et représentations e-adiques. In *Séminaire Bourbaki vol. 1968/69 Exposés 347-363*, pages 139–172, Berlin, Heidelberg, 1971. Springer.
- [Del74] Pierre Deligne. La conjecture de Weil. I. *Publications Mathématiques de l’Institut des Hautes Études Scientifiques*, 43(1):273–307, December 1974.
- [DS05] Fred Diamond and Jerry Shurman. *A First Course in Modular Forms*, volume 228 of *Graduate Texts in Mathematics*. Springer, New York, NY, 2005.
- [Eul44] Leonhard Euler. Variae observationes circa series infinitas. *Commentarii academiae scientiarum Petropolitanae*, pages 160–188, January 1744.
- [Eva22] Lawrence C. Evans. *Partial differential equations*. Number 19 in Graduate studies in mathematics. American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island, second edition edition, 2022.
- [Gau08] Carl Friedrich Gauss. Summatio quarumdam serierum singularium. *Gottingae (Dieterich)*, 1808.
- [Gol06] Dorian Goldfeld. *Automorphic Forms and L-Functions for the Group  $GL(n, \mathbb{R})$* . Cambridge Studies in Advanced Mathematics. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2006.
- [Gra03] J. P. Gram. Note sur les zéros de la fonction  $\zeta(s)$  de Riemann. *Acta Mathematica*, 27(0):289–304, 1903.



- [Had96] J. Hadamard. Sur la distribution des zéros de la fonction  $\zeta(s)$  et ses conséquences arithmétiques. *Bulletin de la Société Mathématique de France*, 24:199–220, 1896.
- [HL16] G. H. Hardy and J. E. Littlewood. Contributions to the theory of the riemann zeta-function and the theory of the distribution of primes. *Acta Mathematica*, 41(none):119–196, January 1916.
- [HL21] G. Hardy and J. E. Littlewood. The zeros of riemann’s zeta-function on the critical line. *Mathematische Zeitschrift*, 10:283–317, 1921. Citation: Hardy1921zeros.
- [HL23] G. H. Hardy and J. E. Littlewood. The approximate functional equation in the theory of the zeta-function, with applications to the divisor-problems of dirichlet and piltz. *Proceedings of the London Mathematical Society*, s2-21(1):39–74, 1923. Citation: Hardy1923approximate.
- [HL29] G. H. Hardy and J. E. Littlewood. The approximate functional equations for  $\zeta(s)$  and  $\zeta^2(s)$ . *Proceedings of the London Mathematical Society*, s2-29(1):81–97, 1929. Citation: Hardy1929approximate.
- [Iwa02] Henryk Iwaniec. *Spectral Methods of Automorphic Forms*, volume 53 of *Graduate Studies in Mathematics*. American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island, November 2002.
- [Kil15] L. J. P. Kilford. *Modular forms: a classical and computational introduction*. Imperial College Press, Hackensack, NJ, 2nd edition edition, 2015.
- [Koc01] Helge Koch. Sur la distribution des nombres premiers. *Acta Mathematica*, 24(0):159–182, 1901.
- [KRS03] Henry H. Kim, Dinakar Ramakrishnan, and Peter Sarnak. Functoriality for the exterior square of  $GL_4$  and the symmetric fourth of  $GL_2$ . *Journal of the American Mathematical Society*, 16(1):139–183, 2003.
- [Lan94] Serge Lang. *Algebraic Number Theory*, volume 110 of *Graduate Texts in Mathematics*. Springer, New York, NY, 1994.
- [Leg98] A. M. (Adrien Marie) Legendre. *Essai sur la théorie des nombres*. Paris, Duprat, 1798.
- [Leg08] Adrien Marie Legendre. *Essai sur la theorie des nombres; par A.M. Legendre, membre de l’Institut et de la Legion d’Honneur ..* chez Courcier, imprimeur-libraire pour les mathematiques, quai des Augustins, n° 57, 1808.
- [Man05] H. v. Mangoldt. Zur Verteilung der Nullstellen der Riemannschen Funktion  $\xi(t)$ . *Mathematische Annalen*, 60(1):1–19, March 1905.
- [Pou97] Charles Jean de La Vallée Poussin. *Recherches analytiques sur la théorie des nombres premiers*. Hayez, 1897.
- [Ram16] Srinivasa Ramanujan. On certain arithmetical functions. *Transactions of the Cambridge Philosophical Society*, 22(9):159 – 184, 1916.
- [Rem98] Reinhold Remmert. *Classical Topics in Complex Function Theory*, volume 172 of *Graduate Texts in Mathematics*. Springer, New York, NY, 1998.
- [Rie59] Bernhard Riemann. Ueber die Anzahl der Primzahlen unter einer gegebenen Grösse. *Monatsberichte der Königlich Preußischen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin*, pages 671–680, 1859.

- [RS62] J. Barkley Rosser and Lowell Schoenfeld. Approximate formulas for some functions of prime numbers. *Illinois Journal of Mathematics*, 6(1):64–94, March 1962.
- [SSS03] Elias M. Stein, Rami Shakarchi, and Elias M. Stein. *Complex analysis*. Number 2 in Princeton lectures in analysis / Elias M. Stein & Rami Shakarchi. Princeton University Press, Princeton Oxford, 2003.
- [Wei48] Andre Weil. On Some Exponential Sums. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 34(5):204–207, 1948.